Abstract

tcolorbox provides an environment for colored and framed text boxes with a heading line. Optionally, such a box can be split in an upper and a lower part. The package tcolorbox can be used for the setting of \LaTeX{} examples where one part of the box displays the source code and the other part shows the output. Another common use case is the setting of theorems. The package supports saving and reuse of source code and text parts.

## Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1 Introduction</th>
<th>8</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.1 Installation</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2 Loading the Package</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3 Libraries</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Quick Reference</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 Macros for Box Creation</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 Option Keys</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.1 Title</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.2 Subtitle</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.3 Upper Part</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.4 Lower Part</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.5 Colors and Fonts</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.6 Text Alignment</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.7 Geometry</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.7.1 Width</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.7.2 Rules</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.7.3 Arcs</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.7.4 Spacing</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.7.5 Size Shortcuts</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.7.6 Toggle Left and Right</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.8 Corners</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.9 Transparency</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.10 Height Control</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.11 Box Content Additions</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.12 Overlays</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1Prof. Dr. Dr. Thomas F. Sturm, Institut für Mathematik und Informatik, Universität der Bundeswehr München, D-85577 Neubiberg, Germany; email: thomas.sturm@unibw.de
1 Introduction

The package originates from the first edition of my book «\textit{\LaTeX– Einführung in das Textsatzsystem}» \cite{18} in about 2006. For the \LaTeX examples and tutorials given there, I wanted to have accentuated and colored boxes to display source code and compiled text in combination. Since, in my opinion, this type of boxes is also quite useful to highlight definitions and theorems, I applied them for my lecture notes in mathematics \cite{19,20,21} as well. With this package, you are invited to apply these boxes for similar projects.

The breaking news for version 2.00 was the support for breakable boxes. This feature allows new applications of the package without affecting the core package too much if you do not need boxes to break automatically. With version 2.20, the often requested “side by side” mode for listings has been added. With version 3.00, boxed titles are introduced together with improved customization options for overlays, underlays, finishes, and own code extensions.

Since the first public release in 2011, I received a lot of feedback from all over the world. I want to thank all who wrote me for supporting this package by sending bug reports and ideas for new or better features.

1.1 Installation

Typically, \texttt{tcolorbox} will be installed as part of a major \LaTeX distribution and there is nothing special to do for a user.

If you intend to make a local installation \emph{by hand}, see the README file of the \texttt{tcolorbox} package for some hints. The short story is: you have to install not only \texttt{tcolorbox.sty}, but also all \texttt{*.code.tex} files in the local \texttt{texmf} tree.

1.2 Loading the Package

The base package \texttt{tcolorbox} loads the packages \texttt{pgf} \cite{22}, \texttt{verbatim} \cite{17}, \texttt{etoolbox} \cite{7}, and \texttt{environ} \cite{16}. \texttt{tcolorbox} itself is loaded in the usual manner in the preamble:

\begin{verbatim}
\usepackage{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}

The package takes option keys in the key-value syntax. Alternatively, you may use these keys later in the preamble with \texttt{\tcbuselibrary{P.9}} (see there). For example, the key to typeset listings is:

\begin{verbatim}
\usepackage[listings]{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}
1.3 Libraries

The base package `tcolorbox` is extendable by program libraries. This is done by using option keys while loading the package or inside the preamble by applying the following macro with the same set of keys.

```
\tcbuselibrary{⟨key list⟩}
```

Loads the libraries given by the `⟨key list⟩`.

```
\tcbuselibrary{listings, theorems}
```

The following keys are used inside \tcbuselibrary respectively \usepackage without the key tree path /tcb/library/.

/tcb/library/skins

Loads the package `tikz` [22] and provides additional styles (skins) for the appearance of the colored boxes; see Section 10 from page 156.

/tcb/library/vignette

Provides code for more ornamental; see Section 15 from page 284.

/tcb/library/raster

Provides additional macros and options for typesetting multiple boxes arranged in a kind of raster; see Section 16 from page 297.

/tcb/library/listings

Loads the package `listings` [6] and provides additional macros for typesetting listings which are described in Section 17 from page 319.

/tcb/library/listingsutf8

Loads the packages `listings` [6] and `listingsutf8` [11] for UTF-8 support. This is a variant of the library `listings` and is described in Section 17 from page 319.

/tcb/library/minted

Loads the package `minted` [12] to typeset listings with the Pygments [14] tool, also see Section 17 on page 319.

/tcb/library/theorems

Provides additional macros for typesetting theorems which are described in Section 18 from page 361.

/tcb/library/breakable

Provides support for automatic box breaking from one page to another; see Section 19 on page 387.

/tcb/library/magazine

Provides support for storing broken box parts to be used later or in interchanged order, Section 20 on page 414.

/tcb/library/poster

Provides support for creating posters, Section 21 on page 424.

/tcb/library/fitting

Provides support for font size adaption of the box content to the box dimensions; see Section 22 from page 438.

/tcb/library/hooks

Extends several option keys to “hookable” keys; see Section 23 from page 450.
/tcb/library/xparse

Provides document command production with \texttt{xparse} for \texttt{tcolorbox}; see Section 24 from page 461.

/tcb/library/external

Provides externalization support for stand-alone document snippets, see Section 25 on page 474.

/tcb/library/documentation

Provides additional macros for typesetting \LaTeX\xspace documentations which are described in Section 26 from page 486.

/tcb/library/many

Loads the libraries \texttt{skins}, \texttt{breakable}, \texttt{raster}, \texttt{hooks}, \texttt{theorems}, \texttt{fitting}, and \texttt{xparse}. Use this shortcut, if you want to use all features of \texttt{tcolorbox} with exception of typesetting listings and using the specialized \texttt{documentation} library.

/tcb/library/most

Loads all libraries except \texttt{minted} and \texttt{documentation}. Use this shortcut, if you want to use all features of \texttt{tcolorbox} with exception of using the \texttt{minted} package and using the specialized \texttt{documentation} library.

/tcb/library/all

Loads all libraries. Use this shortcut only, if you intend to use the \texttt{documentation} library.

3 Macros for Box Creation

\begin{tcolorbox}[(options)]
\langle environment content \rangle
\end{tcolorbox}

This is the main environment to create an accentuated colored text box with rounded corners and, optionally, two parts. The appearance of this box is controlled by numerous options. In the most simple case the source code

\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

creates the following compiled text box:

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

The text content of the box can be divided in an upper and a lower part by the command \texttt{\tcblower}. Visually, both parts are separated by a line. For example:

\begin{tcolorbox}
This is another \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
Here, you see the lower part of the box.
\end{tcolorbox}

This code gives the following box:

This is another \textbf{tcolorbox}.

Here, you see the lower part of the box.

The \texttt{(options)} control the appearance and several functions of the boxes, see Section 4 on page 18 for the complete list. A quick example is given here:

\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,title=My nice heading]
This is another \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
Here, you see the lower part of the box.
\end{tcolorbox}

My nice heading

This is another \textbf{tcolorbox}.

Here, you see the lower part of the box.

\texttt{\tcblower}

Used inside \texttt{tcolorbox} to separate the upper box part from the optional lower box part. The upper and the lower part are treated as separate functional units. If you only want to draw a line, see \texttt{\tcblin\textsuperscript{E}P. 220}. 
\tcbset\{\textit{options}\}\}

Sets options for every following \texttt{tcolorbox} inside the current \TeX\ group. By default, this does not apply to nested boxes, see Section 4.16 on page 97. For example, the colors of the boxes may be defined for the whole document by this:

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset\{colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black\}
\end{verbatim}

\tcbsetforeverylayer\{\textit{options}\}\}

Sets options for every following \texttt{tcolorbox} inside the current \TeX\ group. In contrast to \texttt{tcbset}, this does also apply to nested boxes, see Section 4.16 on page 97. Technically, the \textit{\texttt{options}} are appended to the default values for every tcolorbox which are applied by /tcb/reset. You should not use this macro, if you are not completely sure that you want to have the \textit{\texttt{options}} also for boxes in boxes (in boxes in boxes ...).

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset\{colback=green!10!white\}
\tcbsetforeverylayer\{colframe=red!75!black\}
\begin{tcolorbox}\[title=All options for this box]\This is a tcolorbox.\par\medskip\begin{tcolorbox}\[title=Nested box]\Note that this nested box has a red frame but no green background.\end{tcolorbox}\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}\reset\Options given with \texttt{tcbsetforeverylayer} survive a \texttt{reset}.\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}

All options for this box

This is a tcolorbox.

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Nested box]
Note that this nested box has a red frame but no green background.
\end{tcolorbox}

Options given with \texttt{tcbsetforeverylayer} survive a \texttt{reset}.
\texttt{\textbackslash tcolorbox}\{(options)\}\{box content\}

Creates a colored box which is fitted to the width of the given \textit{box content}. In principle, most \textit{options} for a \texttt{tcolorbox} can be used for \texttt{tcolorbox} with some restrictions. A \texttt{tcolorbox} cannot have a lower part and cannot be broken.

\begin{tcolorbox}[colframe=blue!50!black,colback=white,colupper=red!50!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,nobeforeafter,center title]
Text \texttt{tcolorbox}\{tcbox raise base\}\{Hello World\}\texttt{\textbackslash hfill}
\%
\texttt{tcolorbox}\{left=0mm,right=0mm,top=0mm,bottom=0mm,boxsep=0mm, toptitle=0.5mm,bottomtitle=0.5mm,title=My table\}\{\%
\texttt{\textbackslash arrayrulecolor}\{blue!50!black\}\texttt{\textbackslash renewcommand}\{\texttt{\textbackslash arraystretch}\}\{1.2\}\%
\texttt{\textbackslash begin}\{\texttt{\textbackslash tabular}\}\{r|c|l\}
One & Two & Three \text\texttt{\textbackslash hline}\text\texttt{\textbackslash hline}
Men & Mice & Lions \text\texttt{\textbackslash hline}
Upper & Middle & Lower \text\texttt{\textbackslash end}\{\texttt{\textbackslash tabular}\}\}\texttt{\textbackslash hfill}
\%
\texttt{tcolorbox}\{colback=blue!85!black, left=0mm,right=0mm,top=0mm,bottom=0mm,boxsep=1mm,arc=0mm,boxrule=0.5pt, title=My picture\}\{\%
\text\texttt{\textbackslash includegraphics}\{\texttt{\textbackslash width}\\{5cm\}\{Basilica_5.png\}\%
\%
\text\texttt{\textbackslash usepackage}\{tikz\}
\texttt{tcbset}\{colframe=blue!50!black,colback=white,colupper=red!50!black, fonttitle=\bfseries,center title\}
\%
\texttt{\textbackslash begin}\{\texttt{\textbackslash tcolorbox}\}\{Hello\}\text\texttt{\textbackslash World!}\text\texttt{\textbackslash end}\{\texttt{\textbackslash tcolorbox}\}
\%
\texttt{\textbackslash fitted width box (like hbox or makebox)\texttt{\textbackslash tcolorbox}\{Hello\}\text\texttt{\textbackslash World!}\texttt{\textbackslash end}\{\texttt{\textbackslash tcolorbox}\}
\%
\texttt{\textbackslash fitted width box (using a \texttt{\textbackslash tikzname} node)\texttt{\textbackslash tcolorbox拘留\text\texttt{\textbackslash tikznode}\{Hello\}\text\texttt{\textbackslash World!}\texttt{\textbackslash end}\{\texttt{\textbackslash tcolorbox}\}

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>My table</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>One</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Men</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Upper</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

My picture

Hello World!
See Section 24.2 on page 463 and Section 24.3 on page 466 for more elaborate methods to create new environments and commands.

\newtcolorbox{⟨init options⟩}{⟨name⟩}{⟨number⟩}{⟨default⟩}{⟨options⟩}

Creates a new environment ⟨name⟩ based on \tcolorbox. Basically, \newtcolorbox operates like \newenvironment. This means, the new environment ⟨name⟩ optionally takes ⟨number⟩ arguments, where ⟨default⟩ is the default value for the optional first argument. The ⟨options⟩ are given to the underlying \tcolorbox. Note that /tcb/savedelimiter is set to the given ⟨name⟩ automatically. The ⟨init options⟩ allow setting up automatic numbering, see Section 5 from page 114.

\newtcolorbox{mybox}{colback=red!5!white,\newline colframe=red!75!black}\begin{mybox}This is my own box.\end{mybox}

\newtcolorbox{mybox}{1}{colback=red!5!white,\newline colframe=red!75!black,\bfseries,\newline title={#1}}\begin{mybox}{Hello there}This is my own box with a mandatory title.\end{mybox}

\newtcolorbox{mybox}{2}{colback=red!5!white,\newline colframe=red!75!black,\bfseries,\newline enhanced,\newline attach boxed title to top center={yshift=-2mm},\newline title={#2},#1}\begin{mybox}{colback=yellow}{Hello there}This is my own box with a mandatory title and options.\end{mybox}

\newtcolorbox{pabox}{auto counter,\newline number within=section}{pabox}{2}{% colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,\bfseries,\newline title=Examp.-\thetcbcounter:\#2,#1}\begin{pabox}{colback=yellow}{Hello there}This is my own box with a mandatory numbered title and options.\end{pabox}

\renewtcolorbox{⟨init options⟩}{⟨name⟩}{⟨number⟩}{⟨default⟩}{⟨options⟩}

Operates like \newtcolorbox, but based on \renewenvironment instead of \newenvironment. An existing environment is redefined.
\newtcbox{⟨init options⟩}{⟨name⟩}{⟨number⟩}{⟨default⟩}{⟨options⟩}

Creates a new macro ⟨name⟩ based on \tcbox\textsuperscript{P.14}. Basically, \newtcbox operates like \newcommand. The new macro ⟨name⟩ optionally takes ⟨number⟩+1 arguments, where ⟨default⟩ is the default value for the optional first argument. The ⟨options⟩ are given to the underlying \tcbox. The ⟨init options⟩ allow setting up automatic numbering, see Section 5 from page 114.

\newtcbox{mybox}{colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black}
\mybox{This is my own box.}

\newtcbox{\mybox}{l}{colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, fonttitle=\bfseries, title={#1}}
\mybox{Hello there}{This is my own box.}

\newtcbox{\mybox}{l}{colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, fonttitle=\bfseries, title={#2}, #1}
\mybox{colback=yellow}{Hello there}
\mybox{This is my own box.}

Definition in the preamble:

\newtcbox[use counter from=pabox]{pbbox}{l}{colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, fonttitle=\bfseries, title=(\thetcbcounter) #2, #1}

\pbbox{colback=yellow}{Hello there}
\pbbox{This is my own box.}

\newtcbox{\mybox}{l}{on line, arc=0pt, outer arc=0pt, colback=\#1!10!white, colframe=\#1!50!black, boxsep=0pt, left=1pt, right=1pt, top=2pt, bottom=2pt, boxrule=0pt, bottomrule=1pt, toprule=1pt}

\newtcbox{\xmybox}{l}{on line, arc=7pt, colback=\#1!10!white, colframe=\#1!50!black, before upper=\rule[-3pt]{0pt}{10pt}, boxrule=1pt, boxsep=0pt, left=6pt, right=6pt, top=2pt, bottom=2pt}

The \mybox[green]{quick} brown \mybox[blue]{fox} \mybox[green]{jumps} over the \mybox[green]{lazy} \mybox[dog]. \par

The \xmybox[green]{quick} brown \xmybox[blue]{fox} \xmybox[green]{jumps} over the \xmybox[green]{lazy} \xmybox[dog].

\newcommand{⟨init options⟩}{⟨name⟩}{⟨number⟩}{⟨default⟩}{⟨options⟩}

Operates like \newtcbox, but based on \renewcommand instead of \newcommand. An existing macro is redefined.
An existing environment \langle name \rangle is redefined to be boxed inside a \texttt{tcolorbox} with the given \langle options \rangle.

\begin{verbatim}
% \tcbuselibrary{skins}
\newenvironment{myitemize}{\begin{itemize}}{\end{itemize}}
\tcolorboxenvironment{myitemize}{blanker, before skip=6pt, after skip=6pt,
\hspace{3mm}borderline west={3mm}{0pt}{red}}

Some text. \begin{myitemize}
\item Alpha
\item Beta
\item Gamma
\end{myitemize} More text.
\end{verbatim}

See further examples in Section 18.4 on page 386.
4 Option Keys

For the \textit{options} in \texttt{tcolorbox} \textsuperscript{P.12} respectively \texttt{tcbset} \textsuperscript{P.13} the following \texttt{pgf} keys can be applied. The key tree path /tcb/ is not to be used inside these macros. It is easy to add your own style keys using the syntax for \texttt{pgf} keys, see \textcite{18, 22} or the examples starting from page 348.

4.1 Title

\texttt{/tcb/title=\langle text\rangle} (no default, initially empty)

Creates a heading line with \texttt{\langle text\rangle} as content.

\begin{tcolorbox} \[title=My heading line\] This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}. \end{tcolorbox}

My heading line
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

\texttt{/tcb/notitle} (no value, initially set)

Removes the title line if set before.

\texttt{/tcb/adjusted title=\langle text\rangle} (style, no default, initially unset)

Creates a heading line with \texttt{\langle text\rangle} as content. The minimal height of this line is adjusted to fit the text given by \texttt{/tcb/adjust text}. This option makes sense for single line headings if boxes are set side by side with equal height. Note that it is very easy to trick this adjustment.

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset{colback=White,arc=0mm,width=(\linewidth-4pt)/4, equal height group=AT,before=,after=\hfill,fonttitle=\bfseries}

The following titles are not adjusted:\\\n\begin{tcolorbox}[title=\texttt{\n},colframe=red!75!black] Some content. \end{tcolorbox}\\n\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=\texttt{\n},colframe=blue!75!black] Some content. \end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}

The following titles are not adjusted:

\begin{verbatim}
\foreach \n in {xxx,ggg,AAA,Ägypten}\begin{tcolorbox}[title=\n] Some content. \end{tcolorbox}\\n\foreach \n in {xxx,ggg,AAA,Ägypten}\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=\n] Some content. \end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{/tcb/adjust text=\langle text\rangle} (no default, initially Äpgjy)

This sets the reference text for \texttt{/tcb/adjusted title}. If your texts never exceed “Äpgjy” in depth and height you don’t need to care about this option.
/tcb/squeezed title=⟨text⟩

Creates a single heading line with ⟨text⟩ as content. If the ⟨text⟩ is longer than the available space, the text is squeezed to fit into the available space.

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster columns=3,\raster equal height,\colframe=red!75!black,\colback=red!5!white,\fonttitle=\sffamily\bfseries]\tcbitem[squeezed title=\textbf{Short title}]{First box}\tcbitem[squeezed title=\textbf{This is a very very long title}]{Second box}\tcbitem[squeezed title=\textbf{This title is clearly to long for this application}]{Third box}\end{tcbitemize}

/tcb/squeezed title*=⟨text⟩

This is a combination of /tcb/adjusted title\(^\text{P.18}\) and /tcb/squeezed title.

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster columns=3,\raster equal height,\colframe=red!75!black,\colback=red!5!white,\fonttitle=\sffamily\bfseries]\tcbitem[squeezed title*=\textbf{Short title}]{First box}\tcbitem[squeezed title*=\textbf{This is a very very long title}]{Second box}\tcbitem[squeezed title*=\textbf{This title is clearly to long for this application}]{Third box}\end{tcbitemize}

/tcb/titlebox=⟨mode⟩

Controls the treatment of the title part of the box. Feasible values for ⟨mode⟩ are:

- \textit{visible}: usual type setting of the title box,
- \textit{invisible}: empty space instead of the title contents.

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My invisible title,\titlebox=invisible]This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}..\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

19
Detaches the title from its normal position. The text of the title is stored into \texttt{\tcbtitletext} and the formatted title is available by \texttt{\tcbtitle}. The main application is to move the title from its usual place to another one.

```
\newtcolorbox[2][]{mybox}[2]{colbacktitle=red!10!white, colback=blue!10!white,coltitle=red!70!black, title=#2,fonttitle={\bfseries,#1}}

\begin{mybox}{My title}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}
```

```
\begin{mybox}[detach title,before upper={\tcbtitle\quad}]{My title}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}
```

```
\begin{mybox}[detach title,after upper={\par\hfill\tcbtitle}]{My title}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}
```

My title
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

My title
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

Attaches the title to its normal position. This option is used to reverse /tcb/detach title.

```
\newtcolorbox[2][2]{mybox}[2]{colbacktitle=red!10!white, colback=blue!10!white,coltitle=red!70!black, title=#2,fonttitle={\bfseries,#1}}

\begin{mybox}{My title}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}
```

```
\begin{mybox}[attach title to upper={---}]{My title}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}
```

```
\begin{mybox}[attach title to upper,after title={:}]{My title}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}
```

My title — This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

My title: This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

More title options are documented in Section 4.11 on page 64 and Section 10.2 on page 163.
4.2 Subtitle

Inside the box content, one or more subtitles can be added. In general, a subtitle is a further \tcolorbox which inherits some color and geometry options from the enclosing box. It may be customized just like any other \tcolorbox.

\tcbsubtitle\{(options)\} \{(text)\}

Used inside a \tcolorbox to add a subtitle box with the given \{(text)\}. This is an independent \tcolorbox which is formatted by several inherited properties of the enclosing box, by further settings from /tcb/subtitle style, and by the given \{(options)\}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title, 
colback=red!5!white, 
colframe=red!75!black, 
fonttitle=\bfseries] 
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcbsubtitle\{My subtitle\} 
Further text.
\end{tcolorbox}

My title 
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
My subtitle 
Further text.

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title, 
colback=red!5!white, 
colframe=red!75!black, 
colbacktitle=yellow!50!red, 
coltitle=red!25!black, 
fonttitle=\bfseries] 
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcbsubtitle\{My subtitle\} 
Further text.
\end{tcolorbox}

My title 
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
My subtitle 
Further text.

/tcb/subtitle style=\{(options)\} 
(no default, initially empty)

Adds \tcolorbox \{(options)\} to the settings for \tcbsubtitle.
4.3 Upper Part

The text content of a \texttt{tcolorbox} \textsuperscript{P.12} may be parted into a mandatory \textit{upper part} and an optional \textit{lower part}. These parts are separated by \texttt{tcblower} \textsuperscript{P.12}. If there is no \texttt{tcblower} \textsuperscript{P.12} present, there is no \textit{lower part} and the \textit{upper part} forms the complete text content.

N \textsuperscript{2015-01-06} \texttt{/tcb/upperbox=\{mode\}} \textsuperscript{P.12} (no default, initially \texttt{visible})

Controls the treatment of the upper part of the box. If there is no lower part, this is the complete text content. Feasible values for \{\texttt{mode}\} are:
- \texttt{visible}: usual type setting of the upper part,
- \texttt{invisible}: empty space instead of the upper part contents.

\begin{tcolorbox}\[upperbox=invisible,colback=white\]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox} (but invisible).
\end{tcolorbox}

This is the lower part.

N \textsuperscript{2015-01-06} \texttt{/tcb/visible} \textsuperscript{P.12} (style, no value)

Shortcut for setting \texttt{/tcb/upperbox}, \texttt{/tcb/lowerbox} \textsuperscript{P.24}, and \texttt{/tcb/titlebox} \textsuperscript{P.19} to be \texttt{visible}.

N \textsuperscript{2015-01-06} \texttt{/tcb/invisible} \textsuperscript{P.12} (style, no value)

Shortcut for setting \texttt{/tcb/upperbox}, \texttt{/tcb/lowerbox} \textsuperscript{P.24}, and \texttt{/tcb/titlebox} \textsuperscript{P.19} to be \texttt{invisible}.

\begin{tcolorbox}\[invisible\]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox} (but invisible).
\end{tcolorbox}
Saves the content of the box into a file for an optional later usage. This is the counterpart of `/tcb/savelowerto`\textsuperscript{P.24}, but is saves not only the upper part but the whole content. If a lower part is present, it is also saved including \texttt{\textbackslash tcblower}\textsuperscript{P.12}.

This option cannot be combined with `/tcb/savelowerto`\textsuperscript{P.24}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[invisible,saveto=\jobname_mysave1.tex,colback=white]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox} which seems to be empty. The content is saved for later usage.
\end{tcolorbox}

Now, we load the saved text:
\input{\jobname_mysave1.tex}

\begin{tcolorbox}[saveto=\jobname_mysave2.tex]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}. \tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

Now, we load the saved text:
\begin{tcolorbox}[colframe=red,colback=red!10,
    coltitle=black,colbacktitle=red!20,sidebyside,
    title=Here we see the saved content including the lower part]
\input{\jobname_mysave2.tex}
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

This is the lower part.

Now, we load the saved text:

Here we see the saved content including the lower part

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}. This is the lower part.
4.4 Lower Part

/tcb/lowerbox=(mode) (no default, initially visible)

Controls the treatment of the lower part of the box. Feasible values for \textit{mode} are:

- \textit{visible}: usual type setting of the lower part,
- \textit{invisible}: empty space instead of the lower part contents,
- \textit{ignored}: the lower part is not used (here).

The last two values are usually applied in connection with \texttt{savelowerto}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[lowerbox=invisible,colback=white]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part (but invisible).
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[lowerbox=ignored,colback=white]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part (but ignored).
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[lowerbox=invisible, savelowerto=\jobname_bspsave.tex, colback=white]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part which may be quite complex: \[ f(x) = \frac{1 + x^2}{1 - x^2} \].
\end{tcolorbox}

Now, we load the saved text:\
\input{\jobname_bspsave.tex}

\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
Now, we load the saved text:
This is the lower part which may be quite complex: \[ f(x) = \frac{1 + x^2}{1 - x^2} \].
\end{tcolorbox}

/U 2014-11-28

/tcb/savelowerto=(file name) (no default, initially empty)

Saves the content of the lower part into a file for an optional later usage.
\( /\text{tcb/\texttt{lower separated}}=\texttt{true}|\texttt{false} \) (default \texttt{true}, initially \texttt{true})

If set to \texttt{true}, the lower part is visually separated from the upper part. It depends on the chosen skin how the visualization of the separation is done.

\begin{tcbraster}
\begin{tcolorbox}[sidebyside,title=Lower separated]
This is the upper part.
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[sidebyside,title=Lower not separated,lower separated=false]
This is the upper part.
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[beamer,title=Lower separated]
This is the upper part.
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[beamer,title=Lower not separated,lower separated=false]
This is the upper part.
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcbraster}
/tcb/savedelimiter=(name)  (no default, initially tcolorbox)

Used in connection with new environment definitions which extend tcolorbox and use or allow the option savelowerto. To catch the end of the new box environment (name) has to be the name of this environment. Additionally, the environment definition has to use \tcbox instead of \begin{tcolorbox} and \end{tcolorbox} instead of \end{tcolorbox}.

\begin{mybox}{My Example}
Upper part.
\tcblower
Saved lower part!
\end{mybox}

Now, the saved part is used:
\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=green!5]
\input{\jobname_bspsave2.tex}
\end{tcolorbox}

My Example
Upper part.
Saved lower part!

The savedelimiter is used implicitly with \newtcolorbox which allows a more convenient usage:

\begin{mybox}{My Example}
Upper part.
\tcblower
Saved lower part!
\end{mybox}

Now, the saved part is used:
\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=green!5]
\input{\jobname_bspsave2.tex}
\end{tcolorbox}

My Example
Upper part.
Saved lower part!
4.5 Colors and Fonts

*tcb/colframe* \(= \langle \text{color} \rangle\)  
(no default, initially black!75!white)
Sets the frame \(\langle \text{color} \rangle\) of the box.

\begin{tcolorbox}[colframe=red!50!white]  
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.  
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a tcolorbox.

*tcb/colback* \(= \langle \text{color} \rangle\)  
(no default, initially black!5!white)
Sets the background \(\langle \text{color} \rangle\) of the box.

\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=red!50!white]  
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.  
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a tcolorbox.

Also see /tcb/colbacklower of the \texttt{\$skins} library.

*tcb/title filled* = true|false  
(default true, initially false)
Switches the drawing of the title background according to the given value. This option is set to true automatically by /tcb/colbacktitle, /tcb/opacitybacktitle, /tcb/title style, and /tcb/title code.

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title, title filled]  
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.  
\end{tcolorbox}

My title  
This is a tcolorbox.

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title, title filled=false]  
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.  
\end{tcolorbox}

My title  
This is a tcolorbox.

*tcb/colbacktitle* \(= \langle \text{color} \rangle\)  
(no default, initially black!50!white)
Sets the background \(\langle \text{color} \rangle\) of the title area of the box.

\begin{tcolorbox}[colbacktitle=red!50!white, title=My title, coltitle=black, fonttitle=bfseries]  
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.  
\end{tcolorbox}

My title  
This is a tcolorbox.
\begin{tcolorbox}[colupper=red!75!black]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
This is a tcolorbox.
This is the lower part.

\begin{tcolorbox}[collower=red!75!black]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
This is a tcolorbox.
This is the lower part.

\begin{tcolorbox}[coltext=red!75!black]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
This is a tcolorbox.
This is the lower part.

\begin{tcolorbox}[coltitle=red!75!black, colbacktitle=black!10!white, title=Test]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
Test
This is a tcolorbox.
Sets \textlangle text\rangle before the content of the upper part (e.g. font settings).

\begin{tcolorbox}[fontupper=\texttt{Hello!~\textsf{family}}]
This is a \textbf{\texttt{tcolorbox}}.
\end{tcolorbox}

Hello! This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.

Sets \textlangle text\rangle before the content of the lower part (e.g. font settings).

\begin{tcolorbox}[fontlower=\textsf{bfseries}]
This is a \textbf{\texttt{tcolorbox}}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.

This is the lower part.

Sets \textlangle text\rangle before the content of the title text (e.g. font settings).

\begin{tcolorbox}[fonttitle=\textsf{bfseries}\texttt{large},title=Hello]
This is a \textbf{\texttt{tcolorbox}}.
\end{tcolorbox}

Hello

This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.

More color options are provided by using skins documented in Section 10 from page 156.
4.6 Text Alignment

\texttt{/tcb/halign=⟨alignment⟩}  
(no default, initially \texttt{justify})

If there is no lower part, \texttt{halign} determines the horizontal \texttt{⟨alignment⟩} of the text content. Otherwise, \texttt{halign} determines the horizontal \texttt{⟨alignment⟩} of the upper part of the box only. The feasible values for \texttt{⟨alignment⟩} are more or less identical to the corresponding \texttt{/tikz/align} settings, even if the implementation differs.

- \texttt{justify}: usual left and right justified type setting.
- \texttt{left}: left border justification in analogy to plain \TeX.
- \texttt{flush left}: left border justification with \texttt{\raggedright} of \LaTeX.
- \texttt{right}: right border justification in analogy to plain \TeX.
- \texttt{flush right}: right border justification with \texttt{\raggedleft} of \LaTeX.
- \texttt{center}: centering in analogy to plain \TeX.
- \texttt{flush center}: centering with \texttt{\centering} of \LaTeX.

The differences between the flush and non-flush version are explained in detail in the Ti\textit{k}Z manual \cite{tikzmanual}. The short story is that the non-flush versions will often look more balanced but with more hyphenations.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcbset}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,size=small,
fonttitle=\bfseries,width=3.5cm,box align=top,
nobeforeafter}
\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=flush center,halign=flush center]
This is a demonstration text for showing how line breaking works.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=flush left,halign=flush left]
This is a demonstration text for showing how line breaking works.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=flush right,halign=flush right]
This is a demonstration text for showing how line breaking works.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=center,halign=center]
This is a demonstration text for showing how line breaking works.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=left,halign=left]
This is a demonstration text for showing how line breaking works.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=right,halign upper=right]
This is a demonstration text for showing how line breaking works.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}
The `halign lower` determines the horizontal \textit{alignment} of the lower part of the box. The feasible values for \textit{alignment} are the same as for \texttt{halign}. 

\begin{tcbraster}[raster columns=3,fonttitle=\bfseries, colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]
\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=flush center,halign lower=flush center]
Upper part. \tcblower Lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=flush left,halign lower=flush left]
Upper part. \tcblower Lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=flush right,halign lower=flush right]
Upper part. \tcblower Lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=center,halign lower=center]
Upper part. \tcblower Lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=left,halign lower=left]
Upper part. \tcblower Lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=right,halign lower=right]
Upper part. \tcblower Lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcbraster}
halign lower determines the horizontal \textit{(alignment)} of the title of the box. The feasible values for \textit{(alignment)} are the same as for \texttt{/tcb/halign} \textsuperscript{P.30}.

\begin{tcbraster}[raster columns=3,fonttitle=\bfseries, colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]
\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=flush center,halign title=flush center]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=flush left,halign title=flush left]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=flush right,halign title=flush right]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=center,halign title=center]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=left,halign title=left]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=right,halign title=right]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcbraster}

\texttt{/tcb/flushleft upper} \hspace*{2em} (style, no value)

Shortcut for setting \texttt{/tcb/halign} \textsuperscript{P.30} to \texttt{flush left}.

\texttt{/tcb/center upper} \hspace*{2em} (style, no value)

Shortcut for setting \texttt{/tcb/halign} \textsuperscript{P.30} to \texttt{flush center}.

\texttt{/tcb/flushright upper} \hspace*{2em} (style, no value)

Shortcut for setting \texttt{/tcb/halign} \textsuperscript{P.30} to \texttt{flush right}.

\texttt{/tcb/flushleft lower} \hspace*{2em} (style, no value)

Shortcut for setting \texttt{/tcb/halign lower} \textsuperscript{P.31} to \texttt{flush left}.

\texttt{/tcb/center lower} \hspace*{2em} (style, no value)

Shortcut for setting \texttt{/tcb/halign lower} \textsuperscript{P.31} to \texttt{flush center}.

\texttt{/tcb/flushright lower} \hspace*{2em} (style, no value)

Shortcut for setting \texttt{/tcb/halign lower} \textsuperscript{P.31} to \texttt{flush right}.

32
The vertical alignment settings are only relevant for boxes which are larger than their natural height, see Section 4.10 on page 53.

If the height of a `tcolorbox` is not the natural height, `valign` determines the vertical alignment of the upper part. Feasible values are

- `top`: Anchor text at top.
- `center`: Anchor text at center.
- `bottom`: Anchor text at bottom.
- `scale`: Scale text vertically to fit into the available space. This is brutal and may not look very good. Consider Section 22 on page 438 alternatively.
- `scale*`: Like `scale`, but scaling is bounded by `/tcb/valign scale limit`.

For a box with natural height, these settings are meaningless.

```
\tcbset{width=(\linewidth-2mm)/4,before=,after=\hfill, colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,height=2cm}
\foreach \myalign in {top,center,bottom,scale}
{\begin{tcolorbox}[valign=\myalign]
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}}
```

Alias for `/tcb/valign`.

This key has the same meaning for the lower part as `valign` for the upper part, i.e., it determines the vertical alignment of the lower part with feasible values `top`, `center`, `bottom`, `scale`, and `scale*`.

```
\tcbset{width=(\linewidth-2mm)/4,before=,after=\hfill, colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,height=2cm}
\foreach \myalign in {top,center,bottom,scale}
{\begin{tcolorbox}[valign=\myalign]
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}}
```

Sets an upper scale limit for the `scale*` setting in `/tcb/valign` and `/tcb/valign lower`. Note that this value is not reset by `/tcb/reset`\textsuperscript{P.112}. So, changes also apply to embedded boxes.

Also see `/tcb/sidebyside align`\textsuperscript{P.124} for alignment settings when upper part and lower part are set side-by-side.
4.7 Geometry

4.7.1 Width

/tcb/width=(length) (no default, initially \linewidth)
Sets the total width of the colored box to \(\text{length}\). See also /tcb/height \textsuperscript{P.53}.

\OneNote{2014-10-31}
/tcb/text width=(length) (style, no default)
Sets the text width of the upper part to \(\text{length}\). See also /tcb/text height \textsuperscript{P.54}.

\OneNote{2014-11-07}
/tcb/add to width=(length) (style, no default)
Adds \(\text{length}\) to the current total width of the colored box.

See Section 4.10 on page 53 for setting fixed height values.
4.7.2 Rules

\[ /tcb/toprule=(length) \]

(no default, initially 0.5mm)

Sets the line width of the top rule to \( (length) \).

\[ \text{\texttt{tcbset}}\{\text{colback=red!5!white}, \text{colframe=red!75!black}\} \]

\[ \begin{tcolorbox}\{toprule=3mm\} \]

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

\[ \end{tcolorbox} \]

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

\[ /tcb/bottomrule=(length) \]

(no default, initially 0.5mm)

Sets the line width of the bottom rule to \( (length) \).

\[ \text{\texttt{tcbset}}\{\text{colback=red!5!white}, \text{colframe=red!75!black}\} \]

\[ \begin{tcolorbox}\{bottomrule=3mm\} \]

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

\[ \end{tcolorbox} \]

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

\[ /tcb/leftrule=(length) \]

(no default, initially 0.5mm)

Sets the line width of the left rule to \( (length) \).

\[ \text{\texttt{tcbset}}\{\text{colback=red!5!white}, \text{colframe=red!75!black}\} \]

\[ \begin{tcolorbox}\{leftrule=3mm\} \]

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

\[ \end{tcolorbox} \]

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

\[ /tcb/rightrule=(length) \]

(no default, initially 0.5mm)

Sets the line width of the right rule to \( (length) \).

\[ \text{\texttt{tcbset}}\{\text{colback=red!5!white}, \text{colframe=red!75!black}\} \]

\[ \begin{tcolorbox}\{rightrule=3mm\} \]

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

\[ \end{tcolorbox} \]

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}. 

35
Sets the line width of the rule below the title to \(\text{length}\).

\[
\texttt{tcbset}\{\text{enhanced, colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black,}
\text{colbacktitle=red!90!black}\}
\begin{tcolorbox}\[\text{titlerule=3mm, title=This is the title}\]
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\]

Sets all rules of the frame to \(\text{length}\), i.e. \texttt{tcb/toprule-P.35}, \texttt{tcb/bottomrule-P.35}, \texttt{tcb/leftrule-P.35}, \texttt{tcb/rightrule-P.35}, and \texttt{tcb/titlerule}.

\[
\texttt{tcbset}\{\text{colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black}\}
\begin{tcolorbox}\[\text{boxrule=3mm}\]
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}\[\text{boxrule=3mm}\]
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\]

More options for drawing a \texttt{tcb/borderline-P.185} are provided by using skins documented in Section 10 from page 156.

4.7.3 Arcs

Sets the inner radius of the four frame arcs to \(\text{length}\).

\[
\texttt{tcbset}\{\text{colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black}\}
\begin{tcolorbox}\[\text{arc=0mm}\]
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}\[\text{arc=3mm}\]
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\]

This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
/tcb/circular arc

Sets /tcb/arc\textsuperscript{P.36} to match the half of the inner width of the colored box. If width and height of the box are identical, this gives a circle.

If the height of the box is smaller than the width, the result will look quite ugly.

\begin{tcolorbox}
[width=3cm, colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, halign=center, valign=center, square, circular arc]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/bean arc

Sets /tcb/arc\textsuperscript{P.36} to match the smaller value of the half of the inner width and of the inner height of the colored box.

This only works for a fixed /tcb/height\textsuperscript{P.33}. Also, /tcb/bean arc must be used \textit{after} width and height are set by option keys.

\tcbset{size=fbox, boxrule=0.5mm, colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, halign=center, valign=center}
\begin{tcolorbox}
[width=3cm, height=2cm, bean arc]
Box A
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}
[width=2cm, height=3cm, bean arc]
Box B
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/octogon arc

Sets /tcb/arc\textsuperscript{P.36} to match $\frac{1}{2+\sqrt{2}}$ of the inner width of the colored box. If width and height of the box are identical, the interior is a regular octogon.

\begin{tcolorbox}
[enhanced, size=minimal, auto outer arc, width=2.1cm, octogon arc, colback=red, colframe=white, colupper=white, fontupper=\fontsize{7mm}{7mm}\selectfont\bfseries\sffamily, halign=center, valign=center, square, arc is angular, borderline={0.2mm}{-1mm}{red} ]
STOP
\end{tcolorbox}
/tcb/arc is angular (no value, initially unset)

Using this options applies a patch which straightens the corners arcs of the boxes. The little arcs are replaced by little straight lines.

This patch is considered as an experimental feature. It changes some of the original TikZ code. This change may break with future updates of TikZ.

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black, arc=3mm}
\begin{tcolorbox}[arc is angular]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a \tcolorbox.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[arc is curved]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a \tcolorbox.

/tcb/arc is curved (no value, initially set)

This option resets the patch from /tcb/arc is angular. The original TikZ code is activated.

/tcb/outer arc=(length) (no default, initially unset)

Sets the outer radius of the four frame arcs to (length).

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}[arc=4mm,outer arc=1mm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a \tcolorbox.

/tcb/auto outer arc (no value, initially set)

Sets the outer radius of the four frame arcs automatically in dependency of the inner radius given by /tcb/arc^P.36.
4.7.4 Spacing

\texttt{/tcb/boxsep=⟨length⟩} 
(no default, initially 1mm)

Sets a common padding of \(⟨\text{length}⟩\) between the text content and the frame of the box. This value is added to the key values of \texttt{left}, \texttt{right}, \texttt{top}, \texttt{bottom}, and \texttt{middle} at the appropriate places.

\begin{tcolorbox}[boxsep=5mm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[boxsep=5mm,draft]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

\frame{w=195.3325pt, h=48.9750pt}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

\texttt{/tcb/left=⟨length⟩} 
(style, no default, initially 4mm)

Sets the left space between all text parts and frame (additional to boxsep). This is an abbreviation for setting \texttt{lefttitle}, \texttt{leftupper}, and \texttt{leftlower} to the same value.

\begin{tcolorbox}[left=0mm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

N 2017-02-16

\texttt{/tcb/left*=⟨length⟩} 
(style, no default)

Sets \texttt{/tcb/left} such that \(⟨\text{length}⟩\) is the distance between the left bounding box and the text parts.

\begin{tcolorbox}[grow to left by=5mm,left*=0mm,enhanced,show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is some text.

\begin{tcolorbox}[grow to left by=5mm,left*=0mm,enhanced,show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is some text.

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
Sets the left space between title text and frame (additional to boxsep).

\begin{tcolorbox}[lefttitle=3cm,title=My Title]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\textbf{My Title}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

Sets the left space between upper text and frame (additional to boxsep).

\begin{tcolorbox}[leftupper=3cm,title=My Title]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

\textbf{My Title}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

Sets the left space between lower text and frame (additional to boxsep).

\begin{tcolorbox}[leftlower=3cm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

\textbf{This is a tcolorbox.}
This is the lower part.

Sets the right space between all text parts and frame (additional to boxsep). This is an abbreviation for setting righttitle, rightupper, and rightlower to the same value.

\begin{tcolorbox}[width=5cm,right=2cm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\textbf{This is a tcolorbox.}
Sets $/tcb/right^*=$\texttt{\langle length \rangle}$ such that \langle length \rangle is the distance between the right bounding box and the text parts.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{flushright}
This is some text.
\end{flushright}
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcbset}
\colback=red!5!white,\colframe=red!75!black
\end{tcbset}
\begin{tcolorbox}[width=5cm,righttitle=2cm,title=My very long title text]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox} with standard upper box dimensions.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}

$\texttt{/tcb/righttitle}=$\texttt{\langle length \rangle}$ (no default, initially 4\text{mm})

Sets the right space between title text and frame (additional to boxsep).

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcbset}
\colback=red!5!white,\colframe=red!75!black
\end{tcbset}
\begin{tcolorbox}[width=5cm,rightupper=2cm,title=My very long title text]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox} with compressed upper box dimensions.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}

$\texttt{/tcb/rightupper}=$\texttt{\langle length \rangle}$ (no default, initially 4\text{mm})

Sets the right space between upper text and frame (additional to boxsep).

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcbset}
\colback=red!5!white,\colframe=red!75!black
\end{tcbset}
\begin{tcolorbox}[width=5cm,rightupper=2cm,title=My very long title text]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox} with compressed upper box dimensions.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}
Sets the right space between lower text and frame (additional to `boxsep`).

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}[width=5cm,rightlower=2cm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox} with standard upper box dimensions.
\tcblower
This is the lower part with large space at right.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

Sets the top space between text and frame (additional to `boxsep`).

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}[top=0mm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

Sets the top space between title and frame (additional to `boxsep`).

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}[toptitle=3mm,title=My title]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

My title

This is a tcolorbox.
/tcb/bottom=(length)  (no default, initially \(2\text{mm}\))
Sets the bottom space between text and frame (additional to boxsep).

\begin{tcolorbox}[bottom=0mm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
This is the lower part.

/tcb/bottomtitle=(length)  (no default, initially \(0\text{mm}\))
Sets the bottom space between title and frame (additional to boxsep).

\begin{tcolorbox}[bottomtitle=3mm,title=My title]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

My title

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

/tcb/middle=(length)  (no default, initially \(2\text{mm}\))
Sets the space between upper and lower text to the separation line (additional to boxsep).

\begin{tcolorbox}[middle=0mm,boxsep=0mm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[middle=0mm,boxsep=0mm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
This is the lower part.
### 4.7.5 Size Shortcuts

/\texttt{tcb/size}=⟨\texttt{name}⟩

(no default, initially normal)

Sets all geometry keys with exception of /\texttt{tcb/width} to predefined length values. For ⟨\texttt{name}⟩, the following values are feasible:

- normal: normal sized boxes e.g. of width \texttt{\linewidth}.
- title: title line sized boxes.
- small: small boxes e.g. for keyword highlighting.
- fbox: identical to the standard \texttt{\fbox}.
- tight: no padding space at all.
- minimal: no padding space, no box rules.

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\foreach \s in {normal,title,small,fbox,tight,minimal} {
  \tcbox[\texttt{size=}\s,\texttt{on line}]\{\s\}
}
\foreach \s in {normal,title,small,fbox,tight,minimal} {
  \tcbox[\texttt{size=}\s,\texttt{on line},\texttt{title=}Test]\{\s\}
}
\foreach \s in {normal,title,small,fbox,tight,minimal} {
  \begin{tcolorbox}[\texttt{size=}\s,\texttt{on line},\texttt{title=}Test,\texttt{width=}2.2cm]
    \s \tcblower lower\end{tcolorbox}
}
\end{verbatim}

Predefined values

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>normal</th>
<th>title</th>
<th>small</th>
<th>fbox</th>
<th>tight</th>
<th>minimal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>boxrule</td>
<td>0.5mm</td>
<td>0.4mm</td>
<td>0.3mm</td>
<td>0.4pt</td>
<td>0.4pt</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boxsep</td>
<td>1.0mm</td>
<td>1.0mm</td>
<td>1.0mm</td>
<td>3.0pt</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>left</td>
<td>4.0mm</td>
<td>2.0mm</td>
<td>1.0mm</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>right</td>
<td>4.0mm</td>
<td>2.0mm</td>
<td>1.0mm</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>top</td>
<td>2.0mm</td>
<td>0.25mm</td>
<td>0.0mm</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bottom</td>
<td>2.0mm</td>
<td>0.25mm</td>
<td>0.0mm</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>toptitle</td>
<td>0.0mm</td>
<td>0.0mm</td>
<td>0.0mm</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bottomtitle</td>
<td>0.0mm</td>
<td>0.0mm</td>
<td>0.0mm</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>middle</td>
<td>2.0mm</td>
<td>0.75mm</td>
<td>0.5mm</td>
<td>1.0pt</td>
<td>0.2pt</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arc</td>
<td>1.0mm</td>
<td>0.75mm</td>
<td>0.5mm</td>
<td>1.0pt</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>outer arc</td>
<td>auto</td>
<td>auto</td>
<td>auto</td>
<td>auto</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Sets the text width of the upper part to the current line width plus an optional \( \langle \text{length} \rangle \). This is achieved by changing the keys \( /\text{tcb/width} \) \( \rightarrow \) \( P.34 \), \( /\text{tcb/enlarge left by} \) \( \rightarrow \) \( P.89 \), and \( /\text{tcb/enlarge right by} \) \( \rightarrow \) \( P.89 \) appropriately. The resulting box is overlapping into the left and right margin of the page. Note that this style option has to be given \textit{after} all other geometry keys! Also see \( /\text{tcb/grow sidewards by} \) \( \rightarrow \) \( P.91 \) and \( /\text{tcb/spread sidewards} \) \( \rightarrow \) \( P.94 \).

\[ \text{Normal text for comparison:} \]

\[ \text{Oversized box} \]

\[ \text{Normal box} \]
4.7.6 Toggle Left and Right

According to the \(\textit{toggle preset}\), the left and the right settings of the \texttt{tcolorbox} are switched or not. Feasible values are:

- \texttt{none}: no switching.
- \texttt{forced}: the values of the left and right rules, spaces, and corners are switched.
- \texttt{evenpage}: if the page is an even page, the values of the left and right rules, spaces, and corners are switched. This value also sets \texttt{/tcb/check odd page} \textsuperscript{P.107} to \texttt{true}.

Horizontal bounding box enlargements are not toggled by this option. They can be toggled independently by \texttt{/tcb/toggle enlargement} \textsuperscript{P.92}. For example, \texttt{/tcb/oversize} \textsuperscript{P.45} changes the bounding box.

This example switches a 1cm thick rule from the left to the right side depending on the page number. Thereby, the rule is always on the outer side of the double-sided paper. Additionally, a ball is drawn on the outer side with help of an overlay.


4.8 Corners

The four corners of any \texttt{tcolorbox} can be set individually as \texttt{/tcb/sharp corners} or as \texttt{/tcb/rounded corners} \cite{align1}. These settings are also reflected in the behavior of \texttt{/tcb/borderline} \cite{align3} and \texttt{/tcb/shadow} \cite{align4} as one would expect.

By default, all four corners are \textit{rounded}. So, only the \texttt{/tcb/sharp corners} option will be necessary for most use cases. The \texttt{/tcb/rounded corners} \cite{align1} option can be used to revert a \texttt{/tcb/sharp corners} setting.

\texttt{/tcb/sharp corners=\{position\}} \hspace{1cm} (default \texttt{all}, initially unset)

The \texttt{\{position\}} denotes one or more of the four box corners to be set as \textit{sharp} corners. The not assigned corners will retain their mode. Feasible values for \texttt{\{position\}} are:

- \texttt{northwest}
- \texttt{northeast}
- \texttt{southwest}
- \texttt{southeast}
- \texttt{north}
- \texttt{south}
- \texttt{east}
- \texttt{west}
- \texttt{downhill}
- \texttt{uphill}
- \texttt{all}

\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, sharp corners=northwest ]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, sharp corners ]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
The \texttt{/tcb/rounded corners=(position)} can be used to revert a \texttt{/tcb/sharp corners} \textsuperscript{P.48} setting. The \texttt{(position)} denotes one or more of the four box corners to be set as \textit{rounded} corners. The not assigned corners will retain their mode. Feasible values for \texttt{(position)} are\textsuperscript{2}:

- \texttt{northwest}
- \texttt{northeast}
- \texttt{southwest}
- \texttt{southeast}
- \texttt{north}
- \texttt{south}
- \texttt{east}
- \texttt{west}
- \texttt{downhill}
- \texttt{uphill}
- \texttt{all}

\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, sharp corners, rounded corners=northwest ]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, sharpish corners ]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/sharpish corners} (style, no value)

Shortcut for setting \texttt{/tcb/arc} \textsuperscript{P.36} and \texttt{/tcb/outer arc} \textsuperscript{P.38} to 0pt. With this setting, rounded corners will appear as quasi-sharp, but e.g. the shadow will be somewhat rounder than the shadow of really sharp corners.

\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, sharpish corners ]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, sharpish corners ]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\textsuperscript{2}The graphical examples assume that the boxes where set to have sharp corners before.
The following examples will show the differences between `/tcb/rounded corners`\(^{P.49}\), `/tcb/sharpish corners`\(^{P.49}\), and `/tcb/sharp corners`\(^{P.48}\). The later two give the same core box, but `/tcb/borderline`\(^{P.185}\) and `/tcb/shadow`\(^{P.196}\) settings are slightly different. The following examples use `/tcb/drop fuzzy shadow`\(^{P.190}\).
4.9 Transparency

Transparency effects are likely to be used in conjunction with jigsaw skin variants, see Section 10.11 on page 209.

\begin{tcolorbox}[opacityframe=0.25, colframe=red] This is a tcolorbox. \end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/opacityframe=⟨fraction⟩ (no default, initially 1.0)
Sets the frame opacity of the box to the given ⟨fraction⟩.

\begin{tcolorbox}[standard jigsaw, colframe=red, opacityframe=0.5, opacityback=0.5] This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}. \end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/opacityback=⟨fraction⟩ (no default, initially 1.0)
Sets the background opacity of the box to the given ⟨fraction⟩.

\begin{tcolorbox}[standard jigsaw, colframe=red, opacityframe=0.5, opacitybacktitle=0.5, title filled, title=This is a title] This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}. \end{tcolorbox}

Also see /tcb/opacitybacklower → P.231 of the \texttt{\textbf{skins}} library.

/tcb/opacitybacktitle=⟨fraction⟩ (no default, initially 1.0)
Sets the title background opacity of the box to the given ⟨fraction⟩.

\begin{tcolorbox}[standard jigsaw, colframe=red, opacityframe=0.5, opacityback=0.5, title=This is a title] This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}. \end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/opacityfill=⟨fraction⟩ (style, no default, initially 1.0)
Sets the fill opacity for frame, interior and optionally the title background to the given ⟨fraction⟩.

\begin{tcolorbox}[standard jigsaw, colframe=red, opacityfill=0.7, title=This is a title] This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}. \end{tcolorbox}
Sets the text opacity of the upper box part to the given \langle fraction\rangle.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,opacityupper=0.5, interior ]
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,interior']
\textbf{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}
\textbf{tcolorbox}
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

Sets the text opacity of the lower box part to the given \langle fraction\rangle.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,opacitylower=0.5, interior ]
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,interior']
\textbf{tcolorbox}
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

Sets the text opacity of the upper and the lower box part to the given \langle fraction\rangle.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,opacitytext=0.5, interior ]
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,interior']
\textbf{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}
	\textbf{tcolorbox}
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

Sets the text opacity of the box title to the given \langle fraction\rangle.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,opacitytitle=0.7, coltitle=black, fonttitle=\bfseries, title=This is a title, title']
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=This is a title, title']
\textbf{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a title
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
4.10 Height Control

In a typical usage scenario, the height of a \texttt{tcolorbox} is computed automatically to fit the content. Nevertheless, the height can be set to a fixed value or to fit commonly for several boxes, e.g. if boxes are set side by side.

The height control keys are only applicable to unbreakable boxes. If a box is set to be \texttt{/tcb/breakable}, the height is always computed according to the \textit{natural height}.

\begin{itemize}
  \item \texttt{/tcb/natural height} \hspace{1cm} (no value, initially set)
    
    Sets the total height of the colored box to its natural height depending on the box content.
  \item \texttt{/tcb/height=⟨length⟩} \hspace{1cm} (no default)
    
    Sets the total height of the colored box to \langle length ⟩ independent of the box content. \langle length ⟩ is the minimum height of the box, if \texttt{/tcb/height plus} is larger than zero.
\end{itemize}

\begin{tcolorbox}[height=1cm,valign=center]
This box has a height of 1cm.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[height=2cm,valign=center]
This box has a height of 2cm.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[height=3cm,split=0.5,valign=center,valign lower=center]
This box has a height of 3cm.
tcblower
Lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{itemize}
  \item \texttt{/tcb/height plus=⟨length⟩} \hspace{1cm} (no default, initially 0pt)
    
    The box may extend a given fixed \texttt{/tcb/height} up to the given \langle length ⟩.
\end{itemize}

\begin{tcolorbox}[height=1cm]
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[height=1cm,height plus=1cm]
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[height=1cm,height plus=1cm]
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}. This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}. This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,left=1mm,top=1mm,bottom=1mm, right=1mm,boxsep=0mm,width=3cm,nobeforeafter]
\begin{tcolorbox}[height=1cm]
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[height=1cm,height plus=1cm]
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[height=1cm,height plus=1cm]
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}. This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}. This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
/tcb/height from=(min) to (max)  (style, no default)

Sets the box height to a dimension between ⟨min⟩ and ⟨max⟩.

\begin{mybox}
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}
This is a tcolorbox. This is a tcolorbox. This is a tcolorbox.
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}
\lipsum[2]
\end{mybox}

\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}[text height=2cm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox} where the text area has a height of 2cm.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a tcolorbox.
This is a tcolorbox. This is a tcolorbox.
This is a tcolorbox. This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}


N 2014-10-31 /tcb/text height=(length)  (style, no default)

Sets the text height to ⟨length⟩. This is the length from the top of the upper part to the bottom of the optional lower part. See also /tcb/text width .

\begin{tcolorbox}[text height=2cm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox} where the text area has a height of 2cm.
\end{tcolorbox}
/tcb/add to height\(=\langle length\rangle\) (style, no default)

Adds \(\langle length\rangle\) to the current height of the colored box. /tcb/height\(^{+}.53\) has to be set before this key is used! If this option is used several times, then the /tcb/height\(^{+}.53\) is also increased several times.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\tcbset{height=2cm, valign=center, width=(\linewidth-2mm)/2, before=, after=\hfill, colframe=blue!75!black, colback=white}
\begin{tcolorbox}
This box has a height of 2cm.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[add to height=1cm]
This box has a height of 3cm.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}

This box has a height of 2cm.
This box has a height of 3cm.

/tcb/add to natural height\(=\langle length\rangle\) (style, no default)

The application of this option generates a box with natural height plus the given \(\langle length\rangle\). If this option is used several times, then the last setting of \(\langle length\rangle\) wins. The resulting box is not considered a fixed height box and the implementation is quite different to /tcb/add to height.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\tcbset{valign=center, width=(\linewidth-2mm)/2, before=, after=\hfill, colframe=blue!75!black, colback=white}
\begin{tcolorbox}
This box has natural height.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[add to natural height=1cm]
This box has natural height plus 1 cm.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}

This box has natural height.
This box has natural height plus 1 cm.
If set to `true`, the height of the `tcolorbox` is set to the rest of the available vertical space of the current page. If set to `maximum`, the page is compressed as much as possible. Note that the `tcolorbox` is always set as its own paragraph using this option. Also see `/tcb/text fill` \textsuperscript{P.69}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[height fill, colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, fonttitle=\bfseries, title=Box which fills the rest of the page]
\lipsum[1]
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/inherit height=⟨fraction⟩

(default 1, initially unset)

If this option is used for a \textcolorbox which is embedded inside another (outer) \textcolorbox and if this outer \textcolorbox has a fixed height, then the given \textit{fraction} of the available text height of the outer \textcolorbox is used as /tcb/height/P.53 for the current \textcolorbox. Otherwise, /tcb/natural height/P.53 is applied for the current \textcolorbox.
Sets `/tcb/height` to match the width of the colored box.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}
[width=3cm, colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, halign=center, valign=center, square]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

 `/tcb/space=⟨fraction⟩` (no default, initially 0)
If the height of a `tcolorbox` is not the natural height, the space difference between the forced and the natural size is distributed between the upper and the lower part of the box. This space could also be negative. `{fraction}` with a value between 0 and 1 is the amount of space which is added to the upper part, the rest is added to the lower part. If there is no lower part, then all of the space is added to the upper part always.

```
\tcbset{width=(\linewidth-2mm)/3,before=,after=\hfill, colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,height=3cm}
\foreach \f in {0.2,0.4,0.7}
{\begin{tcolorbox}[space=\f]
This is the upper part.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}}
```

 `/tcb/space to upper` (style)
This is an abbreviation for `space=1`, i.e. all extra space is added to the upper part.

 `/tcb/space to lower` (style, initially set)
This is an abbreviation for `space=0`, i.e. all extra space is added to the lower part (if there is any).
This is an abbreviation for \texttt{space=0.5}, i.e. the extra space equally distributed between the upper and the lower part.

\begin{tcolorbox}[width=(\linewidth-2mm)/3,before=,after=\hfill, colframe=blue!75!black, colback=white, height=3cm]
\foreach \myspace in {space to upper, space to both, space to lower}
\begin{tcolorbox}\\[2mm]
\myspace\\[1mm]
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb\space to both} \hspace{1cm} \texttt{(style)}

\texttt{This is the upper part.} \hspace{1cm} \texttt{This is the lower part.}

\texttt{This is my box of height 3cm. The space is filled with a picture:}

\begin{tcolorbox}[colframe=blue!75!black, colback=white, height=3cm, space to=\myspace]
\includegraphics[width=\linewidth, height=\myspace]{goldshade.png}
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{This is some other text.}

\texttt{/tcb\space to=} \texttt{(macro)} \hspace{1cm} \texttt{(no default, initially unset)}

If the height of a \texttt{tcolorbox} is not the natural height, the space difference between the forced and the natural size is saved into the given local \texttt{(macro)}. This \texttt{(macro)} can and should be used inside the box content to add content which is vertically sized to match \texttt{(macro)}.

\begin{itemize}
  \item The actual length saved into \texttt{(macro)} is adapted dynamically during several compilations – at least two, but maybe more.
  \item Due to the adoption algorithm, objects can be sized with \texttt{(macro)} plus any offset length.
  \item Never ever use \texttt{(macro)} multiplied with a factor. The only exception to this rule is that the space can be split into parts which sum to \texttt{(macro)}.
  \item Never use this in combination with \texttt{/tcb/fit}^{P.441}.
\end{itemize}

\begin{tcolorbox}[colframe=blue!75!black, colback=white, height=3cm, space to=\myspace]
This is my box of height 3cm. The space is filled with a picture:\\[2mm]
\end{tcolorbox}

This is some other text.
If the height of a `tcolorbox` is not the natural height, the \textit{fraction} with a value between 0 and 1 determines the positioning of the segmentation between the upper and the lower part. Here, 0 stands for top and 1 for bottom. Note that the box is split regardless of the actual dimensions of the text parts!
Boxes which are members of an equal height group will all get the same height, i.e. the maximum of all their natural heights. The \langle id \rangle serves to distinguish between different height groups. Note that you have to compile twice to see changes and that height groups are global definitions.

\begin{tcolorbox}[equal height group=A,adjusted title={One}]
My smallest box.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[equal height group=A,adjusted title={Two}]
This box is also small. \\
tcblower
But with a lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[equal height group=A,adjusted title={Three}]
This box contains a lot of text just to fill the space with word flowing and flowing and flowing until the box is filled with all of it.
\end{tcolorbox}

% \tcbset{width=(\linewidth-1mm)/2,before=,after=\hfill,arc=0mm, colframe=red!75!black,colback=white}
% \begin{tcolorbox}[equal height group=B]
% Now, we use another equal height group.
% \end{tcolorbox}

\begin{equation*}
\int_{0}^{1} x^2 = \frac{1}{3}.
\end{equation*}

\begin{tcolorbox}[equal height group=B,after=]}
\begin{equation*}
\int_{0}^{1} x^2 = \frac{1}{3}.
\end{equation*}
\end{tcolorbox}

See Section 16 on page 297 for more equal height options.
Plants a \langle length \rangle into the equal height group with the given \langle id \rangle. This ensures that the height will not drop below \langle length \rangle. Note that you cannot reduce a computed height value by using this key with a small value. The difference to applying /tcb/height \textsuperscript{P.53} directly is that the boxes are never too small for their content.

\begin{tcolorbox}
My first box. All boxes will get 3.5cm times 3.5cm if the content height is not too large.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
My second box.
\tcbuder
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
\textbf{Mixed} with a listing.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title={Fourth box}]
My final box.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster equal height,colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,raster every box/.style={minimum for current equal height group=2cm}]
\tcbitem A
\tcbitem B
\end{tcbitemize}

Sets /tcb/minimum for equal height group for the current equal height group. Apparently, this only works for an already known equal height group, i.e. /tcb/equal height group \textsuperscript{P.61} has to be set \textit{before} this option is used. This option is likely to be used in combination with /tcb/raster equal height \textsuperscript{P.308}.
/tcb/use height from group=(id) \hspace{1cm} (style, default current group)

Sets the current box to a fixed /tcb/height\(^{P.53}\) which is copied from an equal height group with the given \langle id\rangle. If this height is not available during the current compilation, no fixed height setting is used. If \langle id\rangle is omitted, the current equal height group is used which has to be set before by /tcb/equal height group\(^{P.61}\).

Note that the natural height of the current box is not considered for computation of the group height. The main application for /tcb/use height from group is that the height can be adapted further by /tcb/add to height\(^{P.55}\).

\begin{tcolorbox}
[use height from group=C, add to height=-2cm, 
colframe=blue!75!black, colback=white]
Height from group \enquote{C} of the previous example, but reduced by 2cm.
\end{tcolorbox}

\% \tcbuselibrary{raster}
Every line is inside an equal height group:
\begin{tcbraster}[raster equal height=rows, 
title=Box \thetcbrasternum, 
enhanced, size=small, colframe=red!50!black, colback=red!10!white]
First line \second line
\begin{tcolorbox}First line \second line\end{tcolorbox}
The height of this box rules.\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[use height from group]Test\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[use height from group]First line \second line\end{tcolorbox}
The height of this box rules.\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcbraster}

\begin{tcolorbox}
Box 1
\begin{itemize}
\item First line
\item second line
\item The height of this box rules.
\end{itemize}
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
Box 2
\begin{itemize}
\item Test
\end{itemize}
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
Box 3
\begin{itemize}
\item First line
\item second line
\end{itemize}
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
Box 4
\begin{itemize}
\item The height of this box rules.
\end{itemize}
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{\tcbheightfromgroup\{\langle macro\rangle\}\{\langle id\rangle\}}

Saves the height from an equal height group with the given \langle id\rangle to a \langle macro\rangle. If this height is not available during the current compilation, \langle macro\rangle is set to 0pt.
4.11 Box Content Additions

The following options introduce some arbitrary \textit{(code)} to the content of a \texttt{tcolorbox}. These additions can be given at the beginning or at the ending of the title, the upper part, or the lower part.

\texttt{/tcb/before title=(\textit{code})} (no default, initially unset)

The given \textit{(code)} is placed \textit{after} the color and font settings and \textit{before} the content of the title.

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset{before title={\textcolor{yellow}{\large Important:}~},
    colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title]
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}

**Important:** My title

This is a tcolorbox.

\texttt{/tcb/after title=(\textit{code})} (no default, initially unset)

The given \textit{(code)} is placed \textit{after} the content of the title.

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset{after title={\hfill\colorbox{Navy}{approved}},
    colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title]
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}

My title

This is a tcolorbox.
The given \texttt{code} is placed \textit{after} the color and font settings and \textit{before} the content of the upper part. The \texttt{code} is appended by a final \texttt{\ignorespaces}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[size=small,tile,
  colback=yellow!20,colbacktitle=yellow!70!black,
  title=My table,hbox,center,center title,
  before upper*=\begin{tabular}{cc},
  after upper*=\end{tabular},
]
\begin{tabular}{cc}
  one & two \\
  three & four
\end{tabular}
\end{tcolorbox}
\[\textbf{tcolorbox}\]

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[before upper=\flqq,after upper=\frqq,
    colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[after upper=\par\hfill\textit{Read more next week}],
    colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}
\end{tcolorbox}
```

\begin{tcolorbox}[before upper=\flqq,after upper=\frqq,
    colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[after upper={\par\hfill\textit{Read more next week}},
    colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}
\end{tcolorbox}
```

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[after upper={\par\hfill\textit{Read more next week}},
    colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}
\end{tcolorbox}
```

From version 3.80 to 3.94, this option prepended an \texttt{unskip} to the given \texttt{code}.
From version 3.95 to 4.15, this option was deprecated.
From version 4.20, this option is re-established with changed semantic (no \texttt{unskip}!)
The given ⟨code⟩ is placed after the color and font settings and before the content of the lower part. The ⟨code⟩ is appended by a final \ignorespaces.

\tcbset{before lower=\textit{Behold:~},colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a tcolorbox.

\begin{tabular}{cc}
one & two \\
three & four
\end{tabular}

Behold: This is the lower part.

N 2019-02-26

The given ⟨code⟩ is placed after the color and font settings and before the content of the lower part. In contrast to /tcb/before lower, no \ignorespaces is appended. Use this for situations where \ignorespaces is not needed or causes harm.

\begin{tcolorbox}[size=small,bicolor,sidebyside,center lower,  
colback=yellow!30,colbacklower=yellow!20,colframe=yellow!80!black,  
before lower*=\begin{tabular}{cc},  
after lower*=\end{tabular},  
]
My table
\tcblower
\multicolumn{2}{c}{Title}\\
one & two \\
three & four\\
\end{tcolorbox}

My table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>two</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>three</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>four</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The given \(\textit{code}\) is placed after the content of the lower part. The \(\textit{code}\) is prepended by a leading \texttt{\unskip}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[after lower=\ \textit{This is the end.},
colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tclower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.

This is the lower part. This is the end.

The given \(\textit{code}\) is placed after the content of the lower part. In contrast to /tcb/after upper\(^{\mathrm{1.66}}\), no \texttt{\unskip} is prepended. Use this for situations where \texttt{\unskip} is not needed or causes harm.

\begin{tcolorbox}[before lower*=$,after lower*=$,
colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tclower
\sin^2(x)+\cos^2(x)=1.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.

\[\sin^2(x) + \cos^2(x) = 1.\]

From version 3.80 to 3.94, this option prepended an \texttt{\unskip} to the given \(\textit{code}\).
From version 3.95 to 4.15, this option was deprecated.
From version 4.20, this option is re-established with changed semantic (no \texttt{\unskip}!)
If `/tcb/text fill` is used, one cannot have a lower part and the box is unbreakable.

This style sets `/tcb/before upper` and `/tcb/after upper` to embed the upper part with a minipage. If a fixed height was applied e.g. by `/tcb/height` or `/tcb/height fill`, this minipage gets a matching height. This allows to use vertical glue macros like `\vfill` to act like expected. If the box has no fixed height, setting `/tcb/text fill` has no other effect as making the box unbreakable.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries, height=8cm,text fill, title=My filled box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\par\vfill
\begin{center}
My middle text.
\end{center}
\par\vfill
This is the end of my box.
\end{tcolorbox}
```
This style sets `/tcb/before upper` and `/tcb/after upper` and several geometry keys to support a `tabular*` with the given `⟨preamble⟩`. The packages `array` and `colortbl` have to be loaded separately.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\[\text{\texttt{\textbackslash tcbset}}\{\texttt{enhanced,fonttitle=\texttt{\textbf{\textsf{large}}},fontupper=\texttt{\textnormal{\textfamily{sffamily}}},}
\hspace{5mm}\texttt{colback=yellow!10!white,}\hspace{5mm}\texttt{colframe=red!50!black,}\hspace{5mm}\texttt{colbacktitle=Salmon!30!white,}\hspace{5mm}\texttt{coltitle=black,center title}}\}
\begin{tabular*}{\textwidth}{@{}lrrrrr@{}}
\hline
Group & One & Two & Three & Four & Sum \\
\hline
Red & 1000.00 & 2000.00 & 3000.00 & 4000.00 & 10000.00 \\
\hline
Green & 2000.00 & 3000.00 & 4000.00 & 5000.00 & 14000.00 \\
\hline
Blue & 3000.00 & 4000.00 & 5000.00 & 6000.00 & 18000.00 \\
\hline
Sum & 6000.00 & 9000.00 & 12000.00 & 15000.00 & 42000.00 \\
\hline
\end{tabular*}
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a variant of `/tcb/tabulars` which adds some `⟨code⟩` before the table starts.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{tabular}{lrrrrr}
\hline
Group & One & Two & Three & Four & Sum \\
\hline
Red & 1000.00 & 2000.00 & 3000.00 & 4000.00 & 10000.00 \\
\hline
Green & 2000.00 & 3000.00 & 4000.00 & 5000.00 & 14000.00 \\
\hline
Blue & 3000.00 & 4000.00 & 5000.00 & 6000.00 & 18000.00 \\
\hline
Sum & 6000.00 & 9000.00 & 12000.00 & 15000.00 & 42000.00 \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{tcolorbox}
If `/tcb/tabularx` or `/tcb/tabularx*` are used, one cannot have a lower part.

/tcb/tabularx={⟨preamble⟩} (style)

This style sets `/tcb/before upper*P.65` and `/tcb/after upper*P.66` and several geometry keys to support a `tabularx` with the given (preamble). The packages `tabularx` [4], `array`, and `colortbl` have to be loaded separately.

```latex
\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{tabularx}{X||Y|Y|Y|Y||Y}
Group & One & Two & Three & Four & Sum \\
\hline\hline
Red  & 1000.00 & 2000.00 & 3000.00 & 4000.00 & 10000.00 \\
\hline
Green & 2000.00 & 3000.00 & 4000.00 & 5000.00 & 14000.00 \\
\hline
Blue  & 3000.00 & 4000.00 & 5000.00 & 6000.00 & 18000.00 \\
\hline\hline
Sum   & 6000.00 & 9000.00 & 12000.00 & 15000.00 & 42000.00
\end{tabularx}
\end{tcolorbox}
```

My table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group</th>
<th>One</th>
<th>Two</th>
<th>Three</th>
<th>Four</th>
<th>Sum</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Red</td>
<td>1000.00</td>
<td>2000.00</td>
<td>3000.00</td>
<td>4000.00</td>
<td>10000.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Green</td>
<td>2000.00</td>
<td>3000.00</td>
<td>4000.00</td>
<td>5000.00</td>
<td>14000.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blue</td>
<td>3000.00</td>
<td>4000.00</td>
<td>5000.00</td>
<td>6000.00</td>
<td>18000.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sum</td>
<td>6000.00</td>
<td>9000.00</td>
<td>12000.00</td>
<td>15000.00</td>
<td>42000.00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

/tcb/tabularx*={⟨code⟩}{⟨preamble⟩} (style)

This is a variant of `/tcb/tabularx` which adds some ⟨code⟩ before the table starts.

```latex
\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{tabularx}{X|X|X}
One & Two & Three \\
\hline\hline
1000.00 & 2000.00 & 3000.00 \\
2000.00 & 3000.00 & 4000.00
\end{tabularx}
\end{tcolorbox}
```

My table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>One</th>
<th>Two</th>
<th>Three</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1000.00</td>
<td>2000.00</td>
<td>3000.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2000.00</td>
<td>3000.00</td>
<td>4000.00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
/tcb/tikz upper\texttt{=\langle options\rangle} (style)

This style adds a centered \texttt{tikzpicture} environment to the start and end of the upper part. The \langle \texttt{options} \rangle may be given as \texttt{TikZ} picture options.

\begin{tcolorbox}[tikz upper,fonttitle=\bfseries,colback=white,colframe=black, title=tikzname\ drawing]
\path[fill=yellow,draw=yellow!75!red] (0,0) circle (1cm);
\fill[red] (45:5mm) circle (1mm);
\fill[red] (135:5mm) circle (1mm);
\draw[line width=1mm,red] (215:5mm) arc (215:325:5mm);
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/tikz lower\texttt{=\langle options\rangle} (style)

This style adds a centered \texttt{tikzpicture} environment to the start and end of the lower part. The \langle \texttt{options} \rangle may be given as \texttt{TikZ} picture options.

\begin{tcblisting}{tikz lower,listing side text,fonttitle=\bfseries, bicolor,colback=LightBlue!50!white,colbacklower=white,colframe=black, righthand width=3cm,title=tikzname\ drawing}
\path[fill=yellow,draw=yellow!75!red] (0,0) circle (1cm);
\fill[red] (45:5mm) circle (1mm);
\fill[red] (135:5mm) circle (1mm);
\draw[line width=1mm,red] (215:5mm) arc (215:325:5mm);
\end{tcblisting}
/tcb/tikznode upper={(options)} (style)
This style places the upper part content into a centered Ti\kZ node. The (options) may be given as Ti\kZ node options. This style is especially useful for boxes with multiline texts which are fitted to the text width.

% \usepackage{tikz}
\newtcbox{\headline}[1][1]{enhanced,center, ignore nobreak,fontupper=\Large\bfseries, colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white, drop fuzzy shadow=yellow,tikznode upper,#1}
\headline{Important\\Headline}

/tcb/tikznode lower={(options)} (style)
This style places the lower part content into a centered Ti\kZ node. The (options) may be given as Ti\kZ node options.

% \usepackage{tikz}
\begin{tcolorbox}[bicolor,colback=LightBlue!50!white,colbacklower=white, colframe=black,tikznode lower={inner sep=2pt,draw=red,fill=yellow}]
Upper part.
\tcblower
Lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/tikznode={(options)} (style)
Shortcut for setting /tcb/tikznode upper and /tcb/tikznode lower the same time.

/tcb/varwidth upper={(length)} (style, default /tcb/width P.34)
This style places the upper part content into a \texttt{varwidth} environment. This style needs the \texttt{varwidth} package \cite{varwidth} to be loaded manually. The resulting box has a maximal width of (length). This option is only senseful for a \texttt{tcbbox P.14}.

% \usepackage{varwidth}
\newtcbox{\varbox}[colframe=red!50!black, colback=red!10!white,\varwidth upper]
\varbox{Short text.}
\varbox{This box contains is a longer text which is broken.}
4.12 Overlays

With an overlay, arbitrary \langle graphical code \rangle can be added to a tcolorbox. This code is executed \textit{after} the frame and interior are drawn and \textit{before} the text content is drawn. Therefore, you can decorate the tcolorbox with your own extensions. Common special cases are \textit{watermarks} which are implemented using overlays. See Subsection 10.3 from page 173 if you want to add \textit{watermarks}.

If you use the core package only, the \langle graphical code \rangle has to be \textit{pgf} code and there is not much assistance for positioning. Therefore, the usage of the /tcb/enhanced mode from the library skins is recommended which allows \textit{tikz} code and gives access to /tcb/geometry nodes for positioning.

\begin{tcolorbox}[frogbox,title=My title]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[ribbonbox,title=My title]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>/tcb/no overlay</code></td>
<td>Removes the overlay if set before.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>/tcb/overlay broken=(graphical code)</code></td>
<td>If the box is set to be <code>/tcb/breakable</code> and is broken actually, then the (graphical code) is added to the box drawing process. <code>/tcb/overlay</code> overwrites this key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>/tcb/overlay unbroken=(graphical code)</code></td>
<td>If the box is set to be <code>/tcb/breakable</code> but is not broken actually or if the box is set to be <code>/tcb/unbreakable</code>, then the (graphical code) is added to the box drawing process. <code>/tcb/overlay</code> overwrites this key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>/tcb/overlay first=(graphical code)</code></td>
<td>If the box is set to be <code>/tcb/breakable</code> and is broken actually, then the (graphical code) is added to the box drawing process for the first part of the break sequence. <code>/tcb/overlay</code> overwrites this key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>/tcb/overlay middle=(graphical code)</code></td>
<td>If the box is set to be <code>/tcb/breakable</code> and is broken actually, then the (graphical code) is added to the box drawing process for the middle parts (if any) of the break sequence. <code>/tcb/overlay</code> overwrites this key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>/tcb/overlay last=(graphical code)</code></td>
<td>If the box is set to be <code>/tcb/breakable</code> and is broken actually, then the (graphical code) is added to the box drawing process for the last part of the break sequence. <code>/tcb/overlay</code> overwrites this key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>/tcb/overlay unbroken and first=(graphical code)</code></td>
<td>This is an optimized abbreviation for setting <code>/tcb/overlay unbroken</code> and <code>/tcb/overlay</code> together. <code>/tcb/overlay</code> overwrites this key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>/tcb/overlay middle and last=(graphical code)</code></td>
<td>This is an optimized abbreviation for setting <code>/tcb/overlay middle</code> and <code>/tcb/overlay</code> together. <code>/tcb/overlay</code> overwrites this key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>/tcb/overlay unbroken and last=(graphical code)</code></td>
<td>This is an optimized abbreviation for setting <code>/tcb/overlay unbroken</code> and <code>/tcb/overlay</code> together. <code>/tcb/overlay</code> overwrites this key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>/tcb/overlay first and middle=(graphical code)</code></td>
<td>This is an optimized abbreviation for setting <code>/tcb/overlay first</code> and <code>/tcb/overlay</code> together. <code>/tcb/overlay</code> overwrites this key.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This example demonstrates the application of break sequence specific overlay options. Here, we define an environment `myexample` based on `tcolorbox` where the visible drawing is done totally by overlay keys.

Here, the first application of `myexample` produces an unbroken `tcolorbox`. The frame is drawn by the code given with `/tcb/overlay unbroken`. The second application of `myexample` is broken into several parts which are drawn by the codes given with `/tcb/overlay first`, `/tcb/overlay middle`, and `/tcb/overlay last`.

% Preamble:
%\usepackage{tikz,lipsum}
%\tcbuselibrary{skins,breakable}
%\newcounter{example}
Example 1

Example 2


Suspendisse vitae elit. Aliquam arcu neque, ornare in, ullamcorper quis, commodo eu, libero.


4.13 Floating Objects

/\texttt{tcb/floatplacement}=\langle values\rangle \quad \text{(no default, initially htb)}

Sets $\langle values\rangle$ as default values for the usage of \texttt{tcb/float} and \texttt{tcb/float*}. Feasible are the usual parameters for floating objects.

\begin{verbatim}
\tcset{enhanced, colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, 
        watermark color=red!15!white}
\begin{tcolorbox}[floatplacement=t,float, 
                title=\texttt{Floating box from |floatplacement|}, 
                watermark text={\texttt{I am floating}}]
  This floating box is placed at the top of a page.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}

/\texttt{tcb/float}=\langle values\rangle \quad \text{(default from floatplacement)}

Turns the box to a floating object where $\langle values\rangle$ are the usual parameters for such floating objects. If they are not used, the placement uses the default values given by floatplacement.

\begin{verbatim}
\begin{tcolorbox}[float, title=\texttt{Floating box from |float|}, 
                   enhanced, watermark text={\texttt{I'm also floating}}]
  This box floats to a feasible place automatically. You do not have to use a numbering for this floating object.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}

/\texttt{tcb/float*}=\langle values\rangle \quad \text{(default from floatplacement)}

Identical to \texttt{tcb/float}, but for wide boxes spanning the whole page width of two column documents or in conjunction with the packages \texttt{multicol} or \texttt{paracol}. Note that you have to set width=\texttt{textwidth} additionally, if the box should span the whole page width in these cases!

\begin{verbatim}
\begin{tcolorbox}[float=b, title=\texttt{Floating box from |float*|}, width=\texttt{textwidth}, 
                   enhanced, watermark text={\texttt{I'm also floating}}]
  In this single column document, you will see no difference to \texttt{float}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}

/\texttt{tcb/nofloat} \quad \text{(style, initially set)}

Turns the floating behavior off.

\begin{verbatim}
\begin{tcolorbox}[float*, width=\textwidth, 
                   enhanced, watermark text={\texttt{I'm also floating}}]
  In this single column document, you will see no difference to \texttt{float}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}
For floating objects, the /tcb/before \[P.81\] and /tcb/after \[P.81\] settings are ignored. Instead, the given (code) is inserted before a floating box. If the box is /tcb/breakable \[P.389\], the given (code) is inserted before every part of the break sequence. The most common use case is every float=\texttt{\textbackslash centering}.

\begin{tcbbox}[float=htb,title={Floating box},every float=\texttt{\textbackslash centering},
colback=blue!50!black,colframe=blue!50!white,colbacktitle=blue!10!white,
coltitle=black,center title]
{\includegraphics[height=6cm]{lichtspiel.jpg}}
\end{tcbbox}
4.14 Embedding into the Surroundings

Typically, but not necessarily, a `tcolorbox` is put inside a separate paragraph and has some vertical space before and after it. This behavior is controlled by the keys `/tcb/before` and `/tcb/after`.

Before version 4.40, the default setting for `/tcb/before` and `/tcb/after` was given by `/tcb/autoparskip`\(^{P.85}\). Starting with version 4.40, the default setting is given by `/tcb/before skip balanced`\(^{P.82}\) and `/tcb/after skip balanced`\(^{P.82}\).

Note that old documents may need adaptations of page breaks. Alternatively, the old default setting can be restored by using

\begin{tcolorbox}
\tcbset{every layer={autoparskip}}
\end{tcolorbox}

inside the document preamble.

```
/tcb/before=\langle code \rangle \quad \text{(no default, initially see /tcb/before skip balanced}^{P.82})
```

Sets the \langle code \rangle which is executed before the colored box. It is not used for floating boxes. Also, it is not used, if the box follows a heading immediately and `/tcb/ignore nobreak`\(^{P.87}\) is set to `false`.

```
/tcb/after=\langle code \rangle \quad \text{(no default, initially see /tcb/after skip balanced}^{P.82})
```

Sets the \langle code \rangle which is executed after the colored box. It is not used for floating boxes.

```
/tcb/nobeforeafter \quad \text{(style, no value)}
```

Abbreviation for clearing the keys before and after. The colored box is not put into a paragraph and there is no space before or after the box.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}
{myone/.style={colback=LightGreen,colframe=DarkGreen,\
equal height group=nobefaf,width=\linewidth/4,nobeforeafter}}
\begin{tcolorbox}[myone,title=Box 1]Box 1\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[myone,title=Box 2]Box 2\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[myone,title=Box 3]Box 3\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[myone,title=Box 4]Box 4\end{tcolorbox}
```

```
/tcb/force nobeforeafter \quad \text{(style, no value)}
```

Forces the setting of `/tcb/nobeforeafter` even if `/tcb/before` and `/tcb/after` are set to other values later. Do not use this option globally unless you really know what you do. Note that embedded boxes do not inherit this forced clearance.
/tcb/before skip balanced=(glue) (no default, initially 0.5\baselineskip plus 2pt)

Inserts some vertical space before the colored box. This style sets /tcb/before \textsuperscript{P.81}.

If the depth of the preceding \TeX box is between 0pt and 0.3\baselineskip, the distance between the baseline of the preceding \TeX box and the tcolorbox is set to (glue)+0.3\baselineskip.

If the depth is larger, the distance of the preceding \TeX box and the tcolorbox is set to (glue).

Alternatively, see /tcb/before skip \textsuperscript{P.83} which ignores the baseline.

\begin{tcolorbox}[before skip balanced=1cm, colframe=red!50!white]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

Some text.

/tcb/after skip balanced=(glue) (no default, initially 0.5\baselineskip plus 2pt)

Inserts some vertical space of the given (glue) after the colored box. This style sets /tcb/after \textsuperscript{P.81}. Additionally, \prevdepth is set to 0.3\baselineskip. The following \TeX box may enlarge the space by further glue to adjust its baseline. Alternatively, see /tcb/after skip \textsuperscript{P.83} which ignores the baseline.

\begin{tcolorbox}[after skip balanced=1cm, colframe=red!50!white]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

Some text.

/tcb/beforeafter skip balanced=(glue) (no default, initially 0.5\baselineskip plus 2pt)

Inserts some vertical space of the given (glue) before and after the colored box. This style sets /tcb/before skip balanced and /tcb/after skip balanced.

\begin{tcolorbox}[beforeafter skip balanced=0pt, height=1.8\baselineskip, enlarge top by=.1\baselineskip, enlarge bottom by=.1\baselineskip, colframe=blue!20,colback=blue!5, size=small,valign upper=center,#1 ]
\newtcolorbox{doubleline}[1]
{ beforeafter skip balanced=0pt, height=1.8\baselineskip, enlarge top by=.1\baselineskip, enlarge bottom by=.1\baselineskip, colframe=blue!20,colback=blue!5, size=small,valign upper=center,#1 }
\noindent\begin{tikzpicture}
\path [use as bounding box] (0,0) rectangle (0.1,0.1);
\foreach \y in {0,1,...,9} {\draw[very thin,red] (-0.2,-\y*\baselineskip) -- (\linewidth+0.2cm,-\y*\baselineskip);}
\end{tikzpicture}
\begin{doubleline} Abc 
\end{doubleline}
\begin{doubleline} Def 
\end{doubleline}
\begin{doubleline} Ghi 
\end{doubleline}
\begin{doubleline} g 
\end{doubleline}
\end{tcolorbox}
/tcb/before skip=(glue) (style, no default)

Inserts some vertical space of the given \textit{glue} before the colored box. This style sets \textit{/tcb/before} \textsuperscript{P.81}. In contrast to \textit{/tcb/before skip balanced} \textsuperscript{P.82}, this \textit{glue} is relative to the lower edge of the preceding box and not to the baseline.

\begin{tcolorbox}[before skip=1cm, colframe=red!50!white]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/after skip=(glue) (style, no default)

Inserts some vertical space of the given \textit{glue} after the colored box. This style sets \textit{/tcb/after} \textsuperscript{P.81}. In contrast to \textit{/tcb/after skip balanced} \textsuperscript{P.82}, this \textit{glue} is relative to the upper edge of the following box and not to the baseline.

\begin{tcolorbox}[after skip=1cm, colframe=red!50!white]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/beforeafter skip=(glue) (style, no default)

Inserts some vertical space of the given \textit{glue} before \textit{and} after the colored box. This style sets \textit{/tcb/before skip} and \textit{/tcb/after skip}.

\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
Second box.
\end{tcolorbox}
/tcb/left skip=(length) (style, no default, initially 0mm)

Inserts some horizontal space of the given \(\text{length}\) before the colored box. This style sets \tcb/grow to left by \(^{-1}\text{\text{.90}}\) with the negated \(\text{length}\), i.e. the bounding box and box width are changed.

\begin{tcolorbox}[left skip=1cm, colframe=red!50!white]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/right skip=(length) (style, no default, initially 0mm)

Inserts some horizontal space of the given \(\text{length}\) after the colored box. This style sets \tcb/grow to right by \(^{+1}\text{\text{.90}}\) with the negated \(\text{length}\), i.e. the bounding box and box width are changed.

\begin{tcolorbox}[right skip=1cm, colframe=red!50!white]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/leftright skip=(length) (style, no default)

Inserts some horizontal space of the given \(\text{length}\) before and after the colored box. This style changes the bounding box and the box width.

\begin{tcolorbox}[leftright skip=1cm, colframe=red!50!white]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
/tcb/parskip (style, no value)

This option is considered to be superseded by /tcb/before skip balanced^{P.82} and /tcb/after skip balanced^{P.82} (see note on page 81).

Sets the keys before and after to values which are recommended, if the package parskip is used and there is no better idea for before and after. This is similar to:

```
\tcbset{parskip/.style={before={\par\pagebreak[0]\parindent=0pt},
                        after={\par}}}\n```

/tcb/noparskip (style, no value)

This option is considered to be superseded by /tcb/before skip balanced^{P.82} and /tcb/after skip balanced^{P.82} (see note on page 81).

Sets the keys before and after to values which are recommended, if the package parskip is not used and there is no better idea for before and after. This is similar to:

```
\tcbset{nopar/\style=\{before=\{\par\pagebreak[0]\textino\par\parindent=0pt},
                        after={\par\\textino}}}\n```

/tcb/autoparskip (style, no value)

This option is considered to be superseded by /tcb/before skip balanced^{P.82} and /tcb/after skip balanced^{P.82} (see note on page 81).

Tries to detect the usage of the package parskip and sets the keys before and after accordingly. Actually, the following is done:

- If the length of \textino is greater than 0pt at the beginning of the document, /tcb/parskip is executed. Here, the usage of package parskip is assumed.
- Otherwise, if the length of \textino is not greater than 0pt at the beginning of the document, /tcb/nopar/\textino is executed. Here, the absence of package parskip is assumed.
/tcb/baseline=⟨length⟩  (no default, initially 0pt)
Used to set the \pgfsetbaseline value of the resulting tcolorbox.

```latex
\tcbset{colframe=red!50!white,width=4cm,nobeforeafter}
\begin{tcolorbox}[baseline=3mm]
One line.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[baseline=3mm]
First line.\Second line.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

/tcb/box align=⟨alignment⟩  (style, no default, initially bottom)
Used to set the /tcb/baseline value of the resulting tcolorbox. Feasible values for ⟨alignment⟩ are:
- bottom: alignment with the box bottom,
- top: alignment with the box top,
- center: alignment with the box center,
- base: alignment with the box content base. This option is not applicable for a tcolorbox but for a \tcbox only. It is an alias for /tcb/tcbox raise base.

```latex
\tcbset{colframe=red!50!white,width=4cm,nobeforeafter}
\begin{tcolorbox}[box align=bottom]
One line.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[box align=bottom]
First line.\Second line.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

```latex
\tcbset{colframe=red!50!white,width=4cm,nobeforeafter}
\begin{tcolorbox}[box align=top]
One line.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[box align=top]
First line.\Second line.
\end{tcolorbox}
```
\begin{tcolorbox}[box align=center]
One line.
\end{tcolorbox}

First line. \Second line.
\begin{tcolorbox}[box align=center]
First line. \Second line.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[box align=base]
One line
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[box align=base,size=fbox]
Another line
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[box align=base,nobeforeafter]
Some text
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[box align=base,nobeforeafter]
Some text
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[box align=base,nobeforeafter]
Some text
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/ignore nobreak=\texttt{true}|\texttt{false} \hspace{1cm} (default \texttt{true}, initially \texttt{false})

After a heading, LaTeX tries to avoid a break by setting a \texttt{nobreak} boolean value. Starting from version 3.33, the \texttt{/tcb(before)} \textsuperscript{P.81} respectively \texttt{/tcb(before skip)} \textsuperscript{P.83} settings are not used after a heading if \texttt{/tcb/ignore nobreak} is set to \texttt{false}. For an unbreakable box, \texttt{/tcb/before nobreak} is used instead. Further, a \texttt{/tcb/breakable} \textsuperscript{P.389} box will also try to avoid a break between a heading and a directly following first part of a break sequence. Set \texttt{/tcb/ignore nobreak} to \texttt{true}, if \texttt{nobreak} should be ignored as prior to version 3.33. Also, such a setting may be used locally to enforce the \texttt{/tcb/before} \textsuperscript{P.81} setting.

/tcb/before nobreak=\texttt{(code)} \hspace{1cm} (no default, initially \texttt{\noindent})

Sets the \texttt{(code)} which is executed before the colored box if it is unbreakable, if \texttt{/tcb/ignore nobreak} is not set, and if the box follows a heading.

/tcb/parfillskip restore=\texttt{true}|\texttt{false} \hspace{1cm} (default \texttt{true}, initially \texttt{true})

If this option is set to be \texttt{true}, the minimum value of \texttt{parfillskip} is tested at specific spots, if it is greater than 0pt. If so, \texttt{parfillskip} is restored to \texttt{\@flushglue} which happens to be the default value.

These tests are executed for \texttt{/tcb/parskip} \textsuperscript{P.85}, \texttt{/tcb/noparskip} \textsuperscript{P.85}, \texttt{/tcb/after skip} \textsuperscript{P.83}, \texttt{/tcb/breakable} \textsuperscript{P.389}, and \texttt{tcbraster} \textsuperscript{P.299}.

This option was created to automatically avoid overfull box warnings with \texttt{parfillskip} changing packages.
4.15 Bounding Box

Normally, every \texttt{tcolorbox} has a bounding box which fits exactly to the dimensions of the outer frame. Therefore, \LaTeX{} reserves exactly the space needed for the box. This behavior can be changed by enlarging (or shrinking) the bounding box. If the bounding box is enlarged, the \texttt{tcolorbox} will get some clearance around it. If the bounding box is shrunk, i.e., enlarged with negative values, the \texttt{tcolorbox} will overlap to other parts of the page. For example, the \texttt{tcolorbox} could be stretched into the page margin.

The following examples use \texttt{/tcb/show bounding box} to display the actual bounding box. For this, the library \texttt{skins} has to be included and \texttt{/tcb/enhanced} has to be set.

4.15.1 Shifting Bounding Box Borders

\texttt{/tcb/enlarge top initially by=⟨length⟩} (no default, initially 0mm)

Enlarges the bounding box distance to the top of the box by \texttt{⟨length⟩}. If the box is \texttt{breakable}, only the first box of the break sequence gets enlarged. \texttt{/tcb/enlarge top by=⟨length⟩} overwrites this key.

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset{colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enlarge top initially by=-5mm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enlarge top initially by=5mm,enhanced,show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{/tcb/enlarge bottom finally by=⟨length⟩} (no default, initially 0mm)

Enlarges the bounding box distance to the bottom of the box by \texttt{⟨length⟩}. If the box is \texttt{breakable}, only the last box of the break sequence gets enlarged. \texttt{/tcb/enlarge bottom by=⟨length⟩} overwrites this key.

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset{colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enlarge bottom finally by=-5mm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enlarge bottom finally by=5mm,enhanced,show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}
/tcb/enlarge top at break by=(length)  
(No default, initially 0mm)
Enlarges the bounding box distance to the top of the box by \(\text{\langle length\rangle}\), if the box is \texttt{/tcb/breakable} \(^{P.389}\). In this case, it is applied to middle and last parts in a break sequence. /tcb/enlarge top by overwrites this key.

/tcb/enlarge bottom at break by=(length)  
(No default, initially 0mm)
Enlarges the bounding box distance to the bottom of the box by \(\text{\langle length\rangle}\), if the box is \texttt{/tcb/breakable} \(^{P.389}\). In this case, it is applied to first and middle parts in a break sequence. /tcb/enlarge bottom by overwrites this key.

/tcb/enlarge top by=(length)  
(No default, initially 0mm)
Enlarges the bounding box distance to the top of the box by \(\text{\langle length\rangle}\). /tcb/enlarge top initially by \(^{P.88}\) and /tcb/enlarge top at break by are set to \(\text{\langle length\rangle}\).

/tcb/enlarge bottom by=(length)  
(No default, initially 0mm)
Enlarges the bounding box distance to the bottom of the box by \(\text{\langle length\rangle}\). /tcb/enlarge bottom finally by \(^{P.88}\) and /tcb/enlarge bottom at break by are set to \(\text{\langle length\rangle}\).

/tcb/enlarge left by=(length)  
(No default, initially 0mm)
Enlarges the bounding box distance to the left side of the box by \(\text{\langle length\rangle}\).

/tcb/enlarge right by=(length)  
(No default, initially 0mm)
Enlarges the bounding box distance to the right side of the box by \(\text{\langle length\rangle}\).
/tcb/enlarge by=⟨length⟩

Enlarges the bounding box distance to all sides of the box by ⟨length⟩.

/tcb/grow to left by=⟨length⟩

Enlarges the current box width by ⟨length⟩ and enlarges (shrinks) the bounding box distance to the left side of the box by −⟨length⟩. Also see /tcb/left skip.\footnote{P.84}
/tcb/grow sidewards by=(length) (no default, initially 0mm)

Shortcut for setting /tcb/grow to left by -P.90 and /tcb/grow to right by P.90 to (length). Also see /tcb/oversize P.45 and /tcb/spread sidewards P.94.

\tcbset{colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white}
\begin{tcolorbox}[grow sidewards by=2cm,enhanced,show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a tcolorbox.

4.15.2 Box Alignment

/tcb/flush left (style, no value)
Enlarges the bounding box to the right side to fill the line completely.

\tcbset{colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white}
\begin{tcolorbox}[flush left,width=5cm,enhanced,show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a tcolorbox.

/tcb/flush right (style, no value)
Enlarges the bounding box to the left side to fill the line completely.

\tcbset{colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white}
\begin{tcolorbox}[flush right,width=5cm,enhanced,show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a tcolorbox.

/tcb/center (style, no value)
Enlarges the bounding box equally to both sides to fill the line completely.

\tcbset{colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white}
\begin{tcolorbox}[center,width=5cm,enhanced,show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a tcolorbox.
4.15.3 Toggle Enlargements

\texttt{/tcb/toggle enlargement=\langle toggle preset \rangle} \quad \text{(default \texttt{evenpage}, initially \texttt{none})}

According to the \texttt{\langle toggle preset \rangle}, the left and the right enlargements of the bounding box are switched or not. Feasible values are:

- \texttt{none}: no switching.
- \texttt{forced}: the values of the left and right enlargement are switched.
- \texttt{evenpage}: if the page is an even page, the values of the left and right enlargement are switched. This value also sets \texttt{/tcb/check odd page=\texttt{true}}.

See \texttt{/tcb/toggle left and right=\texttt{P.46}} to toggle geometry settings.

\begin{tcolorbox}
[toggle enlargement=none,enhanced,show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
[toggle enlargement=forced]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
[toggle enlargement=evenpage]
This page is an \texttt{\tcbifoddpage\{odd\}\{even\}} page. Therefore, the left and right enlargements \texttt{\tcbifoddpage\{are not\}\{are\} toggled}.
\end{tcolorbox}
4.15.4 Spread Box to Page Borders

The following border options are *not* applicable to nested boxes, boxes inside tables, etc. For boxes inside lists, the options *may* work, but not necessarily. Also, boxes should be set with \noindent and full width.

\tcb/spread inwards=(length) (default 0pt, initially unset)

Enlarges the current box width to match the inner page border (left-handed side for one-sided documents). If the optional \texttt{⟨length⟩} is greater than 0pt, the box grows over the border, if \texttt{⟨length⟩} is lower than 0pt, there is a margin between box and page border.

\tcb/toggle enlargement \textsuperscript{P.92} is set automatically.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,spread inwards, colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \textit{tcolorbox}.

\tcb/spread outwards=(length) (default 0pt, initially unset)

Enlarges the current box width to match the outer page border (right-handed side for one-sided documents). If the optional \texttt{⟨length⟩} is greater than 0pt, the box grows over the border, if \texttt{⟨length⟩} is lower than 0pt, there is a margin between box and page border.

\tcb/toggle enlargement \textsuperscript{P.92} is set automatically.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,spread outwards, colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \textit{tcolorbox}.

\tcb/move upwards=(length) (default 0pt, initially unset)

Starts a new page with the box at the very top page border. If the optional \texttt{⟨length⟩} is greater than 0pt, the box moves over the border, if \texttt{⟨length⟩} is lower than 0pt, there is a margin between box and page border.

\tcb/move upwards*= (length) (default 0pt, initially unset)

Identical to \texttt{/tcb/move upwards}, but without starting a new page.

\tcb/fill downwards=(length) (default 0pt, initially unset)

Enlarges the height of the box until the very bottom page border. The library \texttt{breakable} has to be loaded, and \texttt{/tcb/height fill} \textsuperscript{P.56} is set automatically. If the optional \texttt{⟨length⟩} is greater than 0pt, the box moves over the border, if \texttt{⟨length⟩} is lower than 0pt, there is a margin between box and page border.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,fill downwards, colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \textit{tcolorbox}.
This is an example for “spread upwards”.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\[\text{This is an example for \enquote{spread upwards}.}\]
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
\[\text{This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.}\]
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a tcolorbox.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\[\text{This is an example for \enquote{spread downwards}.}\]
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
\[\text{This is an example for “spread downwards”.}\]
\end{tcolorbox}
4.15.5 Box Extrusion

The following keys should not be used with breakable boxes or boxes with a lower part.

/tcb/shrink tight

The total colored box is shrunk to the dimensions of the upper part. There should be no lower part and no title. This style sets the /tcb/boxsep to 0pt and other geometry keys to fitting values. This option is likely to be used with the following extrusion keys.

\tcbset{colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,arc=0mm,boxrule=0.4pt, nobeforeafter,tcbbox raise base,shrink tight}

\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

Lorem \tcbox{ipsum} dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit.

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit.

/tcb/extrude left by=(length)

The (upper part of the) colored box is extruded by the given \textit{(length)} to the left side. The inner width and the bounding box is kept unchanged and the operation is additive!

\tcbset{enhanced,colframe=red,colback=yellow!25!white, frame style={opacity=0.25},interior style={opacity=0.5}, nobeforeafter,tcbbox raise base,shrink tight,extrude by=2mm}

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis.
\tcb[extrude left by=1cm]{Curabitur} dictum gravida mauris.
Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna.


/tcb/extrude right by=(length)

The (upper part of the) colored box is extruded by the given \textit{(length)} to the right side. The inner width and the bounding box is kept unchanged and the operation is additive!

\tcbset{enhanced,colframe=red,colback=yellow!25!white, frame style={opacity=0.25},interior style={opacity=0.5}, nobeforeafter,tcbbox raise base,shrink tight,extrude by=2mm}

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis.
\tcb[extrude right by=1cm]{Curabitur} dictum gravida mauris.
Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna.

The (upper part of the) colored box is extruded by the given \( \langle \text{length} \rangle \) to the top side. The inner width and the bounding box is kept unchanged and the operation is additive!

The (upper part of the) colored box is extruded by the given \( \langle \text{length} \rangle \) to the bottom side. The inner width and the bounding box is kept unchanged and the operation is additive!

The (upper part of the) colored box is extruded by the given \( \langle \text{length} \rangle \) to all sides. The inner width and the bounding box is kept unchanged and the operation is additive!
4.16 Layered Boxes and Every Box Settings

A \texttt{tcolorbox} may contain another \texttt{tcolorbox} and so on. The package takes track of the nesting level using a counter \texttt{tcblayer}. Counter values may be used for doing some fancy things, but you should never change the counter value yourself.

The package takes special care for the first four layers or nesting levels, called managed layers. Here, footnote texts are administrated to find their intended place and specific layer dependent options may be set by changing /tcb/every box on layer n \textsuperscript{P.98}. If needed, the number of managed layers can be increased by setting \texttt{tcbsetmanagedlayers} \textsuperscript{P.98} to a higher value than 4.

The following styles have a considerable influence on how layered boxes are processed. Note especially that nested boxes are getting a /tcb/reset \textsuperscript{P.112} by default. You can change this, but be prepared for surprises if you do.

If the defaults are \textit{not changed}, a \texttt{tcolorbox} gets its options in the following order. Following options overwrite preceding options.

1. On package load, all options are set to default values.
2. Every \texttt{tcbset} \textsuperscript{P.13} command adds or changes options for the following boxes inside the current \TeX group.
3. While entering a \texttt{tcolorbox}, a /tcb/every box on layer n \textsuperscript{P.98} or /tcb/every box on higher layers \textsuperscript{P.98} option list is applied. With default settings this means:
   a. For layer 1 (lowest layer), the /tcb/every box option list is applied. Not overwritten options given by a preceding \texttt{tcbset} \textsuperscript{P.13} survive.
   b. For layer 2 and above (nested boxes), a /tcb/reset \textsuperscript{P.112} followed by /tcb/every box option list is applied. Every resettable options given by a preceding \texttt{tcbset} \textsuperscript{P.13} and by the surrounding box( es) are reset.
4. The \textit{⟨options⟩} given to the \texttt{tcolorbox} are applied. Or, if the box was generated by \texttt{newtcolorbox} \textsuperscript{P.15} or friends, the \textit{⟨options⟩} given there are applied.
5. If the box was generated by \texttt{newtcolorbox} \textsuperscript{P.15} or friends, some automated options are applied.

\texttt{/tcb/every box} (style)

By default, this style is empty.

% default setting:
\texttt{tcbset}\{every box/.style={}\}

It may be changed by redefining this style.

% setting all boxes to be enhanced:
\texttt{tcbset}\{every box/.style={enhanced}\}

The alternative for setting something for every box (on every layer) is \texttt{tcbsetforeverylayer} \textsuperscript{P.13}:

% setting all boxes to be enhanced:
\texttt{tcbsetforeverylayer}{enhanced}
\texttt{\textbackslash tcb/every box on layer \textit{n}} (style)

Here, \textit{n} has to be replaced by a number ranging from 1 to the highest managed layer number (4 by default).

\begin{tcblisting}
\% default settings:
\tcbset{
  every box on layer 1/.style={every box},
  every box on layer 2/.style={reset,every box},
  every box on layer 3/.style={reset,every box},
  every box on layer 4/.style={reset,every box},
}
\end{tcblisting}

\texttt{\textbackslash tcb/every box on higher layers} (style)

Higher layers are layers above the highest managed layer number (4 by default).

\begin{tcblisting}
\tcbset{every box on higher layers/.style={reset,every box}}
\end{tcblisting}

\texttt{\textbackslash tcbsetmanagedlayers\{}\textit{\langle number\rangle}\texttt{\}\}}

Replaces the highest managed layer number by \textit{\langle number\rangle} where 4 is the default. This macro can only be used inside the preamble. Using a \textit{\langle number\rangle} lower than 4 typically makes no sense, but is not forbidden.

\begin{tcblisting}
\% \usepackage{lipsum}
\% \tcbuselibrary{skins,breakable}
\tcbset{colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
colback=red!5!white,
every box/.style={enhanced,watermark text=\textcolor{white}{\textit{\textbackslash etcblayer}},
before=\textcolor{white}{\textbackslash par\textbackslash smallskip},after=\textcolor{white}{\textbackslash par\textbackslash smallskip},
every box on layer 2/.style={reset,every box,colback=yellow!10!white,
drop fuzzy shadow}}
\begin{tcolorbox}\[enhanced jigsaw,breakable,title=Layer 1 Box\]
Here comes a footnote\footnote{Footnote from layer 1 box}.
\lipsum[2]
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Layer 2 Box]
abc\footnote{The footnote of abc}
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Another Box,ams equation]
\tcbhighmath\{\sum\limits_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} \} = \infty.
\end{tcolorbox}
Some text\footnote{Footnote from some text}.
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Yet Another Box]
\tcboxfit[height=2cm]{\lipsum[1]} My text.
\begin{tcolorbox}
Another lipsum text\footnote{A lipsum text}. \lipsum[3]
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Layer 4,colframe=blue,colback=white]
Layer 4\footnote{Layer 4 footnote}
\end{tcolorbox}
The End\footnote{Last footnote}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcblisting}

Layer 2 Box

abc

*The footnote of abc

Another Box

\[ \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} = \infty. \]

(1)

Some text. Another Box

Yet Another Box


Layer 4

Layer 4

*Layer 4 footnote

The End.

*Footnote from layer 1 box

Footnote from some text.
4.17 Capture Mode

/\texttt{tcb/capture}\langle mode\rangle  

The capture \langle mode\rangle defines how the box content is processed.
Feasible values for \langle mode\rangle are:

- **minipage:**
  This is the default \langle mode\rangle for \texttt{tcolorbox}\textsuperscript{P.12}. The content may have an upper and a lower part. Optionally, the box can be \texttt{tcb/breakable}\textsuperscript{P.389}. The box content is put into a minipage or into something similar to a minipage.

- **hbox:**
  This is the default \langle mode\rangle for \texttt{tcbox}\textsuperscript{P.14}. The content cannot have a lower part and cannot be broken. The colored box is sized according to the dimensions of the content. A shortcut to set this mode is \texttt{tcb/hbox}.

- **fitbox:** (needs the \texttt{fitting} library)
  This is the default \langle mode\rangle for \texttt{tcboxfit}\textsuperscript{P.438}. The content cannot have a lower part and cannot be broken. The content is sized according to the dimensions of the colored box. A shortcut to set this mode is \texttt{tcb/fit}\textsuperscript{P.441}.

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset{colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white}
\begin{tcolorbox}[capture=minipage]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[capture=hbox]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[capture=fitbox,height=9mm]% needs the \texttt{fitting} library
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}

/\texttt{tcb/hbox}  

Shortcut for capture=\texttt{hbox}.

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset{colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white}
\begin{tcolorbox}[hbox]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}

/\texttt{tcb/minipage}  

Shortcut for capture=\texttt{minipage}.
4.18 Text Characteristics

The text inside a `tcolorbox` is formatted using a \LaTeX\ `minipage` if the box is unbreakable. If breakable, the box tries a mimicry of a `minipage`. In a `minipage` or `parbox`, paragraphs are formatted slightly different as the main text. If the key value is set to `false`, the normal main text behavior is restored. In some situations, this has some unwanted side effects. It is recommended that you use this experimental setting only where you really want to have this feature.

```latex
% \usepackage{lipsum} % preamble
\tcbset{width=(\linewidth-2mm)/2,nobeforeafter,arc=1mm,
colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,fonttitle=\bfseries,fontupper=\small,
left=2mm,right=2mm,top=1mm,bottom=1mm,equal height group=parbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}\[parbox,adjusted title={parbox=true (normal)}\]
\lipsum[1-2]
\end{tcolorbox}
\hfill
\begin{tcolorbox}\[parbox=false,adjusted title={parbox=false}\]
\lipsum[1-2]
\end{tcolorbox}
```

parbox=true (normal)


parbox=false

/tcb/hyphenationfix=true|false (default true, initially false)

Long words at the beginning of paragraphs in very narrow boxes will not be hyphenated using pdflatex. This problem is circumvented by applying the hyphenationfix option.

\tcset{colframe=blue!75!black, fontupper=\normalsize, colback=blue!5!white,width=4cm}
\begin{tcolorbox}
Rechnungsadjunktentochter. \Statthaltereikonzipist.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[hyphenationfix]
Rechnungsadjunktentochter. \Statthaltereikonzipist.
\end{tcolorbox}

\textbf{parbox=false and hyphenationfix should not be used together. They are targeting different box types and they do not blend very well.}

4.19 Files
/tcb/tempfile=(file name) (no default, initially \jobname.tcbtemp)

Sets (file name) as name for the temporary file which is used inside tcbwritetemp \textsuperscript{P.133} and \tcbusetemp \textsuperscript{P.133} implicitly.

4.20 \tcbbox Specials

The following options are applicable for \tcbbox \textsuperscript{P.14} and \tcbboxmath \textsuperscript{P.363} only.

/tcb/tcbox raise=(length) (no default, initially 0pt)

Raises the \tcbbox \textsuperscript{P.14} by the given (length).

\tcset{colframe=blue!50!black,colback=white,colupper=red!50!black, fonttitle=\bfseries,nobeforeafter,center title}
\begin{tcolorbox}
\dotfill
\tcbbox[tcbx raise base]{Hello World 1}\dotfill
\tcbbox{Hello World 2}\dotfill
\tcbbox[tcbx raise=5mm]{Hello World 3}
\end{tcolorbox}

\textbf{/tcb/tcbox raise base} (style, no value, initially unset)

Raises the \tcbbox \textsuperscript{P.14} such that the base of its content matches the base of the environmental line; see example above.

\textbf{/tcb/on line} (style, no value, initially unset)

Combines /tcb/tcbox raise base with /tcb/nobeforeafter \textsuperscript{P.81}. The resulting box behaves analogue to \fbox.
/tcb/tcbox width=(mode)

(no default, initially auto)

Controls how \tcb\textwidth respects a /tcb/width setting. Feasible values for (mode) are:

- **auto** (initial setting): ignore /tcb/width and set box width according to its content.
- **auto limited**: Set box width according to its content, if it is smaller than /tcb/width. Otherwise, the content is set like in a tcolorbox with line breaks.
- **forced center**: Set box width according to /tcb/width. The content is centered and may overlap the box borders.
- **forced left**: Set box width according to /tcb/width. The content is left aligned and may overlap the box borders.
- **forced right**: Set box width according to /tcb/width. The content is right aligned and may overlap the box borders.
- **minimum center**: Set box width according to /tcb/width, if the content fits into. The content is centered and the box width may grow beyond /tcb/width.
- **minimum left**: Set box width according to /tcb/width, if the content fits into. The content is left aligned and the box width may grow beyond /tcb/width.
- **minimum right**: Set box width according to /tcb/width, if the content fits into. The content is right aligned and the box width may grow beyond /tcb/width.

\tcbox[size=small, on line, before upper=\strut, colframe=blue!75!black, colback=blue!5!white, fontupper=\normalsize, width=4cm]

\tcbox[tcbox width=auto]{auto}\quad\tcbox[tcbox width=auto limited]{auto limited}\quad\tcbox[tcbox width=auto limited]{auto limited with long text}\quad\tcbox[tcbox width=forced center]{forced center}\quad\tcbox[tcbox width=forced center]{forced center with long text}\quad\tcbox[tcbox width=forced left]{forced left}\quad\tcbox[tcbox width=forced left]{forced left with long text}\quad\tcbox[tcbox width=forced right]{forced right}\quad\tcbox[tcbox width=forced right]{forced right with long text}\quad\tcbox[tcbox width=minimum center]{minimum center}\quad\tcbox[tcbox width=minimum center]{minimum center with long text}\quad\tcbox[tcbox width=minimum left]{minimum left}\quad\tcbox[tcbox width=minimum left]{minimum left with long text}\quad\tcbox[tcbox width=minimum right]{minimum right}\quad\tcbox[tcbox width=minimum right]{minimum right with long text}
4.21 Counters, Labels, and References

/tcb/phantom=(code)  (no default, initially unset)

The \langle code \rangle is put in a box at the upper left corner of the tcolorbox. If the tcolorbox is breakable, the \langle code \rangle is executed for the first box of the break sequence only. If there already was some phantom code given, the new \langle code \rangle is appended.

The \langle code \rangle is intended to be used for counter stepping, labelling, and related operations which do not produce visible text.

- The \langle code \rangle is executed before the title and box content, i.e. counter values are ensured to be increased before usage.
- Labels are ensured to reference the correct page number.
- The \langle code \rangle is executed only once even during fitting operations for title and box content.
- In combination with the hyperref package, the hyper anchor is set to the upper left corner of the tcolorbox, i.e. links inside the pdf document will jump to the box pleasantly.
- Since the \langle code \rangle is executed inside a \TeX group, only global operations can survive this group.

Examples for the phantom usage are given in Section 17.9 from page 355, e.g. Example 17.1 on page 356.

/tcb/nophantom  (no value, initially set)

Removes the phantom code if set before.

/tcb/label=(marker)  (no default, initially unset)

The \langle marker \rangle is set as label text for a reference with the \ref macro. Typically, this option is used for numbered boxes, see Subsection 5.1 from page 114, e.g. /tcb/new/auto counter \rref P.114.

/tcb/phantomlabel=(marker)  (no default, initially unset)

Equivalent to /tcb/label for an unnumbered box. A \phantomsection from the package hyperref [15] is used to set a correct hyperlink target. This is not needed for a numbered box.

/tcb/label type=(type)  (no default, initially unset)

This option key can be used only in conjunction with the cleveref package [5] which has to be loaded separately. \langle type \rangle has to be a cross-reference type known to cleveref like theorem, algorithm, result, etc. References made with cleveref will use this type. Note that using \label type will result in compilation errors, if cleveref is not loaded. For an example, see Theorem 18.3.5 on page 383.

/tcb/no label type  (no value, initially set)

Removes a /tcb/label type, if set before.

/tcb/step=(counter)  (no default, initially unset)

Shortcut for \texttt{phantom}={\texttt{\refstepcounter{#1}}}. The given \langle counter \rangle is increased and ready for labelling. This option is not needed when using the convenient automated numbering introduced with version 2.40, see Subsection 5.1 from page 114.

/tcb/step and label=(counter){(marker)}  (no default, initially unset)

Shortcut for using /tcb/step and /tcb/label. This option is not needed when using the convenient automated numbering introduced with version 2.40, see Subsection 5.1 from page 114.
If the «list of tcolorbox(es)» feature described in Subsection 5.2 from page 121 is used, this key describes the \(\langle\text{text}\rangle\) for an entry into the generated list, e.g.

\[
\text{list entry=}\langle\text{\protect\numberline{\thetcbcounter}My beautiful Example}\rangle
\]

See Section 17.9 from page 355 for a complete example.

This is a shortcut for setting \text{/tcb/list entry} to \text{\protect\numberline{\thetcbcounter}\langle\text{text}\rangle}. So, the following settings are identical:

\[
\text{list text=My beautiful Example},\\
\text{list entry=\protect\numberline{\thetcbcounter}My beautiful Example}
\]

See Section 17.9 from page 355 for a complete example.

If the «list of tcolorbox(es)» feature described in Subsection 5.2 from page 121 is used, list entries are generated automatically. With this key, you can enforce an entry to the given \(\langle\text{list}\rangle\) with the given \(\langle\text{type}\rangle\). This issues:

\[
\text{addcontentsline{\langle\text{list}\rangle}{\langle\text{type}\rangle}{\langle\text{entry text}\rangle}}
\]

If the \text{nameref} package is loaded, the given \(\langle\text{text}\rangle\) is used for corresponding \text{\nameref} macros. Typically, the \(\langle\text{text}\rangle\) will be chosen to be identical or nearly identical to the one for \text{/tcb/title}.~\text{P.18}.

\[
\begin{verbatim}
\newtcolorbox{auto counter,number within=section}{pabox}[2]{%
  colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
  title=Examp.~\thetcbcounter: #2,#1}
\end{verbatim}
\]

\[
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{pabox}[label=mynamelabel,nameref={Title or anything else}]\{Title text\}
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{pabox}
\end{verbatim}
\]

This box is automatically numbered with \text{\ref{mynamelabel}} on page \text{\pageref{mynamelabel}}.

The box is titled \text{\enquote{\nameref{mynamelabel}}}.

\textbf{Examp. 4.1: Title text}

This is a tcolorbox.

This box is automatically numbered with 4.1 on page 105.

The box is titled “Title or anything else”.

\textbf{/tcb/nameref is used automatically inside \text{\newtcbtheorem}.~\text{P.361}.}
A `\hypertarget` from the package `hyperref` [15] is used to create an internal link of an anchor `<marker>`. This `<marker>` can be referenced by `\hyperlink` or `/tcb/hyperlink`.

% \usepackage{hyperref}%
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced, 
colback=red!10,colframe=red!50!black, 
hypertarget=hypertwinA, 
hyperlink=hypertwinB, 
title=Box A]
Click me to jump to Box B.
\end{tcolorbox}

Sets a PDF bookmark with the given `<text>`, if the package `bookmark` [10] is loaded. This bookmark is set with an automated destination (the current box) and is set one level below the current bookmark level.

% \usepackage{bookmark}%
\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=blue!10,colframe=blue!50!black, 
bookmark=Example for using a bookmark, 
title=Example for using a bookmark]
Open the bookmark view of the previewer to see the bookmark.
\end{tcolorbox}

Identical to `/tcb/bookmark`, but additional `<options>` from the package `bookmark` [10] can be given.

% \usepackage{bookmark}%
\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=red!10,colframe=red!50!black, 
bookmark*={color=red,italic,bold}%, 
{Another bookmark example}, 
title=Red and bold bookmark]
Open the bookmark view of the previewer to see the bookmark.
\end{tcolorbox}

Adds an index `<entry>` for the box. This is a shortcut for setting `%index{(entry)}` to `/tcb/phantom`.

% \usepackage{tcb}
\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=red!10,colframe=red!50!black, 
index*={name}{entry}]
Open the bookmark view of the previewer to see the bookmark.
\end{tcolorbox}

Adds an `<entry>` to an index with a specific `<name>`. This is a shortcut for setting `%index[(name)]{(entry)}` to `/tcb/phantom`. An index extension package like `imakeidx` has to be loaded to use this option key.
## 4.22 Even and Odd Pages

Also see /tcb/toggle left and right \(^{P.46}\) and /tcb/toggle enlargement \(^{P.92}\) for further even/odd options.

**/tcb/check odd page=**true|false \(\text{(default true, initially false)}\)

If set to **true**, a precise even/odd page testing for the current box is applied. This is done by using labels. If a box moves to another page, the document has to be compiled twice for the correct settings. If set to **false**, even/odd page tests may give wrong results for the first box of a page.

/tcb/toggle left and right \(^{P.46}\), /tcb/toggle enlargement \(^{P.92}\), and /tcb/if odd page automatically set check odd page, but for \textbackslash tcb\textbackslash ifoddpage \(^{P.109}\) this option has to be set explicitly.

**/tcb/if odd page={⟨odd options⟩}\{(even options)\}** \(\text{(style, no default)}\)

If the current box is on an odd page, the ⟨odd options⟩ are applied. On an even page, the ⟨even options⟩ are applied. /tcb/check odd page is automatically set for precise even/odd page testing.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcbox}[if odd page={colback=yellow!50}{colback=red!50}]
This box is colored in yellow on an odd page
and is colored in red on an even page.
\end{tcbox}
```

This box is colored in yellow on an odd page and is colored in red on an even page.

If a box is /tcb/breakable \(^{P.389}\), using /tcb/if odd page only acts upon the *first* box. If the setting should be repeated for every partial box of the break sequence, the option should be packed into /tcb/extras \(^{P.396}\). In this case, /tcb/check odd page has to be set explicitly! Also see /tcb/if odd page* \(^{P.108}\.

**/tcb/if odd page or oneside={⟨odd options⟩}\{(even options)\}** \(\text{(style, no default)}\)

For onesided documents, the ⟨odd options⟩ are applied always. For twosided documents, this style is identical to /tcb/if odd page.
This option needs the \texttt{breakable} library, see Section 19 on page 387.

For breakable boxes, if the current partial box is on an odd page, the \emph{(odd options)} are applied. On an even page, the \emph{(even options)} are applied. \texttt{/tcb/check odd page} is automatically set for precise even/odd page testing.

In contrast to \texttt{/tcb/if odd page}~\texttt{P.107}, \texttt{/tcb/if odd page*} is used on \emph{every} partial box of a break sequences and not only on the \emph{first} box. Another difference is that \texttt{/tcb/if odd page*} is applied quite \emph{late} during option processing, while \texttt{/tcb/if odd page} is applied immediately.

\texttt{/tcb/if odd page*} is implemented as \texttt{/tcb/if odd page} \texttt{P.107} packed into \texttt{/tcb/extras} \texttt{P.396}.

% \texttt{/tcbuselibrary{breakable}}
\begin{tcolorbox}[breakable,if odd page*={colback=yellow!50}{colback=red!50}]
  This breakable box is colored in yellow on an odd page
  and colored in red on an even page. For every partial box, the
  test is repeated, i.e. this would give a yellow, red, yellow, red, \ldots sequence for a long content.
\end{tcolorbox}

This breakable box is colored in yellow on an odd page and is colored in red on an even page. For every partial box, the test is repeated, i.e. this would give a yellow, red, yellow, red, \ldots sequence for a long content.

For onesided documents, the \emph{(odd options)} are applied always. For twosided documents, this style is identical to \texttt{/tcb/if odd page*}.

% \texttt{/tcbuselibrary{breakable}}
\begin{tcolorbox}[breakable,if odd page or oneside*={colback=yellow!50}{colback=red!50}]
  This breakable box is colored in yellow on an odd page
  and colored in red on an even page. For every partial box, the
  test is repeated, i.e. this would give a yellow, red, yellow, red, \ldots sequence for a long content.
\end{tcolorbox}
If the current box is on an odd page, the \textit{odd code} is executed. On an even page, the \textit{even code} is executed. For precise even/odd page testing, the \texttt{/tcb/check odd page} \footnote{P.107} has to be set manually inside the box options. The macro \texttt{tcbifoddpage} can be used inside underlay, overlay, or watermark code to test if the box is on an odd page. This will work also for boxes in a break sequence. The macro can also be used inside the box \texttt{content text}. For unbreakable boxes, the correct page test is applied. But for \texttt{/tcb/breakable} \footnote{P.389} boxes, \texttt{tcbifoddpage} will always give the result for the page of the \textit{first} box inside the box \texttt{content text}. If needed, the methods from the packages \texttt{changepage} or \texttt{ifoddpage} could be used here.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\texttt{tcbset\{colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,fonttitle=\bfseries\}}
\begin{tcolorbox}\[enhanced,check odd page,\]
\texttt{title={Example for a box on an tcbifoddpage\{odd\}{even} page},\}
\texttt{watermark text=\{tcbifoddpage\{Odd\}{Even} page\!\}}
\lipsum[1]
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{center}
\textbf{Example for a box on an odd page}
\end{center}


\begin{tcolorbox}
\texttt{tcbifoddpageoroneside\{\{odd code\}\}{even code}}
\begin{tcolorbox}\[enhanced,check odd page,\]
\texttt{\begin{tcolorbox}[colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,fonttitle=\bfseries\}}
\texttt{\begin{tcolorbox}}
\texttt{\begin{tcolorbox}}
\texttt{\lipsum[1]}
\texttt{\end{tcolorbox}}
\texttt{\end{tcolorbox}}
\texttt{\end{tcolorbox}}
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{center}
\textbf{Example for a box on an odd page}
\end{center}


For onesided documents, the \textit{odd code} is executed always. For twosided documents, this macro is identical to \texttt{tcbifoddpage}.
This is a unique identifier (arabic number) for a \texttt{tcolorbox}. It is locally defined inside boxes and has no meaning outside. It is used for precise even/odd page testing, but may also be valuable for elaborate user code.

\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=yellow!5,title=Box \thetcolorboxnumber]
This box is \thetcolorboxnumber.
\tcb[on line,size=fbox]{This box is \thetcolorboxnumber} and
\tcb[on line,size=fbox]{this box is \thetcolorboxnumber}.
This box is \thetcolorboxnumber.
\end{tcolorbox}

Box 1162

This box is 1162. This box is 1163 and this box is 1164. This box is 1162.

This macro contains the expanded arabic page number of the current \texttt{tcolorbox}. It is locally defined inside boxes and has no meaning outside. It is precise only, if \texttt{/tcb/check odd page} \texttt{P. 107} was set.

\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=yellow!5,check odd page, title=Box on page \thetcolorboxpage]
This box is located on page \thetcolorboxpage.
\end{tcolorbox}

Box on page 110

This box is located on page 110.
4.23 Externalization

See Section 25 on page 474 for the \texttt{external} library of \texttt{tcolorbox}.

If the \texttt{externalization} library of the \texttt{tikz} package is used and \texttt{/tcb/graphical environment} \textsuperscript{P.142} is set to \texttt{tikzpicture}, a \texttt{tcolorbox} could trigger the externalization process which will arise a compilation error.

To avoid this, there are two possible strategies:

- Ensure, that \texttt{\tikzexternaldisable} is set before a \texttt{tcolorbox} is used. If you typically use the pattern \texttt{\tikzexternalenable some picture \tikzexternaldisable}, there is nothing to care about.

- If \texttt{externalization} is enabled globally, use \texttt{/tcb/shield externalize} to shield any \texttt{tcolorbox}. The preamble code could look like this:

\begin{verbatim}
\usetikzlibrary{external}
\tikzexternalize
\tcbset{shield externalize}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{/tcb/shield externalize=true|false} \hspace{1cm} (default \texttt{true}, initially \texttt{false})

If set to \texttt{true}, the drawing part of the \texttt{tcolorbox} is not being externalized which is a good thing at the current state of art. Nevertheless, if the \texttt{tcolorbox} contains a \texttt{tikzpicture}, this picture is still externalized. Pictures drawn with help of \texttt{/tcb/tikz upper} \textsuperscript{P.72} or alike are \textit{not} externalized.

\begin{verbatim}
\usetikzlibrary{external}
\tikzexternalize
\tcbset{shield externalize}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{/tcb/shield externalize} is applied for every following \texttt{tcolorbox} inside the current \texttt{\LaTeX} group and is not affected by \texttt{/tcb/reset} \textsuperscript{P.112}.

\texttt{/tcb/external=(file name)} \hspace{1cm} (no default, initially unset)

Convenience option which calls \texttt{\tikzsetnextfilename{(file name)}}. Typically, it may be used inside the option list of a \texttt{tcolorbox} to set the externalization \texttt{(file name)} for the first \texttt{tikzpicture} which is discovered \textit{inside} the box content. The package \texttt{tikz} \textsuperscript{22} or the library \texttt{\LaTeX} \texttt{skins} has to be loaded to use this option. Additionally, \texttt{\usetikzlibrary{external}} has to be used.

\texttt{/tcb/remake=true|false} \hspace{1cm} (default \texttt{true}, initially \texttt{false})

Convenience option which calls \texttt{/tikz/external/remake next}. Typically, it may be used inside the option list of a \texttt{tcolorbox} to force the remake of the first \texttt{tikzpicture} which is discovered \textit{inside} the box content. The package \texttt{tikz} \textsuperscript{22} or the library \texttt{\LaTeX} \texttt{skins} has to be loaded to use this option. Additionally, \texttt{\usetikzlibrary{external}} has to be used.
4.24 Miscellaneous

/tcb/reset (no value, initially set)

Sets (nearly) all \texttt{tcolorbox} settings (including loaded libraries) back to their default values \emph{plus} any settings given by \texttt{\tcbsetforeverylayer} \textsuperscript{P.13}, \texttt{\tcb/savedelimiter} \textsuperscript{P.26}, \texttt{\tcb/capture} \textsuperscript{P.100}, and \texttt{\tcb/shield externalize} \textsuperscript{P.111} keep their values. Also, all raster values (see Section 16 on page 297) are not resetted. This option is useful for boxes in boxes where the inner box should not inherit the settings of the outer box. Note that for boxes inside boxes the \texttt{reset} is done automatically, if the standard settings of the package are used (v2.40 and above), see Section 4.16 from page 97.

/tcb/code=⟨code⟩ (no default, initially unset)

The given \texttt{⟨code⟩} is executed immediately. This option is useful to place some arbitrary code into an option list.

Useless at this spot but functional.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\small
\tt
\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black, code={Useless at this spot but functional.}, fonttitle=\bfseries]
\begin{tcolorbox}[code={\newcommand{\mycommand}{\textit{working}}}, title=My \mycommand\ title]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}

My \textit{working} title

This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
Annihilates the current \texttt{tcolorbox} as far as possible. Basically, this comments out the whole \texttt{tcolorbox} by using a key. If the option list of the current \texttt{tcolorbox} contains arbitrary code with global impact (like counter settings), these actions are not undone automatically. Nevertheless, the effects of \texttt{/tcb/phantom}^{P.104}, \texttt{/tcb/step}^{P.104}, \texttt{/tcb/new/auto counter}^{P.114}, etc., are removed by \texttt{/tcb/void}.

This option key cannot be applied for every situation. For example, if several box environments with the same environment name are nested, for the outer environment \texttt{/tcb/void} cannot be used, since the end of the inner environment will be misinterpreted as end of the outer environment.

The contents of the current \texttt{tcolorbox} are processed including counter settings, but the box is just not drawn. Therefore, \texttt{/tcb/nirvana} is less radical than \texttt{/tcb/void} and several box environments can be nested without problems.
5 Initialization Option Keys

The initialization options are only applicable for the generation of new environments and commands based on tcolorbox and friends. Particularly, they can be used for

- \newtcolorbox\textsuperscript{P.15},
- \newtcbox\textsuperscript{P.16},
- \newtcblisting\textsuperscript{P.323},
- \newtcbinputlisting\textsuperscript{P.325},
- \newtcbtheorem\textsuperscript{P.361}, and
- \newtcbboxfit\textsuperscript{P.439}.

Typically, these options may generate counters and alike. It is strongly recommended that you use initialization options inside the preamble only. Otherwise, you may get trouble when using \texttt{\LaTeX}'s \texttt{\include} features. Also, it is recommended to generate new environments and commands with these options after \texttt{hyperref} is loaded to avoid warnings about duplicate identifiers.

5.1 Numbered Boxes

Counters assigned using the initialization options are administrated automatically. Especially, they are increased for each new box. Independent from the real counter name, the counter value can be referenced by \texttt{\thetcbcounter}, e.g. inside the title of the box. The real counter name is stored inside \texttt{\tcbcounter}.

\texttt{/tcb/new/auto counter} (no value, initially unset)

Creates a new counter automatically. With \texttt{/tcb/new/number format}\textsuperscript{P.116} and \texttt{/tcb/new/number within}\textsuperscript{P.116}, the appearance and behavior of the counter can be changed. The counter value is referenced by \texttt{\thetcbcounter}.

\texttt{\begin{pabox}[label={myautocounter}]{Title with number}}

This box is automatically numbered with \texttt{\ref{myautocounter}} on page \texttt{\pageref{myautocounter}}. Inside the box, the \texttt{\thetcbcounter} can also be referenced by \texttt{\\thetcbcounter}. The real counter name is \texttt{\tcb@cnt@pabox}.

Examp. 5.1: Title with number

This box is automatically numbered with 5.1 on page 114. Inside the box, the 5.1 can also be referenced by \texttt{\thetcbcounter}. The real counter name is \texttt{tcb@cnt@pabox}.
Here, a counter from another \texttt{tcolorbox} is reused. Note that the settings for \texttt{/tcb/new/number format} and \texttt{/tcb/new/number within} are inherited and cannot be changed. The counter value is referenced by \texttt{\thetcbcounter}.

\begin{mybox}[label={myusecounterfrom}]{Title with continued number}
This box is automatically numbered with \ref{myusecounterfrom} on page \pageref{myusecounterfrom}. Inside the box, the \texttt{\thetcbcounter} can also be referenced by \texttt{\thetcbcounter}. The real counter name is \texttt{tcb@cnt@pabox}.
\end{mybox}

\newtcolorbox[use counter from=pabox]{mybox}[2][]{
colback=blue!5!white,colframe=blue!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,title=Some Box \thetcbcounter: #2,#1}

\begin{mybox}[label={myusecounterfrom}]{Title with continued number}
This box is automatically numbered with 5.2 on page 115. Inside the box, the 5.2 can also be referenced by \texttt{\thetcbcounter}. The real counter name is \texttt{tcb@cnt@pabox}.
\end{mybox}

\newtcolorbox[use counter=myexample,number format=\Alph]{mybox}[2][]{
colback=green!5!white,colframe=green!55!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,title=Some Box \thetcbcounter: #2,#1}

\begin{mybox}[label={myusecounter}]{Title with LaTeX number}
This box is automatically numbered with A on page 115. Inside the box, the A can also be referenced by \texttt{\thetcbcounter}. The real counter name is \texttt{myexample}.
\end{mybox}

\newcounter{myexample}\preamble

\begin{mybox}[label={myusecounter}]{Title with LaTeX number}
This box is automatically numbered with A on page 115. Inside the box, the A can also be referenced by \texttt{\thetcbcounter}. The real counter name is \texttt{myexample}.
\end{mybox}

\newtcolorbox[use counter=\texttt{myexample}]{mybox}[2][]{
colback=blue!5!white,colframe=blue!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,title=Some Box \thetcbcounter: #2,#1}

\begin{mybox}[label={myusecounter}]{Title with LaTeX number}
This box is automatically numbered with \texttt{\thetcbcounter} on page \pageref{myusecounter}. Inside the box, the \texttt{\thetcbcounter} can also be referenced by \texttt{\thetcbcounter}. The real counter name is \texttt{tcb@cnt@pabox}.
\end{mybox}

\newcounter{myexample}\preamble

\begin{mybox}[label={myusecounter}]{Title with LaTeX number}
This box is automatically numbered with A on page 115. Inside the box, the A can also be referenced by \texttt{\thetcbcounter}. The real counter name is \texttt{myexample}.
\end{mybox}

An existing \LaTeX\ \texttt{counter} is used for numbering. In contrast to \texttt{/tcb/new/use counter}, the options \texttt{/tcb/new/number format} and \texttt{/tcb/new/number within} are ignored. Use this for counters which are already configured outside the \texttt{tcolorbox} package, e.g. the standard \texttt{figure} counter.

\newtcolorbox[use counter=\texttt{myexample}]{mybox}[2][]{
colback=green!5!white,colframe=green!55!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,title=Some Box \thetcbcounter: #2,#1}

\begin{mybox}[label={myusecounter}]{Title with LaTeX number}
This box is automatically numbered with \texttt{\thetcbcounter} on page \pageref{myusecounter}. Inside the box, the \texttt{\thetcbcounter} can also be referenced by \texttt{\thetcbcounter}. The real counter name is \texttt{myexample}.
\end{mybox}

An existing \LaTeX\ \texttt{counter} is used for numbering. In contrast to \texttt{/tcb/new/use counter}, the options \texttt{/tcb/new/number format} and \texttt{/tcb/new/number within} are ignored. Use this for counters which are already configured outside the \texttt{tcolorbox} package, e.g. the standard \texttt{figure} counter.

The created boxes are not numbered. This is the default. The option may be used to overrule a previous option.

For \texttt{beamer} slides, this invokes the \texttt{\resetcounteronoverlays} command for the box counter. The counter is automatically reset on subsequent overlay slides of a frame. Thereby, the counter will be the same on all slides of every frame.
The automatic counter is set to zero, if \counter is increased. Additionally, during output, the value of \counter is prepended to the value of the automatic counter.

To prepend the automatic counter with the chapter number and to reset it with every new chapter, use:

\begin{phbox}{label=myfreestyle}\text{Title with freestyle number}\end{phbox}

This box is automatically numbered with \ref{myfreestyle} on page \pageref{myfreestyle}. Inside the box, the \thetcbcounter can also be referenced by \thetcbcounter. The real counter name is \texttt{tcb@cnt@phbox}.

\begin{phbox}{label=myfreestyle}\text{Title with freestyle number}\end{phbox}

This box is automatically numbered with \texttt{(Q/5/A)} on page 116. Inside the box, the \texttt{(Q/5/A)} can also be referenced by \texttt{\thetcbcounter}. The real counter name is \texttt{tcb@cnt@phbox}.
The following options /tcb/new/crefname and /tcb/new/Crefname need to be set inside the preamble.

/tcb/new/crefname={⟨singular⟩}{⟨plural⟩} (no default, initially unset)
This option key can be used only in conjunction with the cleveref package [5] which has to be loaded separately. It creates a cross-reference type for the new \textcolor{blue}{tcolorbox}'es, where the lowercase ⟨singular⟩ and ⟨plural⟩ forms of the cross-reference are given. This type is the environment or macro name and /tcb/label type \textsuperscript{P.104} is set automatically. See /tcb/label type \textsuperscript{P.104} and [5] for more information.

/tcb/new/Crefname={⟨singular⟩}{⟨plural⟩} (no default, initially unset)
This option key can be used only in conjunction with the cleveref package [5] which has to be loaded separately. It creates a cross-reference type for the new \textcolor{blue}{tcolorbox}'es, where the uppercase ⟨singular⟩ and ⟨plural⟩ forms of the cross-reference are given. This type is the environment or macro name and /tcb/label type \textsuperscript{P.104} is set automatically. See /tcb/label type \textsuperscript{P.104} and [5] for more information.

\section*{Definition in the preamble:}
% \usepackage{cleveref}
\newtcolorbox[auto counter,number within=section, crefname={bluebox}{blueboxes}]{mybluebox}[]{}[colback=blue!5!white,colframe=blue!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries, title=Bluebox \thetcbcounter: #2,#1]{mybluebox}

% \usepackage{varioref}
% \usepackage{cleveref}
\begin{mybluebox}[label={myreference}]{My title}
This is an example.
\end{mybluebox}
\Cref{myreference}, \cref{myreference}.\Cpageref{myreference}, \cpageref{myreference}.\nameCref{myreference}, \namecref{myreference}.\labelcref{myreference}, \labelcpageref{myreference}.\Vref{myreference}, \vref{myreference}.\Vref*{myreference}, \vref*{myreference}.

\section*{Bluebox 5.1: My title}
This is an example.

Bluebox 5.1, bluebox 5.1.
Page 117, page 117.
Bluebox, bluebox.
5.1, 117.
With \texttt{varioref}:
Bluebox 5.1, bluebox 5.1.
Bluebox 5.1, bluebox 5.1.
Used to comfortably blend into an existing schema of naming and numbering for some selected cases. For example, a \texttt{tcolorbox} can be used to display and entitle an image pretending to be a standard \texttt{figure} environment. Here, \texttt{/tcb/title} \texttt{\footnotesize P.18} is used instead of the standard \texttt{\caption} and \texttt{/tcb/list text} \texttt{\footnotesize P.105} can be used instead of the optional parameter of the standard \texttt{\caption}.

Feasible values for \texttt{\langle name \rangle} are:

- \texttt{figures}: blend into the standard \texttt{figure} environment.
- \texttt{tables}: blend into the standard \texttt{table} environment.
- \texttt{listings}: blend into the standard \texttt{lstlisting} environment of the package \texttt{listings} \cite{6}.

\begin{figure}[htb]
\centering
\includegraphics[height=4cm]{lichtspiel.jpg}
\caption{A standard figure}
\end{figure}

\begin{tcolorbox}[blend into=figures]{myfigure}[2][
\begin{centering}
\includegraphics[height=4cm]{lichtspiel.jpg}
\caption{A \texttt{tcolorbox} figure}
\end{centering}
\end{tcolorbox}

Figure 1: A standard figure

Figure 2: A \texttt{tcolorbox} figure
This option formats the title output of \texttt{tcb/new/blend into}^\textsuperscript{P.118}. Note that this is a common \texttt{tcolorbox} option which should be set globally or in the normal option part of \texttt{newtcolorbox}^\textsuperscript{P.15}.

Feasible values for \texttt{⟨value⟩} are:

- \texttt{colon}: use name/number plus colon.
- \texttt{dash}: use name/number plus dash.
- \texttt{colon hang}: use name/number plus colon with hanging indent.
- \texttt{dash hang}: use name/number plus dash with hanging indent.

\begin{myfigure}{A tcolorbox figure with quite a long title}
\includegraphics[height=5cm]{lichtspiel.jpg}
\end{myfigure}

Figure 3 – A tcolorbox figure with quite a long title
This option formats the title output of \texttt{/tcb/new/blend} into \texttt{P.118}. The \texttt{(code)} takes one parameter, the name/number. Use this, if \texttt{/tcb/blend before title} \texttt{P.119} is not flexible enough.

\begin{myfigure}{A tcolorbox figure}
\includegraphics[height=6cm]{lichtspiel.jpg}
\end{myfigure}

\begin{Verbatim}
\texttt{\newtcolorbox[blend into=figures]{myfigure}[2][]{float=htb,capture=hbox,blend before title code={\fbox{##1}\ },title={#2},every float=\centering,#1}}
\end{Verbatim}
5.2 Lists of tcolorboxes

For figures and tables, \LaTeX{} provides the \texttt{\listoffigures} and \texttt{\listoftables} commands to create lists of these numbered entities. Also, a \texttt{tcolorbox} can be part of such a kind of list.

1. Assign a list \langle name \rangle by the \textit{initialization} option /tcb/new/list inside.

2. Optionally, a new \langle type \rangle for list entries may be assigned by the \textit{initialization} option /tcb/new/list type.

3. List entries are generated automatically within each new \texttt{tcolorbox} using the above initialization.
   
   • If /tcb/list entry is set, the entry is generated with it.
   • Otherwise, if /tcb/title is set, the entry is generated with it.
   • Otherwise, the entry is generated with the current number and the environment name.

4. The generated list is displayed by \texttt{\tcblistof}.

\texttt{/tcb/new/list inside=⟨name⟩}(no default, initially unset)

Assigns a list or contents file to the generated \texttt{tcolorbox}es. Entries to this list are saved to a file which gets the \langle name \rangle as file name extension. The list is referenced by this name in \texttt{\tcblistof}. For example:

\begin{itemize}
  \item list inside=exam
\end{itemize}

See Section 17.9 from page 355 for a complete example.

\texttt{/tcb/new/list type=⟨type⟩}(no default, initially \texttt{tcolorbox})

Optionally, some \langle type \rangle can be assigned to the list entries. For a new \langle type \rangle, a macro \texttt{\l@⟨type⟩} has to exist which controls the format of the list entry. The default type is defined by

\begin{verbatim}
\newcommand*{\l@tcolorbox}{\@dottedtocline{1}{1.5em}{2.3em}}
\end{verbatim}

This is identical to the \texttt{\l@section} setting of \LaTeX{}. \texttt{\l@tcolorbox} can be redefined or a new \langle type \rangle can be assigned.
\tcblistof[(macro)]{(name)}{(short)}{(title text)}

Displays the generated list of tcolorboxes with the given \textit{name}. The heading is generated by \textit{name} where \texttt{section} is the default setting for \textit{macro}. Here, as usual, \textit{tclant text} is the title of the section or chapter while \textit{short} is a shorter title for headings and table of contents.

- If \textit{macro} ends with a *, \tcblistof mimics the behavior of \texttt{listoffigures} from the standard \LaTeX classes and adds the title to the left and right mark for headings.
- If \textit{macro} starts with \texttt{chapter}, a possible two column document setting is restored to one column (as standard \LaTeX classes do for \texttt{listoffigures}).

To display the list inside a subsection, use for example:

\begin{quote}
\tcblistof[subsection]{exam}{List of Exercises}
\end{quote}

The result of the example is found as Subsection 17.10 on page 358.

To apply the list similar to \texttt{listoffigures} for a report or book, use for example:

\begin{quote}
\tcblistof[chapter*]{exam}{List of Exercises}
\end{quote}

To set a short title for headings with the default \texttt{section} setting, use for example:

\begin{quote}
\tcblistof[exam]{List of Exercises}{Elaborate List of Fine Exercises for all Students of my Course}
\end{quote}

\textbf{The core of the list is generated by \texttt{@starttoc\(\langle name\rangle\)}} which can be wrapped into an own macro.
6 Side by Side

A side by side box is a special tcolorbox where the upper and lower part of the box are set side by side. All boxes of this kind are unbreakable.

Further side by side options for code examples are /tcb/listing side text, /tcb/text side listing, /tcb/listing outside text, and /tcb/text outside listing.

6.1 Basic Settings

\tcb/sidebyside=true|false (default true, initially false)

Normally, the upper part and the lower part of the box have their positions as their names suggest. If sidebyside is set to true, the upper part is drawn left-handed and the lower part is drawn right-handed. Both parts are drawn together with the geometry settings of the upper part but the space is divided horizontally according to the following options. Colors, fonts, and box content additions are used individually. The resulting box is unbreakable.

\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title,sidebyside]
This is the upper (left-handed) part.
\tcblower
This is the lower (right-handed) part.
\end{tcolorbox}

\% \usepackage{lipsum}
\% \tcbuselibrary{skins}
\begin{tcolorbox}[bicolor,sidebyside,righthand width=3cm,
  sharp corners,boxrule=.4pt,colback=green!5,colbacklower=green!50!black!50]
\lipsum[2]
\tcblower
\end{tcolorbox}

Sets the vertical \textit{alignment} for the left-handed and right-handed part. Feasible values for \textit{alignment} are:

- \textbf{center}: identical to \texttt{minipage} option \texttt{c}.
- \textbf{top}: identical to \texttt{minipage} option \texttt{t} (aligns the top lines of the left-handed and right-handed side according to their baselines).
- \textbf{bottom}: identical to \texttt{minipage} option \texttt{b} (aligns the bottom lines of the left-handed and right-handed side according to their baselines).
- \textbf{center seam}: aligns the center of the left-handed and right-handed side.
- \textbf{top seam}: aligns the very top seam of the left-handed and right-handed side.
- \textbf{bottom seam}: aligns the very bottom seam of the left-handed and right-handed side.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{tabular}{|l|}
\hline
\texttt{center} \\

This is a text which is too long for one line. \\
This is a short text. \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{tabular}{|l|}
\hline
\texttt{top} \\

This is a text which is too long for one line. \\
This is a short text. \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{tabular}{|l|}
\hline
\texttt{bottom} \\

This is a text which is too long for one line. \\
This is a short text. \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{center}, \texttt{top}, and \texttt{bottom} are identical to the known corresponding \texttt{minipage} options. While this is the preferred approach for text content, the result for boxed content like tables or images may not be as expected.

For such content, one may use \texttt{center seam}, \texttt{top seam}, and \texttt{bottom seam}. For example, \texttt{top seam} aligns the very top seam of the left-handed and right-handed side.
This is my description text for the pictures displayed on the right-handed side.

\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=center seam, sidebyside align=center seam]
This is my description text for the pictures displayed on the right-handed side.
\tcblower
\includegraphics[width=\linewidth/2]{goldshade}
\includegraphics[width=\linewidth/2]{blueshade}
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=top seam, sidebyside align=top seam]
This is my description text for the pictures displayed on the right-handed side.
\tcblower
\includegraphics[width=\linewidth/2]{goldshade}
\includegraphics[width=\linewidth/2]{blueshade}
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=bottom seam, sidebyside align=bottom seam]
This is my description text for the pictures displayed on the right-handed side.
\tcblower
\includegraphics[width=\linewidth/2]{goldshade}
\includegraphics[width=\linewidth/2]{blueshade}
\end{tcolorbox}

**center seam**

This is my description text for the pictures displayed on the right-handed side.

**top seam**

This is my description text for the pictures displayed on the right-handed side.

**bottom seam**

This is my description text for the pictures displayed on the right-handed side.
\texttt{/tcb/sidebyside\_gap=⟨length⟩} (no default, initially 10mm)

Sets the horizontal distance between the left-handed and right-handed part to ⟨length⟩.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\[\text{adjusted title=Wide gap, sidebyside gap=30mm}\]
This is a text which is too long for one line.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
\[\text{adjusted title=Narrow gap, sidebyside gap=1mm}\]
This is a text which is too long for one line.
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/lefthand\_width=⟨length⟩} (no default, initially unset)

Sets the width of the left-handed part to the given ⟨length⟩.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\[\text{title=My title, sidebyside, lefthand width=3cm}\]
This is the upper (\textit{left-handed}) part.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
\[\text{title=My title, sidebyside, righthand width=3cm}\]
This is the upper (\textit{left-handed}) part.
\end{tcolorbox}
/tcb/lefthand ratio=(fraction)  (no default, initially 0.5)
Sets the width of the left-handed part to the given (fraction) of the available space. (fraction) is a value between 0 and 1.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\textbf{My title}
\begin{tabular}{|l|l|}
\hline This is the upper \textit{(left-handed)} part. & This is the lower \textit{(right-handed)} part. \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/righthand ratio=(fraction)  (no default, initially 0.5)
Sets the width of the right-handed part to the given (fraction) of the available space. (fraction) is a value between 0 and 1.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\textbf{My title}
\begin{tabular}{|l|l|}
\hline This is the upper \textit{(left-handed)} part. & This is the lower \textit{(right-handed)} part. \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{tcolorbox}
If one side of a side-by-side box should be adapted to the width of its content, this width has to be computed beforehand. The following example uses a `savebox` \mysavebox to store the picture to determine its width. A more convenient way to handle this task is to use the methods from Section 6.2 on page 129.

\begin{tikzpicture}
    \path[fill=red!20,draw=red!50!black]
        (0,0) node[below]{A} -- (3,1) node[right]{B}
        -- (1,4) node[above]{C} -- cycle;
\end{tikzpicture}

6.2 Advanced Settings from the \texttt{xparse} Library

All following macros and options need the \texttt{xparse} library to be loaded, see Section 24 on page 461.

\texttt{\textbackslash tcb\textbackslash sidebyside\{\langle options\rangle\}\{\langle left-handed content\rangle\}\{\langle right-handed content\rangle\}}

Creates a colored box using more or less arbitrary \langle options\rangle for a \texttt{tcolorbox} \footnote{P.12}. The \texttt{/tcb/sidebyside} \footnote{P.123} option is set to \texttt{true} and the \langle left-handed content\rangle and \langle right-handed content\rangle is filled into the box appropriately. The resulting box is unbreakable. \texttt{\textbackslash tcb\textbackslash sidebyside} is not only a shortcut for using a normal \texttt{tcolorbox} \footnote{P.12} with \texttt{/tcb/sidebyside} \footnote{P.123}, but allows setting further options like \texttt{/tcb/sidebyside adapt} \footnote{P.130} and \texttt{/tcb/sidebyside switch} \footnote{P.132}.

\begin{verbatim}
\% \tcbuselibrary{skins,xparse}
\% \usepackage{lipsum}
\tcbsidebyside[title=The Triangle,
   sidebyside adapt=left,
   bicolor,colback=white,colbacklower=yellow!10,
   fonttitle=\bfseries,center title,drop lifted shadow,
]{
   \begin{tikzpicture}
   \path[fill=red!20,draw=red!50!black]
   (0,0) node[below]{A} -- (3,1) node[right]{B}
   -- (1,4) node[above]{C} -- cycle;
   \end{tikzpicture}
}{
\lipsum[1]
}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{tikzpicture}
\node at (0,0) {A};
\node at (1,4) {C};
\node at (3,1) {B};
\end{tikzpicture}

The Triangle

The option allows the left-handed and/or right-handed side to determine the dimensions of the box. This option is only valid inside \tcbsidebyside\[^P.129\].

Feasible values for \langle side(s) \rangle are:

- **none**: no measurement of left-handed and right-handed side.
- **left**: the actual width of the left-handed content is used to set \tcblefthandwidth\[^P.126\].
- **right**: the actual width of the right-handed content is used to set \tcbrighthandwidth\[^P.126\].
- **both**: the actual width of the left-handed and right-handed content is used to set \tcblefthandwidth\[^P.126\], \tcbrighthandwidth\[^P.126\], and the overall \tcbladeftextwidth\[^P.34\].

% \tcbuselibrary{skins,sparse}
\begin{tcbsidebyside}[sidebyside adapt=left, title=Very important table, beamer, colframe=blue!50!black, colback=blue!10, lower separated=false, sidebyside gap=5mm]
%\begin{tabular}{|l|c|r|}
\hline
left & center & right \\
\hline
A & B & C \\
\hline
D & E & F \\
\hline
%\end{tabular}
\end{tcbsidebyside}

This table contains the most important figures for all future actions. You may notice that B follows A, C follows B, and so on.


% \tcbuselibrary{skins,sparse}
\begin{tcbsidebyside}[sidebyside adapt=right, blanker, sidebyside gap=5mm]
%\lipsum[2]
\end{tcbsidebyside}

\lipsum

Both sides adapted

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>left</th>
<th>center</th>
<th>right</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>F</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\begin{tabular}{|l|c|r|}
\hline
left & center & right \\
A & B & C \\
D & E & F \\
\hline
\end{tabular}

\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[fill=yellow,draw=yellow!75!red] (0,0) circle (1cm);
\fill[red] (45:5mm) circle (1mm);
\fill[red] (135:5mm) circle (1mm);
\draw[line width=1mm,red] (215:5mm) arc (215:325:5mm);
\end{tikzpicture}
/tcb/sidebyside switch=true|false (default true, initially false)

If set to true, the (left-handed content) and (right-handed content) of \tcb/sidebyside\textsuperscript{P.129} are switched. Obviously, this option is only valid inside \tcb/sidebyside\textsuperscript{P.129}.

The side switching can be made even/odd page sensitive, if used inside /tcb/if odd page\textsuperscript{P.107}.

\begin{tabular}{|l|c|r|}
\hline
left & center & right \\
A & B & C \\
D & E & F \\
\hline
\end{tabular}

This table contains the most important figures for all future actions. You may notice that B follows A, C follows B, and so on.
7 Saving and Loading of Verbatim Texts

The following macros are slightly modified versions of the original macros from the known packages \texttt{moreverb} and \texttt{verbatim}. They are used implicitly inside of a \texttt{tcolorbox} environment, but they can be used outside also.

\begin{tcbverbatimwrite}{⟨file name⟩}
⟨environment content⟩
\end{tcbverbatimwrite}

Saves the \texttt{⟨environment content⟩} to a file named by \texttt{⟨file name⟩}. T\TeX\ macros inside the environment are not expanded.

\begin{tcbverbatimwrite}{\jobname\_verbexp.tex}
This text is saved \textit{as is}.
\end{tcbverbatimwrite}

Now, we are using the file:
\input{\jobname\_verbexp.tex}

This environment may be used inside an own environment. Note, that inside the environment definition \texttt{\begin{tcbverbatimwrite}} has to be used instead of \texttt{\begin{tcbverbatimwrite}} and \texttt{\end{tcbverbatimwrite}} instead of \texttt{\end{tcbverbatimwrite}}.

\begin{myverbatim}
This is the text which is saved by my own environment.
\end{myverbatim}

Now, we are using the file:
\input{\jobname\_myverb.tex}

\begin{tcbwritetemp}
⟨environment content⟩
\end{tcbwritetemp}

Has the same function as \texttt{tcbverbatimwrite}, but uses the key value of \texttt{tempfile} for the file name.

\begin{tcbwritetemp}
This text is saved \textit{as is}.
\end{tcbwritetemp}

Now, we are using the file:\par
\tcbusetemp

\texttt{tcbusetemp}

Loads the current temporary file which was saved by \texttt{tcbwritetemp}.
If this option is set to be \texttt{true}, the percent sign \% is silently ignored for \texttt{tcbverbatimwrite} \footnote{P.133} and all macros and environments which are built using \texttt{tcbverbatimwrite} \footnote{P.133}, e.g. \texttt{tcbwritetemp} \footnote{P.133}, \texttt{tcblisting} \footnote{P.320}, or \texttt{dispExample} \footnote{P.494}.

This option may be useful for creating some special effects, but mainly it is intended to be applied for documentation with DocStrip. The creation of this option was motivated by Yudai Nakata. Note that this option is not getting reset by \texttt{/tcb/reset} \footnote{P.112}.

Normal usage:
\begin{tcbwritetemp}
\%\begin{center}\bfseries
This is my text.
\end{center}
\end{tcbwritetemp}
\tcbusetemp
\tcbset{verbatim ignore percent}
\begin{tcbwritetemp}
%\begin{center}\bfseries
This is my text.
\end{center}
\end{tcbwritetemp}
\tcbusetemp

\begin{tcblisting}{title=Normal}
%\begin{center}\bfseries
This is my 5\% text 
and this is my 10\% text.
\end{center}
\end{tcblisting}

\begin{tcblisting}{title=Option applied, verbatim ignore percent}
  \begin{center}\bfseries
This is my 5\% text 
and this is my 10\% text.
\end{center}
\end{tcblisting}

Note that every percent sign is removed, also escaped ones.

Normal
\begin{center}\bfseries
This is my 5\% text and this is my 10\% text.
\end{center}

Option applied
\begin{center}\bfseries
This is my 5\% text and this is my 10\% text.
\end{center}
8 Recording

The package provides some macros and options to take records during compilation. This is done by \LaTeX file operations to save some data to a file for later usage. The main application scenario is depicted in Section 8.3 on the next page where information about example solutions is recorded and read again in Section 8.4 on page 139.

8.1 Macros

\begin{itemize}
\item \texttt{\textbackslash tcbstartrecording[(file name)]}  
  \begin{itemize}
  \item Opens a file denoted by \texttt{(file name)} for writing the records. The default file name is \texttt{\jobname.records}. See Section 8.3 on the next page for an example application.
  \end{itemize}
\item \texttt{\textbackslash tcbrecord\{\texttt{\langle content\rangle}\}}  
  \begin{itemize}
  \item Records any \texttt{\langle content\rangle} to the record file. \texttt{\textbackslash tcbrecord} has to be called before; otherwise, \texttt{\textbackslash tcbrecord} is silently ignored.
  \end{itemize}
\item \texttt{\textbackslash tcbstoprecording}  
  \begin{itemize}
  \item Closes the current record file which was opened by \texttt{\textbackslash tcbstartrecording} before.
  \end{itemize}
\item \texttt{\textbackslash tcbinputrecords[(file name)]}  
  \begin{itemize}
  \item Opens a file denoted by \texttt{(file name)} for reading the records via \texttt{\textbackslash input}. The default file name is the name of the last used record file for saving. \texttt{\textbackslash tcbstoprecording} has to be called before.
  \end{itemize}
\end{itemize}

8.2 Options

\begin{itemize}
\item \texttt{\textbackslash tcb/record\{\texttt{\langle content\rangle}\}}  
  \begin{itemize}
  \item Records any \texttt{\langle content\rangle} to the record file, see \texttt{\textbackslash tcbrecord}. This key can be used several times to write several lines.
  \end{itemize}
\item \texttt{\textbackslash tcb/no recording}  
  \begin{itemize}
  \item Disables \texttt{\textbackslash tcbrecord} and \texttt{\textbackslash tcb/record} inside the current group.
  \end{itemize}
\end{itemize}
8.3 Example: Exercises

The following application example creates exercises and their corresponding solutions. Each pair is generated inside a single \texttt{tcolorbox} where the solution is given below \texttt{tcblower} on page 12. For every example, the solution part is saved by \texttt{tcb/savelowerto} on page 24 to a file. The saving is recorded using \texttt{tcb/record} on page 135. To enlighten the possibilities, the second exercise has no solution. Finally, the solutions are input in Section 8.4 on page 139.

\begin{exercise}
Compute the derivative of the following function:
\begin{equation*}
f(x)=\sin((\sin x)^2)
\end{equation*}
\end{exercise}

\begin{align*}
f'(x) &= \left( \sin((\sin x)^2) \right)' \\
&= \cos((\sin x)^2) 2\sin x \cos x.
\end{align*}
\begin{exercise}[no solution]
It holds:
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d}{dx}\left(\ln|x|\right) = \frac{1}{x}.
\end{equation*}
\end{exercise}

\begin{exercise}
\begin{equation*}
f(x) = (\sin(\sin x))^2
\end{equation*}
\begin{align*}
\text{The derivative is:} \\
f'(x) &= \left( (\sin(\sin x))^2 \right)'
= 2\sin(\sin x)\cos(\sin x)\cos x.
\end{align*}
\end{exercise}

\begin{exercise}
\begin{equation*}
f(x) = \sqrt{x^3-6x^2+2x}
\end{equation*}
\begin{align*}
\text{The derivative is:} \\
f'(x) &= \left( \sqrt{x^3-6x^2+2x} \right)'
= \frac{3x^2-12x+2}{2\sqrt{x^3-6x^2+2x}}.
\end{align*}
\end{exercise}

\begin{exercise}
\begin{equation*}
f(x) = \left(\frac{2+3x}{1-2x}\right)^3
\end{equation*}
\begin{align*}
\text{The derivative is:} \\
f'(x) &= \left( \left(\frac{2+3x}{1-2x}\right)^3 \right)'
= 3 \left(\frac{2+3x}{1-2x}\right)^2 \frac{(1-2x)3-(2+3x)(-2)}{(1-2x)^2}
= \frac{21(2+3x)^2}{(1-2x)^4}.
\end{align*}
\end{exercise}

\begin{exercise}
\begin{equation*}
f(x) = \frac{\cos x}{(\tan 2x)^2}
\end{equation*}
\begin{align*}
\text{The derivative is:} \\
f'(x) &= \left( \frac{\cos x}{(\tan 2x)^2} \right)'
= \frac{(\sin 2x)^2 [(-\sin x)(\cos 2x)^2+(\cos x)4\cos 2x (-\sin 2x)]
- \cos x (\cos 2x)^2 4\sin 2x \cos 2x ((\sin 2x)^2)4}
&= -\frac{\cos(2x) [\sin x \sin 2x \cos 2x+ 4\cos x (\sin 2x)2}
+ 4 \cos x (\cos 2x)^2)4\sin 2x \cos 2x ((\sin 2x)3)}.\end{align*}
\end{exercise}
Exercise 8.1: Compute the derivative of the following function:

\[ f(x) = \sin((\sin x)^2) \]

Solution on page 139

Exercise 8.2: It holds:

\[ \frac{d}{dx} (\ln x) = \frac{1}{x} \]

Exercise 8.3: Compute the derivative of the following function:

\[ f(x) = (\sin(\sin x))^2 \]

Solution on page 139

Exercise 8.4: Compute the derivative of the following function:

\[ f(x) = \sqrt{x^3 - 6x^2 + 2x} \]

Solution on page 139
Exercise 8.5: Compute the derivative of the following function:

\[ f(x) = \left( \frac{2 + 3x}{1 - 2x} \right)^3 \]

Solution on page 140

Exercise 8.6: Compute the derivative of the following function:

\[ f(x) = \frac{\cos x}{(\tan 2x)^2} \]

Solution on page 140

Exercise 8.7: Compute the derivative of the following function:

\[ f(x) = \cos ((2x^2 + 3)^3) \]

Solution on page 140

Exercise 8.8: Compute the derivative of the following function:

\[ f(x) = (x^2 + 1)\sqrt{x^4 + 1} \]

Solution on page 140

8.4 Example: Solutions

This concludes the example given in Section 8.3 on page 136. Now, the saved and recorded solutions are included.

\[ \text{Solution of Exercise 8.1 on page 138:} \]
The derivative is:

\[ f'(x) = \left( \sin((\sin x)^2) \right)' = \cos((\sin x)^2)2\sin x \cos x. \]

\[ \text{Solution of Exercise 8.3 on page 138:} \]
The derivative is:

\[ f'(x) = \left( (\sin x))^2 \right)' = 2\sin x \cos x \cos x. \]

\[ \text{Solution of Exercise 8.4 on page 138:} \]
The derivative is:

\[ f'(x) = \left( \sqrt{x^3 - 6x^2 + 2x} \right)' = \frac{3x^2 - 12x + 2}{2\sqrt{x^3 - 6x^2 + 2x}}. \]
Solution of Exercise 8.5 on page 139:
The derivative is:
\[ f'(x) = \left( \frac{2 + 3x}{1 - 2x} \right)^3 = 3 \left( \frac{2 + 3x}{1 - 2x} \right)^2 \frac{(1 - 2x)^3}{(1 - 2x)^2} = \frac{21(2 + 3x)^2}{(1 - 2x)^4}. \]

Solution of Exercise 8.6 on page 139:
The derivative is:
\[ f'(x) = \cos x \left( \frac{\cos(2x)^2}{\tan 2x} \right) = \frac{\cos x(\cos 2x)^2}{\sin 2x} \]
\[ = \frac{\cos 2x[\cos 2x \cos 2x + \cos x(\cos 2x)^2]}{(\sin 2x)^3} = \frac{-\cos(2x)[\sin x \cos 2x + 4 \cos x(\sin 2x)^2]}{(\sin 2x)^3} \]
\[ = \frac{-\cos(2x)[\sin x \cos 2x + 4 \cos x]}{(\sin 2x)^3}. \]

Solution of Exercise 8.7 on page 139:
The derivative is:
\[ f'(x) = \cos((2x^2 + 3)^3) = -\sin((2x^2 + 3)^3)3(2x^2 + 3)^2 \cdot 2x \]
\[ = -12x(2x^2 + 3)^2 \sin((2x^2 + 3)^3). \]

Solution of Exercise 8.8 on page 139:
The derivative is:
\[ f'(x) = \left( (x^2 + 1)\sqrt{x^4 + 1} \right)' = 2x \sqrt{x^4 + 1} + \frac{2x^3(x^2 + 1)}{\sqrt{x^4 + 1}}. \]
This section provides a technical overview of the skin concept of \texttt{tcolorbox}. For most applications of \texttt{tcolorbox}, one will not need to know the bells and whistles described herein. You may proceed to Section 10 on page 156 where the customization options for most users are documented.

The following explanations also cover options and settings from the \texttt{\tt skins} library, see Section 10 on page 156.

\section{Skins and Drawing Engines}

From a technical point of view, a \textit{skin} is a style definition for the appearance of a \texttt{tcolorbox}. The core package provides some additional option keys for skins but only two skins called \texttt{standard}\textsuperscript{P.215} and \texttt{standard jigsaw}\textsuperscript{P.216}. The \texttt{\tt skins} library adds several more skins. To change to a skin, only one option from the core package has to be set.

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset{colback=Salmon!50!white,colframe=FireBrick!75!black, width=(\linewidth-8\textwidth)/2,before=,after=\hfill,equal height group=ske}

\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=My title]
This is my content.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[beamer,adjusted title=My title]
This is my content.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{itemize}
\item \texttt{/tcb/skin=\texttt{\langle name\rangle}} (style, no default, initially \texttt{standard})
\end{itemize}

Sets the current skin to \texttt{\langle name\rangle}. This is a style definition which sets all the following keys, i.e. for many use cases there is nothing more to do.

\begin{verbatim}
\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=My title]
This is my content.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[beamer,adjusted title=My title]
This is my content.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{itemize}
\item \texttt{/tcb/skin first=\texttt{\langle name\rangle}} (style, no default, initially \texttt{standard})
\end{itemize}

If the box is set to be \texttt{/tcb/breakable}\textsuperscript{P.389} and is broken actually, then the skin for the \textit{first} part of the break sequence is set to \texttt{\langle name\rangle}, see Subsection 19.8 on page 403. Typically, this key is set by a \texttt{/tcb/skin}.

\begin{itemize}
\item \texttt{/tcb/skin middle=\texttt{\langle name\rangle}} (style, no default, initially \texttt{standard})
\end{itemize}

If the box is set to be \texttt{/tcb/breakable}\textsuperscript{P.389} and is broken actually, then the skin for the \textit{middle} parts (if any) of the break sequence is set to \texttt{\langle name\rangle}, see Subsection 19.8 on page 403. Typically, this key is set by a \texttt{/tcb/skin}.

\begin{itemize}
\item \texttt{/tcb/skin last=\texttt{\langle name\rangle}} (style, no default, initially \texttt{standard})
\end{itemize}

If the box is set to be \texttt{/tcb/breakable}\textsuperscript{P.389} and is broken actually, then the skin for the \textit{last} part of the break sequence is set to \texttt{\langle name\rangle}, see Subsection 19.8 on page 403. Typically, this key is set by a \texttt{/tcb/skin}.
/tcb/graphical environment=(name) (no default, initially pgfpicture)

Sets the graphical environment for the \tcolorbox to \langle name \rangle. Feasible values are pgfpicture and tikzpicture or environments which inherit from one of these two. This key is set by a /tcb/skin and may seldom be used directly.

The skin of a \tcolorbox is drawn by up to four engines. Afterwards, the text content is drawn which is not part of a skin. The four steps are:

1. The frame of the box, drawn by /tcb/frame engine.
2. The interior of the box. The interior of a box with title is drawn differently from a box without title. /tcb/interior titled engine or /tcb/interior engine is used to draw the interior.
3. The segmentation (line) of the box, if there is a lower part; drawn by /tcb/segmentation engine.
4. The title area of the box, if there is a title and /tcb/title filled is set to true; drawn by /tcb/title engine.

/tcb/frame engine=(name) (no default, initially standard)

Sets the frame drawing engine for a box to \langle name \rangle. Typically, this key is set by a /tcb/skin. Feasible values for \langle name \rangle are:

- standard: the original code from the core package,
- path: a tikz path which is controlled by /tcb/frame style,
- pathjigsaw: a tikz path which is controlled by /tcb/frame style,
- pathfirst: a tikz path which is controlled by /tcb/frame style,
- pathfirstjigsaw: a tikz path which is controlled by /tcb/frame style,
- pathmiddle: a tikz path which is controlled by /tcb/frame style,
- pathmiddlejigsaw: a tikz path which is controlled by /tcb/frame style,
- pathlast: a tikz path which is controlled by /tcb/frame style,
- pathlastjigsaw: a tikz path which is controlled by /tcb/frame style,
- freelance: deprecated.
- spartan: a quite spartan code.
- empty: draw nothing.

/tcb/interior titled engine=(name) (no default, initially standard)

Sets the interior drawing engine for a titled box to \langle name \rangle. Typically, this key is set by a /tcb/skin. Feasible values for \langle name \rangle are:

- standard: the original code from the core package,
- path: a tikz path which is controlled by /tcb/interior style,
- pathfirst: a tikz path which is controlled by /tcb/interior style,
- pathmiddle: a tikz path which is controlled by /tcb/interior style,
- pathlast: a tikz path which is controlled by /tcb/interior style,
- freelance: deprecated.
- spartan: a quite spartan code.
- empty: draw nothing.
/tcb/interior engine={name}  
(no default, initially standard)

Sets the \textit{interior} drawing engine for an untitled box to \texttt{name}. Typically, this key is set by a \texttt{/tcb/skin} \textsuperscript{P.141}. Feasible values for \texttt{name} are:

- \texttt{standard}: the original code from the core package,
- \texttt{path}: a \texttt{tikz} path which is controlled by \texttt{/tcb/interior style} \textsuperscript{P.157},
- \texttt{pathfirst}: a \texttt{tikz} path which is controlled by \texttt{/tcb/interior style} \textsuperscript{P.157},
- \texttt{pathmiddle}: a \texttt{tikz} path which is controlled by \texttt{/tcb/interior style} \textsuperscript{P.157},
- \texttt{pathlast}: a \texttt{tikz} path which is controlled by \texttt{/tcb/interior style} \textsuperscript{P.157},
- \texttt{freelance}: deprecated.
- \texttt{spartan}: a quite spartan code.
- \texttt{empty}: draw nothing.

/tcb/segmentation engine={name}  
(no default, initially standard)

Sets the \textit{segmentation} (line) drawing engine for a box to \texttt{name}. Typically, this key is set by a \texttt{/tcb/skin} \textsuperscript{P.141}. Feasible values for \texttt{name} are:

- \texttt{standard}: the original code from the core package,
- \texttt{path}: a \texttt{tikz} path which is controlled by \texttt{/tcb/segmentation style} \textsuperscript{P.159},
- \texttt{freelance}: deprecated.
- \texttt{spartan}: a quite spartan code.
- \texttt{empty}: draw nothing.

/tcb/title engine={name}  
(no default, initially standard)

Sets the \textit{title area} drawing engine for a titled box to \texttt{name}. Typically, this key is set by a \texttt{/tcb/skin} \textsuperscript{P.141}. Feasible values for \texttt{name} are:

- \texttt{standard}: the original code from the core package,
- \texttt{path}: a \texttt{tikz} path which is controlled by \texttt{/tcb/title style} \textsuperscript{P.159},
- \texttt{pathfirst}: a \texttt{tikz} path which is controlled by \texttt{/tcb/title style} \textsuperscript{P.159},
- \texttt{pathmiddle}: a \texttt{tikz} path which is controlled by \texttt{/tcb/title style} \textsuperscript{P.159},
- \texttt{pathlast}: a \texttt{tikz} path which is controlled by \texttt{/tcb/title style} \textsuperscript{P.159},
- \texttt{freelance}: deprecated.
- \texttt{spartan}: a quite spartan code.
- \texttt{empty}: draw nothing.

\textbf{After an engine is set to an initializing value, the resulting graphical code can be changed using code option keys, see Section 9.2 on page 145.}
/tcb/geometry nodes=true|false (default true, initially false)

If set to true, up to four tikz nodes are defined for a tcolorbox which are named frame, interior, segmentation, and title. These nodes describe the boundaries of the equally named parts of a tcolorbox. They are used by most engines based on TikZ. Typically, this key is set automatically by a /tcb/skin. P.141.

\tcset{colback=Salmon!50!white,colframe=FireBrick!75!black,
\textwidth=(\linewidth-8mm)/2,before=,after=\hfill,equal height group=geon}

\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=The title]
  The upper part. \tcblower The lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,adjusted title=The title,
  frame code={\path[draw=red,fill=red!25]
    (frame.south west) rectangle (frame.north east);},
  interior titled code={\path[draw=blue,fill=blue!25]
    (interior.south west) rectangle (interior.north east);},
  segmentation code={\path[draw=green,fill=green!25]
    (segmentation.south west) rectangle (segmentation.north east);},
  title code={\path[draw=black,fill=brown!75!black]
    (title.south west) rectangle (title.north east);}]
  The upper part. \tcblower The lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
9.2 Code Option Keys

The following code options are applicable for all skins. The used \textit{graphical code} can be any pgf code. For all skins with exception of standard \textsuperscript{P.215} and standard jigsaw \textsuperscript{P.216}, the \textit{graphical code} can also be any TikZ code.

\texttt{/tcb/frame code=}⟨\textit{graphical code}⟩ (code, default from standard)

The given \textit{graphical code} is used for drawing the \textit{frame} of the box.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{center}
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{center}
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/frame empty} (style, no value)

This is a shortcut for setting \texttt{/tcb/frame code} to empty. This option removes the drawing of the frame. Alternatively, use \texttt{/tcb/frame hidden} \textsuperscript{P.157}.

\texttt{/tcb/interior titled code=}⟨\textit{graphical code}⟩ (code, default from standard)

The given \textit{graphical code} is used for drawing the \textit{interior} of the box, if the box comes with a title.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{center}
My title
\end{center}
\tcblower
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/interior titled empty} (style, no value)

This is a shortcut for setting \texttt{/tcb/interior titled code} to empty. This option removes the drawing of the untitled interior. Alternatively, use \texttt{/tcb/interior hidden} \textsuperscript{P.158}.
/tcb/interior code = (graphical code) (code, default from standard)

The given (graphical code) is used for drawing the interior of the box, if the box is without a title.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,interior code={
  \path[draw=red!5!white,line width=5mm,line cap=round]
  ([xshift=3mm,yshift=-3mm]interior.north west)
  -([xshift=-3mm,yshift=3mm]interior.south east)
  ([xshift=3mm,yshift=3mm]interior.south west)
  -([xshift=-3mm,yshift=-3mm]interior.north east);}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/interior empty (style, no value)

This is a shortcut for setting /tcb/interior code to empty. This option removes the drawing of the interior. Alternatively, use /tcb/interior hidden.\textsuperscript{P.158}

/tcb/segmentation code = (graphical code) (code, default from standard)

The given (graphical code) is used for drawing the segmentation area of the box.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,segmentation code={
  \path[top color=red!5!white,bottom color=red!5!white,middle color=blue]
  (segmentation.south west) rectangle (segmentation.north east);}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/segmentation empty (style, no value)

This is a shortcut for setting /tcb/segmentation code to empty. This option removes the drawing of the segmentation line. Alternatively, use /tcb/segmentation hidden.\textsuperscript{P.159}
The given \textit{graphical code} is used for drawing the \textit{title} area of the box.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced, title=My title, title code={
\path[draw=yellow, solid, decorate, line width=2mm, decoration={coil, aspect=0, segment length=10.1mm}]
([xshift=1mm]title.west) -- ([xshift=-1mm]title.east);}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

\textbf{My title}.

This is a \textit{tcolorbox}.

This is the lower part.

This is a shortcut for setting \texttt{/tcb/title code} to empty. This option removes the drawing of the title area. Alternatively, use \texttt{/tcb/title hidden} \cite{P.160}. 

\textbf{147}
9.3 Subskins

A subskin is a new \texttt{/tcb/skin} \textsuperscript{P.141} based on an existing skin which is extended or changed.

Never use geometry settings or bounding box options inside a subskin definition! If one skin is replaced by another skin, the overall bounding box should stay constant. Especially, if a skin is used for a breakable box, unpredictable and unpleasant results could arise otherwise. If you want to change the geometry also, use an additional style. See the skin \texttt{beamer} \textsuperscript{P.243} and the style \texttt{/tcb/beamer} \textsuperscript{P.243} as pattern.

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbsubskin{⟨name⟩}{⟨base skin⟩}{⟨options⟩}
\end{verbatim}

Creates a new skin \texttt{⟨name⟩} which inherits all properties of an existing \texttt{⟨base skin⟩} plus the given \texttt{⟨options⟩}. The new skin \texttt{⟨name⟩} can be used as value for the keys \texttt{/tcb/skin} \textsuperscript{P.141}, \texttt{/tcb/skin first} \textsuperscript{P.141}, \texttt{/tcb/skin middle} \textsuperscript{P.141}, and \texttt{/tcb/skin last} \textsuperscript{P.141}. As \texttt{⟨base skin⟩}, one can take \texttt{standard} \textsuperscript{P.215}, \texttt{empty} \textsuperscript{P.250}, \texttt{enhanced} \textsuperscript{P.217}, or any skin from the \texttt{skins} library, see Section 10 on page 156.

% \tcbuselibrary{skins}
\tcbsubskin[mycross]{empty}{frame code={
  \draw[red,line width=5pt] (frame.south west)--(frame.north east);
  \draw[red,line width=5pt] (frame.north west)--(frame.south east);
},
  skin first=mycross,skin middle=mycross,skin last=mycross}

This is my content.

/\texttt{tcb/skin first is subskin of}={⟨base skin⟩}{⟨options⟩} \textsuperscript{(no default, initially unset)}

Creates a new unnamed skin which inherits all properties of an existing \texttt{⟨base skin⟩} plus the given \texttt{⟨options⟩}. This skin is set as \texttt{/tcb/skin first} \textsuperscript{P.141}. See a detailed example on page 256.

/\texttt{tcb/skin middle is subskin of}={⟨base skin⟩}{⟨options⟩} \textsuperscript{(no default, initially unset)}

Creates a new unnamed skin which inherits all properties of an existing \texttt{⟨base skin⟩} plus the given \texttt{⟨options⟩}. This skin is set as \texttt{/tcb/skin middle} \textsuperscript{P.141}. See a detailed example on page 256.

/\texttt{tcb/skin last is subskin of}={⟨base skin⟩}{⟨options⟩} \textsuperscript{(no default, initially unset)}

Creates a new unnamed skin which inherits all properties of an existing \texttt{⟨base skin⟩} plus the given \texttt{⟨options⟩}. This skin is set as \texttt{/tcb/skin last} \textsuperscript{P.141}. See a detailed example on page 256.
9.4 Drawing Scheme

Depending on the complexity of a \texttt{tcolorbox} definition, the resulting box is drawn in a more or less complex series of steps.

To document and demonstrate these drawing steps, we consider the following box definition:

\begin{verbatim}
\newtcolorbox{testbox}[1][]{enhanced,title=Test Box, boxrule=1mm,titlerule=0.5mm,colframe=blue!50!black, interior style={top color=blue!20!green!50!white,bottom color=blue!20!yellow!50!white}, colbacktitle=blue!50!green!90!white,segmentation style={solid}, fonttitle=\bfseries,drop fuzzy shadow,borderline={0.3mm}{0.35mm}{yellow!50!white}, underlay={\path[fill image opacity=0.15,fill image scale=0.9, fill stretch picture={\draw[blue,line width=2mm] circle (1);}] (interior.south west) rectangle (interior.north east);}, watermark text={Watermark},watermark color={green!20!white}, finish={\begin{tcbclipframe}
\path[bottom color=black,top color=black!50!white,opacity=0.1]
(frame.south west) -- (frame.south east) -- (frame.north east) -- cycle;
\path[top color=white,bottom color=black!50!white,opacity=0.1]
(frame.south west) -- (frame.north west) -- cycle;
\end{tcbclipframe}},#1}
\end{verbatim}

For this definition, we get the maximal number of drawing steps:

1. **shadow**

2. **frame**

- Section 10.6 on page 190.

- /tcb/colframe P.27, /tcb/opacityframe P.51
- /tcb/frame code P.145
- /tcb/frame style P.156
9.5 Color Names

Color settings for a \texttt{tcolorbox} are saved into named colors which may be used inside a box, e.g. for an overlay. These color names are

- \texttt{tcbcolframe} set by \texttt{/tcb/colframe} \textsuperscript{P.27} (frame color)
- \texttt{tcbcolback} set by \texttt{/tcb/colback} \textsuperscript{P.27} (background color)
- \texttt{tcbcolbacktitle} set by \texttt{/tcb/colbacktitle} \textsuperscript{P.27} (background color of the title)
- \texttt{tcbcolbacklower} set by \texttt{/tcb/colbacklower} \textsuperscript{P.231} (skin dependend background color of the lower part; needs \texttt{skins} to be loaded)
- \texttt{tcbcolupper} set by \texttt{/tcb/colupper} \textsuperscript{P.28} (text color upper part)
- \texttt{tcbcollower} set by \texttt{/tcb/collower} \textsuperscript{P.28} (text color lower part)
- \texttt{tcbcoltitle} set by \texttt{/tcb/coltitle} \textsuperscript{P.28} (text color title)

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Color names, colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!5, colbacktitle=blue!50,colupper=red!35!black]
\foreach \name in {tcbcolframe,tcbcolback,tcbcolbacktitle,tcbcolbacklower, tcbcolupper,tcbcollower,tcbcoltitle}
{\tikz\path[draw,fill=\name](0,0) rectangle node[right=4mm,font=\ttfamily]{\name} (0.8,0.8);\par}
\end{tcolorbox}
9.6 Useful Properties

The following macros describe certain properties which may be used for the drawing scheme, see Section 9.4 on page 149. Sometimes, they are even available inside the box content. All of them are considered to be read-only and should never be redefined by the user.

\texttt{\textbackslash tcbheightspace}

If the height of a \texttt{tcolorbox} is not the natural height, the space difference between the forced and the natural size is hold by \texttt{tcbheightspace}. This macro is not usable inside the box content, but for skins or inside \texttt{/tcb/underlay}^{P.203}, \texttt{/tcb/overlay}^{P.74}, etc. If such a space information is needed inside the box content, see \texttt{/tcb/space to}^{P.59} instead.

\begin{verbatim}
\texttt{\% \tcbuselibrary{skins}}
\newtcolorbox{testbox}[]{enhanced,size=fbox,
colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,height=#2,
underlay={\node[above,inner sep=3pt] at (interior.south){%
\includegraphics[width=\tcbtextwidth,height=\tcbheightspace-3pt]{goldshade.png}}},
#1}
\begin{testbox}{3cm}
This is my box. The space is filled with a picture.
\end{testbox}
\begin{testbox}{2cm}
This is my box. The space is filled with a picture.
\end{testbox}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{\textbackslash tcbtextwidth}

This property describes the box content width.

- If there also is a lower part, it describes the width of the upper part.
- For \texttt{/tcb/sidebyside}^{P.123} boxes, it describes the combined text width plus segmentation.
- This property can be used inside the box content text with exception of \texttt{/tcb/fit}^{P.441} boxes.
- \texttt{tcbtextwidth} can be used for all box types for skins or inside \texttt{/tcb/underlay}^{P.203}, \texttt{/tcb/overlay}^{P.74}, etc.

\begin{verbatim}
\begin{tcolorbox}[colframe=blue!75!black]
Inside a box: \texttt{tcbtextwidth\ (=the\ linewidth)}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{\texttt{\textbackslash cbtextheight}}

This property describes the designated box content height. If the box is larger than the natural height, the actual content will be smaller than \texttt{\textbackslash cbtextheight}.

- For boxes with a fixed \texttt{/tcb/height} \textsuperscript{P.53}, this property can be used inside the box content text. For other boxes, it denotes \texttt{0pt} inside the box content.
- \texttt{\textbackslash cbtextheight} can be used for all box types for skins or inside \texttt{/tcb/underlay} \textsuperscript{P.203}, \texttt{/tcb/overlay} \textsuperscript{P.74}, etc.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\[\texttt{\textbackslash cbtextheight}\]
\end{tcolorbox}

Inside a box with natural height: \texttt{\textbackslash cbtextheight}.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\[\texttt{\textbackslash cbtextheight}\]
\end{tcolorbox}

Inside a box with fixed height: \texttt{\textbackslash cbtextheight}.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\[\texttt{\textbackslash cbtextheight}\]
\end{tcolorbox}

Here: 7.95pt

Here: 8.5359pt

\texttt{\texttt{\textbackslash tcbsegmentstate}}

This macro contains 0, 1, or 2. It is set for every unbroken box and every broken partial box with the following meaning:

- \texttt{0}: The current (partial) box contains only an upper part.
- \texttt{1}: The current (partial) box contains an upper and a lower part. The segmentation node can be used for positioning.
- \texttt{2}: The current (partial) box contains only a lower part. This can only be true for parts of breakable boxes.

Skins like \texttt{bicolor} \textsuperscript{P.229} use this property to paint the (partial) boxes.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\texttt{\textbackslash tcbsegmentstate}
\end{tcolorbox}

Inside a box with natural height: \texttt{0pt}.

Inside a box with fixed height: \texttt{8.5359pt}.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\[\texttt{\textbackslash tcbsegmentstate}\]
\end{tcolorbox}

Here: \texttt{7.95pt}

Here: \texttt{8.5359pt}

\begin{tcolorbox}
\texttt{\textbackslash tcbsegmentstate}
\end{tcolorbox}
The library is loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

\tcbuselibrary{skins}

This also loads the package \texttt{tikz} [22]. Typically but not necessarily, the following skins use \texttt{tikz} instead of \texttt{pgf}.

In the following, general settings and options of the library are documented. The actual catalog of skins is found in Section 11 on page 213.

### 10.1 Style Option Keys

The following style options are applicable for all skins which use engines of type \texttt{path, pathfirst, pathmiddle, or pathlast}. Especially, the skin \texttt{enhanced} \textsuperscript{P.217} supports \textit{all} of them and \texttt{standard} \textsuperscript{P.215} \texttt{none}.

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,fonttitle=\bfseries}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title, frame style={left color=red!75!black, right color=blue!75!black}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{/tcb/frame style=\{tikz keys\}} \texttt{(style, no default)}

The \texttt{\{tikz keys\}} are used inside the \texttt{tikz} path command for drawing the \textit{frame} of the box. This option is available if the \texttt{/tcb/frame engine} \textsuperscript{P.142} is set to \texttt{path, pathfirst, pathmiddle, or pathlast}. It is \textit{not} available for \texttt{standard}.

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,fonttitle=\bfseries}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title, frame style image=blueshade.png]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{/tcb/frame style image=\{file name\}} \texttt{(no default, initially unset)}

Fills the frame with an external image referenced by \texttt{\{file name\}}. For advanced features like blending of a picture with the background, use \texttt{/tcb/frame style} together with \texttt{/tikz/fill stretch image} \textsuperscript{P.270}.
\texttt{/tcb/frame style tile\{\langle graphics options\rangle\}\{\langle file name\rangle\}} (no default, initially unset)

Fills the frame with a tile pattern based on an external image referenced by \{\langle file name\rangle\}. The \{\langle graphics options\rangle\} are given to the underlying \texttt{\includegraphics} command. For advanced features like blending of a picture with the background, use \texttt{/tcb/frame style} \texttt{^P.156} together with \texttt{/tikz/fill tile image} \texttt{^P.274}.

\begin{tcolorbox}
[enhanced,title=My title, frame style tile={width=1cm}{pink_marble.png}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/frame hidden} (style, no value)

This is a shortcut for \texttt{frame style\{draw=none,fill=none\}}. Depending on the skin, this option switches off the drawing of the frame. Alternatively, use \texttt{/tcb/frame empty} \texttt{^P.145}.

\begin{tcolorbox}
[enhanced,title=My title, frame hidden]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/interior style\{\langle tikz keys\rangle\}} (style, no default)

The \{\langle tikz keys\rangle\} are used inside the \texttt{tikz} path command for drawing the interior of the box. They are used for the titled and for the untitled version as well. This option is available if the \texttt{/tcb/interior titled engine} \texttt{^P.142} or \texttt{/tcb/interior engine} \texttt{^P.143} is set to \texttt{path}, \texttt{pathfirst}, \texttt{pathmiddle}, or \texttt{pathlast}. It is not available for standard.

\begin{tcolorbox}
[enhanced,title=My title, interior style={left color=red!20!white, right color=yellow!50!white}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
/tcb/interior style image=⟨file name⟩  
(no default, initially unset)

Fills the interior with an external image referenced by ⟨file name⟩. For advanced features like blending of a picture with the background, use /tcb/interior style together with /tikz/fill stretch image.

\tcbset{colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title, interior style image=goldshade.png]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

\textbf{My title}  
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.  
This is the lower part.

/tcb/interior style tile={⟨graphics options⟩}{⟨file name⟩}  
(no default, initially unset)

Fills the interior with a tile pattern based on an external image referenced by ⟨file name⟩. The ⟨graphics options⟩ are given to the underlying \includegraphics command. For advanced features like blending of a picture with the background, use /tcb/interior style together with /tikz/fill tile image.

\tcbset{colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title, interior style tile={width=2cm}{crinklepaper.png}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

\textbf{My title}  
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.  
This is the lower part.

/tcb/interior hidden  
(style, no value)

This is a shortcut for interior style={draw=none,fill=none}. Depending on the skin, this option switches off the drawing of the interior. Alternatively, use /tcb/interior empty and/or /tcb/interior titled empty.

\tcbset{frame style={top color=red!20!white, bottom color=red!20!white!75!black}, fonttitle=\bfseries,coltitle=black}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title, interior hidden]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

\textbf{My title}  
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.  
This is the lower part.
\texttt{/tcb segmentation style=⟨tikz keys⟩} \hspace{1cm} \text{(style, no default)}

The ⟨tikz keys⟩ are used inside the \texttt{tikz} path command for drawing the \textit{segmentation} line of the box.

This option is available if the \texttt{/tcb segmentation engine} \textsuperscript{P.143} is set to \texttt{path}. It is \textit{not} available for \texttt{standard}.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,  
  fonttitle=\bfseries}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,  
  segmentation style={double=white,draw=blue,  
  double distance=1pt,solid}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb segmentation hidden} \hspace{1cm} \text{(style, no value)}

This is a shortcut for \texttt{segmentation style=⟨draw=none,fill=none⟩}. Depending on the skin, this option switches off the drawing of the segmentation line. See also \texttt{/tcb lower separated} \textsuperscript{P.25} which has the same effect for most skins. Alternatively, use \texttt{/tcb segmentation empty} \textsuperscript{P.146}.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,  
  fonttitle=\bfseries}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,segmentation hidden,  
  title style={left color=blue!15!yellow,  
  right color=red!85!black}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb title style=⟨tikz keys⟩} \hspace{1cm} \text{(style, no default)}

The ⟨tikz keys⟩ are used inside the \texttt{tikz} path command for drawing the \textit{title area} of the box.

This option is available if the \texttt{/tcb title engine} \textsuperscript{P.143} is set to \texttt{path, pathfirst, pathmiddle, or pathlast}. It is \textit{not} available for \texttt{standard}.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,  
  coltitle=blue!50!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,  
  title style={left color=blue!15!yellow,  
  right color=red!85!black}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}
\end{tcolorbox}
/tcb/title style image=(file name) (no default, initially unset)
Fills the title area with an external image referenced by (file name). For advanced features like blending of a picture with the background, use /tcb/title style `P.159` together with /tikz/fill stretch image `P.270`.

```
\tcbset{colback=blue!5!white,colframe=blue!75!black,
  fonttitle=\bfseries}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,
  title style image=blueshade.png]
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
  \tcblower
  This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

My title
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
This is the lower part.

/tcb/title style tile={⟨graphics options⟩}{⟨file name⟩} (no default, initially unset)
Fills the title area with a tile pattern based on an external image referenced by ⟨file name⟩. The ⟨graphics options⟩ are given to the underlying \includegraphics command. For advanced features like blending of a picture with the background, use /tcb/title style `P.159` together with /tikz/fill tile image `P.274`.

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,
  coltitle=blue!50!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,
  title style tile={width=1cm}{pink_marble.png}]
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
  \tcblower
  This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

My title
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
This is the lower part.

/tcb/title hidden (style, no value)
This is a shortcut for title style={draw=none,fill=none}. Depending on the skin, this option switches off the drawing of the title background. See also /tcb/title filled `P.27` for a similar effect. Alternatively, use /tcb/title empty `P.147`.

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,
  fonttitle=\bfseries}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title,
  enhanced,title hidden]
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
  \tcblower
  This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

My title
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
This is the lower part.
The (tikz keys) are used to draw a title rule, i.e. a rule below the optional title. The width of the rule is controlled by /tcb/titlerule \[P.36\]. It may be set directly to a smaller width to create mixed effects with the standard rule. This option is implemented as an /tcb/underlay \[P.203\]. Thus, it is not available for standard \[P.215\] and standard jigsaw \[P.216\], but for all other skins, e.g. enhanced \[P.217\]. As an underlay, this option can be used multiple times and is removed by /tcb/no underlay \[P.203\].

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced, colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black, colbacktitle=red!50!yellow,fonttitle=\bfseries, title=My title, titlerule=1mm, titlerule style=yellow ] This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced, colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black, colbacktitle=red!50!yellow,fonttitle=\bfseries, title=My title, titlerule=1mm, titlerule style={yellow,line width=0.5mm} ] This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced, colback=red!10!white,colframe=red!75!black, colbacktitle=red!50!yellow,fonttitle=\bfseries, frame hidden, boxrule=0pt,titlerule=1mm, titlerule style=red!50!black ] This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[empty, coltitle=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries, borderline horizontal={0.5mm}{0pt}(red!50!white), title=My title, titlerule style={red, arrows = {Hooks[arc=270]-Hooks[arc=270]}} ] This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
The combined TiKZ style applied to frame, interior, and title background can be used by authors to customize code.

/tikz/tcb fill frame (style, no value)
This is a TiKZ style which is finally applied to the frame of the box.

/tikz/tcb fill interior (style, no value)
This is a TiKZ style which is finally applied to the interior of the box.

/tikz/tcb fill title (style, no value)
This is a TiKZ style which is finally applied to the title area of the box.
10.2 Boxed Title Option Keys

10.2.1 Boxed Title Placement

The following options place the title text into an own \texttt{\texttt{tcbbox}}. This boxed title can be customized independently from the main box using \texttt{tcbboxed title style}. The placement can be influenced by \texttt{\texttt{\texttt{\{boxtitle options\}}}}.

\texttt{/tcb/attach boxed title to top left={\texttt{\{boxtitle options\}}}} (style, default empty)

The title is boxed with a \texttt{\texttt{tcbbox}} and attached to the top left corner of the main box.

\begin{tcolorbox} [enhanced,title=My title, attach boxed title to top left]
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/attach boxed title to top center={\texttt{\{boxtitle options\}}}} (style, default empty)

The title is boxed with a \texttt{\texttt{tcbbox}} and attached to the top of the main box.

\begin{tcolorbox} [enhanced,title=My title, attach boxed title to top center]
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/attach boxed title to top right={\texttt{\{boxtitle options\}}}} (style, default empty)

The title is boxed with a \texttt{\texttt{tcbbox}} and attached to the top right corner of the main box.

\begin{tcolorbox} [enhanced,title=My title, attach boxed title to top right]
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/attach boxed title to bottom left={\texttt{\{boxtitle options\}}}} (style, default empty)

The title is boxed with a \texttt{\texttt{tcbbox}} and attached to the bottom left corner of the main box.

\begin{tcolorbox} [enhanced,title=My title, attach boxed title to bottom left]
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/attach boxed title to bottom center={\texttt{\{boxtitle options\}}}} (style, default empty)

The title is boxed with a \texttt{\texttt{tcbbox}} and attached to the bottom of the main box.

\begin{tcolorbox} [enhanced,title=My title, attach boxed title to bottom center]
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/attach boxed title to bottom right={\texttt{\{boxtitle options\}}}} (style, default empty)

The title is boxed with a \texttt{\texttt{tcbbox}} and attached to the bottom right corner of the main box.

\begin{tcolorbox} [enhanced,title=My title, attach boxed title to bottom right]
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
This is a convenient style to mimic a standard title. It uses `/tcb/attach boxed title to top center`\(^{P.163}\), `/tcb/minipage boxed title`\(^{P.171}\), and sizes the boxed title to match the base box.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,
attach boxed title to top,
boxed title style={colframe=red}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

My title
This is a tcolorbox.

In contrast to `/tcb/attach boxed title to top`, this style uses smaller left and right rules to avoid previewer glitches. Typically, one would not use different colors for the frame as in the example below.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,
attach boxed title to top*,
boxed title style={colframe=red}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

My title
This is a tcolorbox.

This is a convenient style to produce a standard-like title at the bottom of the box. It uses `/tcb/attach boxed title to bottom center`\(^{P.163}\), `/tcb/minipage boxed title`\(^{P.171}\), and sizes the boxed title to match the base box.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,
attach boxed title to bottom,
boxed title style={colframe=red}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a tcolorbox.

In contrast to `/tcb/attach boxed title to top`, this style uses smaller left and right rules to avoid previewer glitches.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,
attach boxed title to bottom*]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a tcolorbox.

This style combines `/tcb/attach boxed title to bottom*` with `/tcb/boxed title style`\(^{P.167}\). The `/tcb/boxed title style`\(^{P.167}\) are given to `/tcb/boxed title style`\(^{P.167}\).

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[title,flip title={sharp corners},
title=My title,colback=red!10, colbacktitle=red!75!black]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a tcolorbox.
10.2.2 Options for the Boxed Title Placement

The ⟨boxtitle options⟩ of the keys described above are shift values. The dimensions of the boxed title are stored into two macros \tcboxedtitleheight and \tcboxedtitlewidth. These macros can be used inside the following ⟨boxtitle options⟩:

\begin{tcolorbox}
[enhanced,title=My title, attach boxed title to top left={xshift=-2mm}, boxed title style={size=small,colback=blue}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

My title
This is a tcolorbox.

The boxed title is shifted by ⟨length⟩ in the horizontal direction.

\begin{verbatim}
\begin{tcolorbox}
[enhanced,title=My title, attach boxed title to top left={xshift=-2mm}, boxed title style={size=small,colback=blue}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{tcolorbox}
[enhanced,title=My title, attach boxed title to top center={yshift=-\tcboxedtitleheight/2}, boxed title style={size=small,colback=blue}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

My title
This is a tcolorbox.

The boxed title is shifted by ⟨length⟩ in the vertical direction.

\begin{verbatim}
\begin{tcolorbox}
[enhanced,title=My title, attach boxed title to top center={yshift=-\tcboxedtitleheight/2}, boxed title style={size=small,colback=blue}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{tcolorbox}
[enhanced,title=My title, attach boxed title to top center={yshift=-3mm,yshifttext=-1mm}, boxed title style={size=small,colback=blue}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

My title
This is a tcolorbox.

The text inside the main box is shifted by ⟨length⟩ to give room for e.g. a sunken title.

\begin{verbatim}
\begin{tcolorbox}
[enhanced,title=My title, attach boxed title to top center={yshift=-3mm,yshifttext=-1mm}, boxed title style={size=small,colback=blue}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{tcolorbox}
[enhanced,title=My title, attach boxed title to top center={yshift*-=-3mm}, boxed title style={size=small,colback=blue}, show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

My title
This is a tcolorbox.

Sets /tcb/boxtitle/yshift and /tcb/boxtitle/yshifttext the same time. /tcb/boxtitle/yshifttext is only set if necessary.

The bounding box of the resulting total tcolorbox is adapted automatically to the vertical dimensions of the boxed title. Possible horizontal enlargements are not automatically computed.

\begin{tcolorbox}
[enhanced,title=My title, attach boxed title to top left={xshift=-2mm,yshift=-2mm}, boxed title style={size=small,colback=blue}, show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

My title
This is a tcolorbox.
10.2.3 Options for the Boxed Title Box

The boxed title options are implemented as an underlay, see Section 10.8 on page 203. Therefore, a boxed title is not drawn, if a skin does not support underlays like standard\textsuperscript{P.215}. Still, the room for the boxed titles gets reserved in these cases.

A TikZ node \texttt{title} is produced by a boxed title which can be used inside /tcb/frame code\textsuperscript{P.145}, /tcb/interior code\textsuperscript{P.146}, underlays, overlays, and finishes.

A boxed title is almost always the first underlay. The only exceptions are underlays defined by /tcb/underlay boxed title\textsuperscript{P.204} which are drawn before. Additionally, underlays defined by /tcb/underlay boxed title\textsuperscript{P.204} are only drawn, if a boxed title is actually set. They are ignored, if there is no boxed title.

\texttt{/tcb/boxed title size=(size)} (no default, initially \texttt{title})

This setting defines the basic size for the title box. Further settings can be applied using \texttt{/tcb/boxed title style}\textsuperscript{P.167}. Feasible values for \texttt{(size)} are:

- \texttt{title}: Sets the size according to \texttt{/tcb/size=normal}.
- \texttt{standard}: No size setting. Typically, this is identical to \texttt{/tcb/size=normal}.
- \texttt{copy}: The size values for a title of the base box are copied for the title box.

\begin{tcbrc}
\begin{tcbraster}
\begin{tcolorbox}[boxed title size=title]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[boxed title size=standard]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[boxed title size=copy]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcbraster}
\end{tcbrc}
By default, a boxed title is dimensioned with `/tcb/size` and inherits the `/tcb/skin` and `/tcb/colframe` of the main box. Also, the `/tcb/colback` is inherited from the main `/tcb/colbacktitle`. Font and color of the title text are set as usual. All other options are set by the `/tcb/boxed title style` key. Since a boxed title is set by \texttt{\texttt{\texttt{tcbox}}}, all \texttt{tcolorbox} options are applicable here. If `/tcb/boxed title style` is used several times, the \langle\texttt{options}\rangle are appended.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title, fonttitle=\bfseries,coltitle=green!25!black, attach boxed title to top center= {yshift=-2mm,yshifttext=-1mm}, boxed title style={colframe=green!75!black, colback=yellow!50!green}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title, colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white, arc=1mm,colbacktitle=red!10!white, fonttitle=\bfseries,coltitle=red!50!black, attach boxed title to top left= {xshift=3.2mm,yshift=-0.50mm}, boxed title style={skin=enhancedfirst jigsaw, size=small,arc=1mm,bottom=-1mm, interior style={fill=none, top color=red!30!white, bottom color=red!20!white}}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title, colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!10!white,colbacktitle=blue!5!yellow!10!white, fonttitle=\bfseries,coltitle=black,attach boxed title to top center= {yshift=-0.25mm-\texttt{tcbboxedtitleheight}/2,yshifttext=2mm-\texttt{tcbboxedtitleheight}/2}, boxed title style={boxrule=0.5mm, frame code={ \path[\texttt{tcb fill frame}] ([xshift=-4mm]frame.west) -- (frame.north west) -- ([xshift=4mm]frame.east) -- (frame.north east) -- ([xshift=4mm]frame.east) -- (frame.south east) -- cycle; }, interior code={ \path[\texttt{tcb fill interior}] ([xshift=-2mm]interior.west) -- (interior.north west) -- (interior.north east) -- (interior.south east) -- (interior.north west) -- cycle; }]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}


The title text content is captured with a horizontal box. Especially, there are no linebreak possible.

\begin{mybox}{Short title}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}{This title is not really very short}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}

The title text content is captured with a minipage with a width of \langle length \rangle. By default, the resulting boxed title is somewhat smaller than the main box.

\begin{mybox}{Short title}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}{This title is not really very short}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}

The title text content is captured with a minipage with a width of main box width plus \langle length \rangle. By default, the resulting boxed title is somewhat smaller than the main box.

\begin{mybox}{Short title}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}{This title is not really very short}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}
The title text content is captured with a TikZ node with given TikZ \textit{options}. The text is centered by default.

\begin{mybox}{Short title}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}{This title is not really very short}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}

The title text content is captured with a \texttt{varwidth} environment with a width of \textit{length}. This style needs the \texttt{varwidth} package \cite{varwidth} to be loaded manually. By default, the resulting boxed title is somewhat smaller than the main box.

\begin{mybox}{Short title}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}{This title is not really very short}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}

The title text content is captured with a \texttt{varwidth} environment with a width of main box width plus \textit{length}. This style needs the \texttt{varwidth} package \cite{varwidth} to be loaded manually. By default, the resulting boxed title is somewhat smaller than the main box.

\begin{mybox}{Short title}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}{This title is not really very short}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}
10.3 Watermark Option Keys

The following watermark options are applicable for all skins which use \texttt{tikzpicture} as /tcb/graphical environment\footnote{P.142}. Therefore, the skin standard\footnote{P.215} does not support these watermarks, but all other skins, e.g. enhanced\footnote{P.217}.

The watermark options rely on the more general overlay options described in Section 4.12 from page 74. Therefore, watermarks and overlays cannot be used mixed. But a mixture is possible with the \texttt{lib} hooks library, see Section 23.

\textbf{/tcb/watermark text=\langle text\rangle} \hspace{1cm} \text{(no default, initially unset)}

This \texttt{/tcb/watermark} \texttt{text} writes some \texttt{\langle text\rangle} in the center of the interior region of a \texttt{tcolorbox}. This \texttt{\langle text\rangle} is written \textit{after} the frame and interior are drawn and \textit{before} the text content is drawn. It is zoomed or stretched according the values of \texttt{/tcb/watermark zoom}\footnote{P.176} or \texttt{/tcb/watermark stretch}\footnote{P.178}.

\begin{verbatim}
\tbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,watermark text=My Watermark]
\lipsum[1]
\tcblower
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}

\textbf{/tcb/watermark text on=(\emph{part}) is (text)} \hspace{1cm} \text{(no default, initially unset)}

This option writes some \texttt{\langle text\rangle} in the center of the interior region of a \texttt{tcolorbox} as described for \texttt{/tcb/watermark text}. But this is done only for boxes named \texttt{\langle part\rangle} of a break sequence, see \texttt{/tcb/breakable}\footnote{P.389}.

Feasible values for \texttt{\langle part\rangle} are:

- \texttt{broken}: all broken box parts,
- \texttt{unbroken}: unbroken boxes only,
- \texttt{first}: first parts of a break sequence,
- \texttt{middle}: middle parts of a break sequence,
- \texttt{last}: last parts of a break sequence,
- \texttt{unbroken and first}: unbroken boxes and first parts of a break sequence,
- \texttt{middle and last}: middle and last parts of a break sequence,
- \texttt{first and middle}: first and middle parts of a break sequence.
/tcb/watermark graphics=(file name)  
(no default, initially unset)

Draws an external picture referenced by \(\texttt{file name}\) in the center of the interior region of a tcolorbox. The picture is drawn after the frame and interior are drawn and before the text content is drawn. It is zoomed or stretched according the values of \(/tcb/watermark zoom\) \(^{\text{P.176}}\) or \(/tcb/watermark stretch\) \(^{\text{P.178}}\).

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,watermark graphics=Basilica_5.png,watermark opacity=0.15]
\lipsum[1-2]
\tcblower
This example uses a public domain picture from\http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Basilica_5.png\end{tcolorbox}

My title


\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,watermark graphics=Basilica_5.png,watermark opacity=0.15]
\lipsum[1-2]
\tcblower
This example uses a public domain picture from\http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Basilica_5.png\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/watermark graphics on=(part) is (file name)  
(no default, initially unset)

This option draws a picture referenced by \(\texttt{file name}\) in the center of the interior region of a tcolorbox as described for \(/tcb/watermark graphics\). But this is done only for boxes named \(\texttt{part}\) of a break sequence, see \(/tcb/breakable\) \(^{\text{P.389}}\).

Feasible values for \(\texttt{part}\) are:
- \texttt{broken}: all broken box parts,
- \texttt{unbroken}: unbroken boxes only,
- \texttt{first}: first parts of a break sequence,
- \texttt{middle}: middle parts of a break sequence,
- \texttt{last}: last parts of a break sequence,
- \texttt{unbroken and first}: unbroken boxes and first parts of a break sequence,
- \texttt{middle and last}: middle and last parts of a break sequence.
Draws the given \texttt{tikz} \textit{(graphical code)} in the center of the interior region of a \texttt{tcolorbox}. The code is executed \textit{after} the frame and interior are drawn and \textit{before} the text content is drawn. The result is zoomed or stretched according the values of \texttt{/tcb/watermark zoom} \textsuperscript{P.176} or \texttt{/tcb/watermark stretch} \textsuperscript{P.178}.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\[enhanced,title=My title,\]
\begin{tcboxenv}[watermark tikz={\draw[line width=2mm] circle (1cm) node{\fontfamily{ptm}\fontseries{b}\fontsize{20mm}{20mm}\selectfont ?};}]
\lipsum[1]
\lclosetotheleft[1]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcboxenv}
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/watermark tikz on=\textlangle part\rangle is \textlangle graphical code\rangle} \textit{(no default, initially unset)}

This option draws the given \texttt{tikz} \textit{(graphical code)} in the center of the interior region of a \texttt{tcolorbox} as described for \texttt{/tcb/watermark tikz}. But this is done only for boxes named \textlangle part\rangle of a break sequence, see \texttt{/tcb/breakable} \textsuperscript{P.389}.

Feasible values for \textlangle part\rangle are:
\begin{itemize}
  \item \texttt{broken}: all broken box parts,
  \item \texttt{unbroken}: unbroken boxes only,
  \item \texttt{first}: first parts of a break sequence,
  \item \texttt{middle}: middle parts of a break sequence,
  \item \texttt{last}: last parts of a break sequence,
  \item \texttt{unbroken and first}: unbroken boxes and first parts of a break sequence,
  \item \texttt{middle and last}: middle and last parts of a break sequence.
\end{itemize}

\texttt{/tcb/no watermark} \textit{(style, no default, initially set)}

Removes the watermark if set before. This is an alias for \texttt{/tcb/no overlay} \textsuperscript{P.75}.
Sets the opacity value $\in [0,1]$ for a watermark.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{tabular}{|p{0.4\linewidth}|p{0.4\linewidth}|}
\hline
\textbf{Opacity 1.00} & \textbf{Opacity 0.50} \\
\hline
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{tcolorbox}

Sets the zoom value for a watermark. The zoom respects the aspect ratio. The value 1.0 means to fill the whole box until the watermark touches the frame.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{tabular}{|p{0.4\linewidth}|p{0.4\linewidth}|}
\hline
\textbf{Zoom 1.0} & \textbf{Zoom 0.5} \\
\hline
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{tcolorbox}
Identically to `/tcb/watermark zoom`\(^{P.176}\), but the watermark never gets enlarged. Thus, the watermark keeps its original size or is shrunk.

Sets the overzoom value for a watermark. The overzoom respects the aspect ratio. The value 1.0 means to fill the whole box until the watermark touches all four sides of the frame.

If a `/tcb/watermark overzoom` value of 1.0 is used in connection with invisible top and bottom rules which still have a thickness greater than \texttt{\texttt{Opt}}\texttt{}, the space of these invisible rules may not be covered by the watermark. For example, this situation may occur during the breaking of `/tcb/enhanced`\(^{P.217}\) boxes. To avoid this optical glitch, just set `/tcb/pad at break`\(^{P.394}\) to any desired value.
Sets the stretch value for a watermark. The stretch value is applied to width and height in relation to the box dimensions. It does not respect the aspect ratio. The value 1.0 means to fill the whole box.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Stretch 1.00,watermark stretch=1.00]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}
```

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Stretch 0.50,watermark stretch=0.50]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}
```

```
\tcbset{enhanced,colback=white,colframe=blue!50!black,fonttitle=\bfseries, watermark graphics=lichtspiel.jpg,watermark opacity=0.5, nobeforeafter,width=(\linewidth-2mm)/2}
```

```
\begin{tcolorbox}
\lipsum[1]
\end{tcolorbox}
```

Sets the color for the watermark.

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,watermark text=My Watermark, watermark color=yellow!50!red]
\lipsum[1]
\end{tcolorbox}
```

Sets the watermark to be clipped to the interior area.

```
\tcbset{enhanced,colback=white,colframe=blue!50!white,fonttitle=\bfseries,
watermark opacity=0.5,watermark stretch=1.00,arc=3mm,
watermark graphics=lichtspiel.jpg}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Clip (default),clip watermark]
\lipsum[1]
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=No clip,clip watermark=false]
\lipsum[1]
\end{tcolorbox}
```

Clip (default)


No clip

10.4 Clip Environments

The following clip environments are applicable for all skins which use engines of type path, pathfirst, pathmiddle, or pathlast. Especially, the skin enhanced\(^{P.217}\) supports all of them and standard\(^{P.215}\) none. The typical area of application is inside overlay code, see Section 4.12 from page 74.

\begin{tcbclipframe}
\langle environment content \rangle
\end{tcbclipframe}

Defines a Tikz scope which clips to the frame area path.

\begin{picturebox}[title=My Picture Box]{lichtspiel.jpg}
\lipsum[1]
\end{picturebox}

My Picture Box

\begin{tcbinvclipframe}
\begin{environment}{content}
\end{environment}
\end{tcbinvclipframe}

Defines a TikZ scope which clips to the outside of the frame area path.

```latex
\tcbset{enhanced jigsaw,fonttitle=\bfseries,opacityback=0.35,colback=blue!5!white, frame style={left color=red!75!black,right color=red!10!yellow}}

\begin{tikzpicture}
% draw two balls
\path [use as bounding box] (0,0.8) rectangle +(0.1,0.1);
\shadedraw [shading=ball] (0,0) circle (1cm);
\shadedraw [ball color=red] (3,-2.2) circle (1cm);
\end{tikzpicture}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=A translucent box, overlay={\begin{tcbinvclipframe}
\draw[red,line width=1cm] ([xshift=-2mm,yshift=2mm]frame.north west) --([xshift=2mm,yshift=-2mm]frame.south east);
\draw[red,line width=1cm] ([xshift=-2mm,yshift=-2mm]frame.south west) --([xshift=2mm,yshift=2mm]frame.north east);
\end{tcbinvclipframe}}]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}
```

A translucent box

\begin{tcbclipinterior}
\textit{environment content}
\end{tcbclipinterior}

Defines a Tikz scope which clips to the interior area path.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My Title, overlay={
\begin{tcbclipinterior}
\draw[red,line width=1cm] (interior.north west)--(interior.south east);
\draw[red,line width=1cm] (interior.south west)--(interior.north east);
\end{tcbclipinterior}}]
\lipsum[1]
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcbcliptitle}
\textit{environment content}
\end{tcbcliptitle}

Defines a Tikz scope which clips to the title area path.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My Title,colframe=blue,colback=yellow!10!white, overlay={
\begin{tcbcliptitle}
\node at (title) {\includegraphics[width=\linewidth]{lichtspiel.jpg}};
\end{tcbcliptitle}}]
\lipsum[1]
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/clip title=true|false  (default true, initially false)
Sets the title to be clipped to the title area.

\tcbset{enhanced,width=5cm,colframe=red!50!white,coltitle=black,colbacktitle=yellow!50!white}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=\mbox{This is a title which is unbreakable and far too long}]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=\mbox{This is a title which is unbreakable and far too long},clip title]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a title which is unbreakable and far too long
This is a tcolorbox.
This is a title which is unbreakable and far too long
This is a tcolorbox.

/tcb/clip upper=true|false  (default true, initially false)
Sets the upper part to be clipped to the interior area.

\newcommand{\mygraphics}[2][]{
\tcbox[enhanced,boxsep=0pt,top=0pt,bottom=0pt,left=0pt,right=0pt,boxrule=0.4pt,drop fuzzy shadow,clip upper,colback=black!75!white,toptitle=2pt,bottomtitle=2pt,nobeforeafter,center title,fonttitle=\small\sffamily,title=\detokenize{#2}}{\includegraphics[width=\the\dimexpr(\linewidth-4mm)/2\relax]{#2}}}
\mygraphics{lichtspiel.jpg}\hfill
\mygraphics{Basilica_5.png}
The example for `/tcb/clip_upper` sizes the box according to the dimensions of the picture. To do it the other way around, the watermark options provide an easy solution.

\newcommand{\mygraphics}[2]{% 
\tcbox[enhanced,capture=minipage,boxsep=0pt,top=0pt,bottom=0pt,left=0pt,right=0pt,boxrule=0.4pt,drop fuzzy shadow,nobeforeafter,colback=black!75!white,\toptitle=2pt,\bottomtitle=2pt,center title,fonttitle=\small\sffamily,title=\detokenize{#2},width=7\linewidth/2,height=6cm,colbacktitle={black},watermark zoom=1.0,watermark graphics={#2}]{} %}
\mygraphics{lichtspiel.jpg}\hspace{0.5cm}\mygraphics{Basilica_5.png}

\texttt{/tcb/clip lower=true|false} (default true, initially false)

Sets the lower part to be clipped to the interior area.

\begin{tcblisting}{clip lower}
Donau-dampf\-schiff\-fahrts\-ka\-pi\-t"ans\-m"ut\-zen\-fran\-sen
\end{tcblisting}
10.5 Border Line Option Keys

The following borderline options are applicable for most skins which use `tikzpicture` as `/tcb/graphical environment` \[P.142\]. Therefore, the skin `standard` \[P.215\] does not support these border lines, but most other skins, e.g. `enhanced` \[P.217\].

The borderlines are independent from the normal `tcolorbox` rules. They may be used with or without the `/tcb/segmentation engine` \[P.143\].

The borderlines are stackable, i.e. several different border lines can be used on the same `tcolorbox`. They are drawn after the box frame and box interior and before overlays or watermarks.

\[/tcb/borderline={⟨width⟩}{⟨offset⟩}{⟨options⟩} \]

(no default, initially unset)

Adds a new borderline to the stack of border lines. This border line is drawn with the given ⟨width⟩ and gets an ⟨offset⟩ computed from the frame outline. A positive ⟨offset⟩ value moves the borderline inside the `tcolorbox` and a negative ⟨offset⟩ value moves it outside without changing the bounding box.

The border line is drawn along a TikZ path with the given TikZ ⟨options⟩. Note that the TikZ line width option should not be used here.

The border lines adapt to the rounded corners of the `tcolorbox`. An inside borderline will switch to sharp corners if necessary, an outside borderline will always be rounded except for `/tcb/sharp corners` \[P.48\].

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=Rounded corners,fonttitle=\bfseries,boxsep=5pt, 
arc=8pt, 
borderline={0.5pt}{0pt}{red}, 
borderline={0.5pt}{5pt}{blue,dotted}, 
borderline={0.5pt}{-5pt}{green} ] 
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=Sharp corners,fonttitle=\bfseries,boxsep=5pt, 
arc=8pt,sharp corners=downhill, 
borderline={0.5pt}{0pt}{red}, 
borderline={0.5pt}{5pt}{blue,dotted}, 
borderline={0.5pt}{-5pt}{green} ] 
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}


My title


/tcb/no borderline

(no default, initially set)
Removes all borderlines if set before.

/tcb/show bounding box=(color)

(default red, initially unset)
Displays the bounding box borderline of a tcolorbox. Its intended use is debugging and fine tuning. It should not be part of a final document. The optional (color) is the base color for the bounding box borderline.

\tcbset{enhanced,nobeforeafter,width=4cm,fonttitle=\bfseries}

\begin{tcolorbox}{show bounding box,title=Normal}
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}{show bounding box=blue,title=Shadow,drop fuzzy shadow}
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}{show bounding box=green,title=Enlarged,drop fuzzy shadow, enlarge by=2mm}
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
The following partial borderlines act slightly different from the complete borderlines described before. They ignore rounded corner settings, their length is not modified by their ⟨offset⟩, they ignore skin settings but adapt to breakable boxes.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced, borderline north={2pt}{-2pt}{red}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a tcolorbox.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced, borderline south={2pt}{-2pt}{red}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a tcolorbox.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced, borderline east={2pt}{-2pt}{red}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a tcolorbox.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced, borderline west={2pt}{-2pt}{red}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a tcolorbox.
/tcb/borderline horizontal={⟨width⟩}{⟨offset⟩}{⟨options⟩} (no default, initially unset)

Adds a new borderline with the given ⟨width⟩ to the north and south of the tcolorbox. A positive ⟨offset⟩ value moves the borderlines inside the tcolorbox and a negative ⟨offset⟩ value moves them outside without changing the bounding box.

\begin{tcolorbox}[blanker,top=3mm,bottom=3mm,
    borderline horizontal={2pt}{0pt}{red}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a tcolorbox.

/tcb/borderline vertical={⟨width⟩}{⟨offset⟩}{⟨options⟩} (no default, initially unset)

Adds a new borderline with the given ⟨width⟩ to the east and west of the tcolorbox. A positive ⟨offset⟩ value moves the borderlines inside the tcolorbox and a negative ⟨offset⟩ value moves them outside without changing the bounding box.

\begin{tcolorbox}[blanker,left=3mm,right=3mm,
    borderline vertical={2pt}{0pt}{red}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
My second line.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a tcolorbox.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,colback=yellow!10!white,boxrule=0pt,frame hidden,
    borderline north={1mm}{-2mm}{red},
    borderline south={1mm}{-2mm}{blue},
    borderline west={1mm}{-2mm}{green},
    borderline east={1mm}{-2mm}{yellow}]
\lipsum[1]
\end{tcolorbox}

10.6 Shadow Option Keys

The following shadow options are applicable for most skins which use \texttt{tikzpicture} as \texttt{/tcb/graphical environment}. Therefore, the skin \texttt{standard} \cite{Skin:standard} does not support these shadows, but most other skins, e.g. \texttt{enhanced}. The shadows are stackable, i.e. several different shadows can be used on the same \texttt{tcolorbox}. They are drawn before the box frame is drawn.

/\texttt{tcb}/no shadow \hspace{1cm} (no default)

Removes all shadows if set before.

10.6.1 Common Shadows and Halos

/\texttt{tcb}/drop shadow=$\langle color\rangle$ \hspace{1cm} (style, default black!50!white)

Adds a new shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows. Optionally, the \langle color\rangle for the shadow can be changed.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\texttt{\tcbset\{enhanced,colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries\}}
\begin{tcolorbox}[drop shadow]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}

/\texttt{tcb}/drop fuzzy shadow=$\langle color\rangle$ \hspace{1cm} (style, default black!50!white)

Adds a new fuzzy shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows. Optionally, the \langle color\rangle for the shadow can be changed.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\texttt{\tcbset\{enhanced,colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries\}}
\begin{tcolorbox}[drop fuzzy shadow=blue]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}

/\texttt{tcb}/drop midday shadow=$\langle color\rangle$ \hspace{1cm} (style, default black!50!white)

Adds a new shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows. Optionally, the \langle color\rangle for the shadow can be changed.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\texttt{\tcbset\{enhanced,colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries\}}
\begin{tcolorbox}[drop midday shadow=blue]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}
/tcb/drop fuzzy midday shadow=⟨color⟩ (style, default black!50!white)
Adds a new fuzzy shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows. Optionally, the ⟨color⟩ for the shadow can be changed.

```latex
\tcbset{enhanced,colback=red!5!white,
colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}

\begin{tcolorbox}[drop fuzzy midday shadow]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

/tcb/halo=⟨size⟩ with ⟨color⟩ (style, default 0.9mm with yellow)
Adds a new halo shadow with the given ⟨color⟩ which overlaps the colorbox an all sides by ⟨size⟩.

```latex
\tcbset{enhanced,colback=red!5!white,
colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My own halo,halo]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

/tcb/fuzzy halo=⟨size⟩ with ⟨color⟩ (style, default 0.9mm with yellow)
Adds a new fuzzy halo shadow with the given ⟨color⟩ which overlaps the colorbox an all sides by ⟨size⟩ plus 0.48mm.

```latex
\tcbset{enhanced,colback=red!5!white,
colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My own halo,fuzzy halo]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

For all following shadows, the optionally given \texttt{⟨color⟩} for the shadow can be changed equivalent to the preceding examples.

\texttt{/tcb/drop shadow southeast\texttt{⟨color⟩}} \hspace{1cm} \text{(style, default \texttt{black!50!white})}

Adds a new shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows. This shadow is identical to \texttt{/tcb/drop shadow} \textsuperscript{P.190}.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{Verbatim}
drop shadow southeast, enhanced,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{Verbatim}
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/drop shadow south\texttt{⟨color⟩}} \hspace{1cm} \text{(style, default \texttt{black!50!white})}

Adds a new shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows. This shadow is identical to \texttt{/tcb/drop midday shadow} \textsuperscript{P.190}.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{Verbatim}
drop shadow south, enhanced,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{Verbatim}
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/drop shadow southwest\texttt{⟨color⟩}} \hspace{1cm} \text{(style, default \texttt{black!50!white})}

Adds a new shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{Verbatim}
drop shadow southwest, enhanced,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{Verbatim}
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/drop shadow west\texttt{⟨color⟩}} \hspace{1cm} \text{(style, default \texttt{black!50!white})}

Adds a new shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{Verbatim}
drop shadow west, enhanced,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{Verbatim}
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/drop shadow northwest\texttt{⟨color⟩}} \hspace{1cm} \text{(style, default \texttt{black!50!white})}

Adds a new shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{Verbatim}
drop shadow northwest, enhanced,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{Verbatim}
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/drop shadow north\texttt{⟨color⟩}} \hspace{1cm} \text{(style, default \texttt{black!50!white})}

Adds a new shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{Verbatim}
drop shadow north, enhanced,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{Verbatim}
\end{tcolorbox}
/tcb/drop shadow northeast=(color) (style, default black!50!white)
Adds a new shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows.

\begin{tcolorbox}[drop shadow northeast,
  enhanced,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]
  This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/drop shadow east=(color) (style, default black!50!white)
Adds a new shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows.

\begin{tcolorbox}[drop shadow east,
  enhanced,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]
  This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/drop fuzzy shadow southeast=(color) (style, default black!50!white)
Adds a new fuzzy shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows. This shadow is identical to /tcb/drop fuzzy shadow.

\begin{tcolorbox}[drop fuzzy shadow southeast,
  enhanced,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]
  This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/drop fuzzy shadow south=(color) (style, default black!50!white)
Adds a new fuzzy shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows. This shadow is identical to /tcb/drop fuzzy midday shadow.

\begin{tcolorbox}[drop fuzzy shadow south,
  enhanced,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]
  This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/drop fuzzy shadow southwest=(color) (style, default black!50!white)
Adds a new fuzzy shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows.

\begin{tcolorbox}[drop fuzzy shadow southwest,
  enhanced,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]
  This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/drop fuzzy shadow west=(color) (style, default black!50!white)
Adds a new fuzzy shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows.

\begin{tcolorbox}[drop fuzzy shadow west,
  enhanced,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]
  This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
/tcb/drop fuzzy shadow northwest = \texttt{(color)}  (style, default \texttt{black!50!white})

Adds a new fuzzy shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows.

\begin{tcolorbox}[drop fuzzy shadow northwest, enhanced, colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/drop fuzzy shadow north = \texttt{(color)}  (style, default \texttt{black!50!white})

Adds a new fuzzy shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows.

\begin{tcolorbox}[drop fuzzy shadow north, enhanced, colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/drop fuzzy shadow northeast = \texttt{(color)}  (style, default \texttt{black!50!white})

Adds a new fuzzy shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows.

\begin{tcolorbox}[drop fuzzy shadow northeast, enhanced, colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/drop fuzzy shadow east = \texttt{(color)}  (style, default \texttt{black!50!white})

Adds a new fuzzy shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows.

\begin{tcolorbox}[drop fuzzy shadow east, enhanced, colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
10.6.2 Lifted Shadows

\tcb/drop lifted shadow\(=\langle\text{color}\rangle\) (style, default black!50!white)

Adds a new lifted shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows. Optionally, the \(\langle\text{color}\rangle\) for the shadow can be changed.

\begin{tcolorbox}[drop lifted shadow]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

Another shadow

This is a tcolorbox.

/tcb/drop small lifted shadow\(=\langle\text{color}\rangle\) (style, default black!50!white)

Adds a new small lifted shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows. Optionally, the \(\langle\text{color}\rangle\) for the shadow can be changed.

\begin{tcolorbox}[drop small lifted shadow=size=fbox]
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Another shadow, drop lifted shadow=blue]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}

Another shadow

This is a tcolorbox.

/tcb/drop large lifted shadow\(=\langle\text{color}\rangle\) (style, default black!50!white)

Adds a new large lifted shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows. Optionally, the \(\langle\text{color}\rangle\) for the shadow can be changed.

\begin{tcolorbox}[drop large lifted shadow]
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Another shadow, drop lifted shadow=blue]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}

Another shadow

This is a tcolorbox.
10.6.3 Generic Shadows

`tcb/shadow`\{⟨xshift⟩\}{⟨yshift⟩}\{⟨offset⟩}\{⟨options⟩\} (no default)

Adds a new shadow to the stack of shadows. This shadow follows the outline of the tcolorbox but is shifted by ⟨xshift⟩ and ⟨yshift⟩. The ⟨offset⟩ value is a distance value from the frame outline. A positive ⟨offset⟩ value shrinks the shadow and a negative ⟨offset⟩ value enlarges the shadow. The shadow is filled along a TikZ path with the given TikZ ⟨options⟩.

The shadows adapt to the rounded corners of the tcolorbox. An shrinked shadow will switch to sharp corners if necessary, an enlarged shadow may become more rounded depending on several factors. But /tcb/sharp corners^P.48 have sharp shadows.

Shadows are not considered for the bounding box computation by default. Large shadows may be overlaped by the following content. But, the bounding box can be adapted if necessary.

```
\tcbset{enhanced,colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My own shadow, shadow={2mm}{-1mm}{0mm}{black!50!white}]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\par
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Another shadow, shadow={-1mm}{-2mm}{0mm}{fill=blue, opacity=0.5}]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\par
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Double shadow, shadow={-1.5mm}{-1.5mm}{0mm}{fill=blue, opacity=0.25}, shadow={1.5mm}{-1.5mm}{0mm}{fill=red, opacity=0.25}]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\par
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Far shadow, shadow={5.5mm}{-3.5mm}{2mm}{fill=black, opacity=0.25}]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\par
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Halo shadow, shadow={0mm}{0mm}{-1.5mm}{fill=yellow!75!red,opacity=0.5}]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```
Adds a new fuzzy shadow to the stack of shadows. Actually, this option adds several shadows which appear like a shadow with a fuzzy border. This fuzzy shadow follows the outline of the \texttt{tcolorbox} but is shifted by \langle xshift \rangle and \langle yshift \rangle. The \langle offset \rangle value is a distance value from the frame outline. A positive \langle offset \rangle value shrinks the shadow and a negative \langle offset \rangle value enlarges the shadow. The \{\langle step \rangle\} value describes a shrink offset used for the combination of the partial shadows. The shadow is filled along a Ti\kZ path with the given Ti\kZ \langle options \rangle but any opacity value will be ignored.
If set to `true`, the shadow drawing algorithm tries to do a somewhat smart calculation of the arc for the shadow. The result is pleasing for typical boxes with rounded corners, but gives strange results for circular boxes.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[drop shadow]
Smart shadow arc (arguably better than normal)
\end{tcolorbox}
```

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[smart shadow arc=false, drop shadow]
Normal shadow arc
\end{tcolorbox}
```

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[circular arc, drop shadow]
Smart shadow arc (worse than normal)
\end{tcolorbox}
```

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[circular arc, smart shadow arc=false, drop shadow]
Normal shadow arc
\end{tcolorbox}
```

/\texttt{tcb/lifted shadow=\{\langle xshift\rangle\{\langle yshift\rangle\{\langle bend\rangle\{\langle step\rangle\{\langle options\rangle\}

(no default)

Adds a new lifted shadow to the stack of shadows. Actually, this option adds several shadows which appear like a shadow with a fuzzy border. This lifted shadow follows the outline of the \texttt{tcolorbox} but is shifted by \langle xshift\rangle and \langle yshift\rangle on the lower left corner and by −\langle xshift\rangle and \langle yshift\rangle on the lower right corner. Additionally, there is a \langle bend\rangle in the middle. The \{\langle step\rangle\} value describes a shrink offset used for the combination of the partial shadows. The shadow is filled along a Ti\texttt{k}Z path with the given Ti\texttt{k}Z \langle options\rangle but any \texttt{opacity} value will be ignored.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My own shadow, lifted shadow={1mm}{-2mm}{3mm}{0.1mm}]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```
10.6.4 TikZ Shadows

Alternativ to the package shadow options described before, shadows from the «Shadows Library» of TikZ can be used. Such shadows can be added directly to the frame path using `/tcb/frame style`.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced, colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, frame style={drop shadow}]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced, height=3cm, colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, halign=center, valign=center, frame style={circular drop shadow}]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced, width=2.5cm, square, circular arc, halign=center, valign=center, colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, frame style={circular glow={fill=red}}]
tcolorbox
\end{tcolorbox}
10.7 TikZ Picture Option Keys

The following general options are applicable for skins which use \texttt{tikzpicture} as \	exttt{/tcb/graphical environment} \cite{tcb:options}. Therefore, the skin \texttt{standard} \cite{tcb:options} does not support these options, but most other skins, e.g. \texttt{enhanced} \cite{tcb:options}.

\texttt{/tcb/tikz=\{tikz option list\}} (no default, initially empty)

Adds the given \texttt{\{tikz option list\}} to the main \texttt{tikzpicture} environment used to draw the color box, see \cite{tcb:options}. If this option is applied a second time, the new \texttt{\{tikz option list\}} is appended to the current option list.

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset{enhanced,colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Transparent box, tikz={opacity=0.5,transparency group}]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{/tcb/tikz reset} (initially set)

Removes all options given by \texttt{/tcb/tikz}.

\texttt{/tcb/at begin tikz=\{tikz code\}} (no default, initially empty)

The given \texttt{\{tikz code\}} is executed at the beginning of the \texttt{tikzpicture} environment after the Ti\textsc{k}Z option \texttt{execute at begin picture} was applied. If this option is applied a second time, the new \texttt{\{tikz code\}} is appended to the current code.

\texttt{/tcb/at begin tikz reset} (initially set)

Removes all code given by \texttt{/tcb/at begin tikz}.

\texttt{/tcb/at end tikz=\{tikz code\}} (no default, initially empty)

The given \texttt{\{tikz code\}} is executed at the ending of the \texttt{tikzpicture} environment before the Ti\textsc{k}Z option \texttt{execute at end picture} was applied. If this option is applied a second time, the new \texttt{\{tikz code\}} is appended to the current code.

\texttt{/tcb/at end tikz reset} (initially set)

Removes all code given by \texttt{/tcb/at end tikz}.  

200
/tcb/rotate=⟨angle⟩

(no default, initially unset)
Rotates the tcolorbox by the given ⟨angle⟩. Note that this is a TikZ coordinate transformation i.e. not all graphical elements like shadings will really be rotated.

```
\tcbox[title=Rotated box,rotate=30]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

/tcb/scale=⟨fraction⟩

(no default, initially unset)
Scales the tcolorbox by the given ⟨fraction⟩. Note that this is a TikZ coordinate transformation i.e. not all graphical elements like line widths will really be scaled.

```
\tcbox[title=Scaled box,scale=0.5]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\tcbox[title=Scaled box,scale=1.25]
This is a tcolorbox.
```

/tcb/remember

(style, initially unset)
Shortcut for tikz={remember picture}. This allows one to reference nodes in other TikZ pictures.

```
\tcbox[enhanced,remember,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,title=The four corners of a paper,overlay={\draw[red!50!white,line width=1mm,opacity=0.5,shorten >=3mm] (frame.north west) edge[->] (current page.north west) (frame.north east) edge[->] (current page.north east) (frame.south west) edge[->] (current page.south west) (frame.south east) edge[->] (current page.south east);}]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```
The `frame` node will be remembered by the given `<name>` to be referenced in other TikZ pictures.

```latex
\begin{mybox}[title=First Box,nobeforeafter,width=\linewidth/4,remember as=one]
This is a test.
\end{mybox}
\hfill
\begin{mybox}[title=Second Box,nobeforeafter,width=\linewidth/4,remember as=two]
This is a test.
\end{mybox}
\hfill
\begin{mybox}[title=Third Box,nobeforeafter,width=\linewidth/4,remember as=three]
This is a test.
\end{mybox}
\hfill
\begin{mybox}[title=Fourth Box,remember as=four]
This is a test.
\end{mybox}

\begin{tikzpicture}[overlay,remember picture,line width=1mm,draw=red!75!black]
\draw[->] (one.east) to[bend right] node[above] {A} (two.west);
\draw[->] (two.east) to[bend left] node[above] {B} (three.west);
\draw[->] (three.east) to[bend left=90] node[right] {C} (four.east);
\draw[->] (four.west) to[bend left=90] node[left] {D} (one.west);
\end{tikzpicture}
```

Underlay Option Keys

Underlays are quite similar to overlays described in Section 4.12 on page 74. Underlays are drawn after the frame and interior are drawn and before overlays and the text content is drawn; see Section 9.4 on page 149 for the general drawing scheme.

The differences between underlays and overlays are:

- Underlays are not applicable for the skins standard, standard_jigsaw, whereas overlays are applicable also for these skins. The skin spartan supports underlays but no overlays.

  If an underlay is used with the standard skin, it is silently ignored.

- Underlays are stackable, i.e. several different underlays can be used on the same \textcolorbox. Overlays are not stackable by default (but with some help of the library hooks).

- Boxed titles are implemented with underlays (Section 10.2 on page 163), watermarks are implemented with overlays (Section 10.3 on page 173).

\begin{tcbitemize}
\item \texttt{/tcb/underlay=⟨graphical code⟩} (no default, initially unset)
  Adds \langle graphical code \rangle to the box drawing process. This \langle graphical code \rangle is drawn after the frame and interior and before the text content.

  \begin{verbatim}
  \newtcolorbox{mybox}[1][]{enhanced,colback=red!5!white,
  colbacktitle=red!85!black!50!white,
  colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,watermark color=yellow!50!white,
  underlay={\begin{tcbclipinterior}
  \draw[red!40!white,line width=1cm] (interior.south west)--(interior.north east);
  \end{tcbclipinterior}},
  attach boxed title to top center={yshift=-2mm},#1}
  \begin{mybox}[title=My box,watermark text=My Watermark]
  \lipsum[2]
  \end{mybox}
  \end{verbatim}

\end{tcbitemize}

\begin{tcbitemize}
\item \texttt{/tcb/no underlay} (style, no default, initially set)
  Removes the underlay if set before.

\end{tcbitemize}
/tcb/underlay broken=⟨graphical code⟩ (no default, initially unset)

If the box is set to be /tcb/breakable and is broken actually, then the ⟨graphical code⟩ is added to the box drawing process. /tcb/underlay overwrites this key.

/tcb/underlay unbroken=⟨graphical code⟩ (no default, initially unset)

If the box is set to be /tcb/breakable but is not broken actually or if the box is set to be /tcb/unbreakable, then the ⟨graphical code⟩ is added to the box drawing process. /tcb/underlay overwrites this key.

/tcb/no underlay unbroken (style, no default, initially set)

Removes the unbroken underlay if set before.

/tcb/underlay first=⟨graphical code⟩ (no default, initially unset)

If the box is set to be /tcb/breakable and is broken actually, then the ⟨graphical code⟩ is added to the box drawing process for the first part of the break sequence. /tcb/underlay overwrites this key.

/tcb/no underlay first (style, no default, initially set)

Removes the first underlay if set before.

/tcb/underlay middle=⟨graphical code⟩ (no default, initially unset)

If the box is set to be /tcb/breakable and is broken actually, then the ⟨graphical code⟩ is added to the box drawing process for the middle parts (if any) of the break sequence. /tcb/underlay overwrites this key.

/tcb/no underlay middle (style, no default, initially set)

Removes the middle underlay if set before.

/tcb/underlay last=⟨graphical code⟩ (no default, initially unset)

If the box is set to be /tcb/breakable and is broken actually, then the ⟨graphical code⟩ is added to the box drawing process for the last part of the break sequence. /tcb/underlay overwrites this key.

/tcb/no underlay last (style, no default, initially set)

Removes the last underlay if set before.

/tcb/underlay boxed title=⟨graphical code⟩ (no default, initially unset)

If the box has a boxed title, see Section 10.2 on page 163, then the ⟨graphical code⟩ is added to the box drawing process before the boxed title is drawn.

/tcb/no underlay boxed title (style, no default, initially set)

Removes the boxed title underlay if set before.

/tcb/underlay unbroken and first=⟨graphical code⟩ (no default, initially unset)

This is an abbreviation for setting /tcb/underlay unbroken and /tcb/underlay first together. /tcb/underlay overwrites this key.

/tcb/underlay middle and last=⟨graphical code⟩ (no default, initially unset)

This is an abbreviation for setting /tcb/underlay middle and /tcb/underlay last together. /tcb/underlay overwrites this key.

/tcb/underlay unbroken and last=⟨graphical code⟩ (no default, initially unset)

This is an abbreviation for setting /tcb/underlay unbroken and /tcb/underlay last together. /tcb/underlay overwrites this key.

/tcb/underlay first and middle=⟨graphical code⟩ (no default, initially unset)

This is an abbreviation for setting /tcb/underlay first and /tcb/underlay middle together. /tcb/underlay overwrites this key.
10.9 Finish Option Keys

Finishes are quite similar to underlays described in Section 10.8 on page 203 and overlays described in Section 4.12 on page 74. Finishes are drawn after the text content is drawn; see Section 9.4 on page 149 for the general drawing scheme. Therefore, a finish will reduce the readability of the text content.

Finishes are intended for special effects like highlights or glosses or text over text.

- Finishes are only applicable for the skins enhanced\textsuperscript{P.217}, empty\textsuperscript{P.250}, freelance\textsuperscript{P.263}, bicolor\textsuperscript{P.229}, beamer\textsuperscript{P.243}, and widget\textsuperscript{P.247}.

  ![If a finish is used with the standard\textsuperscript{P.215} skin, it is silently ignored.

- Finishes are stackable, i.e. several different finishes can be used on the same \texttt{tcolorbox}.

\texttt{/tcb/finish=⟨graphical code⟩} (no default, initially unset)

Adds ⟨graphical code⟩ to the box drawing process. This ⟨graphical code⟩ is drawn after the text content.

\begin{mybox}[title=My box]
\lipsum[2]
\end{mybox}

\begin{mybox}[title=My box]
\lipsum[2]
\end{mybox}
/tcb/no finish  (style, no default, initially set)
Removes the finish if set before.

/tcb/finish broken=(graphical code)  (no default, initially unset)
If the box is set to be /tcb/breakable \(^{\text{P.389}}\) and is broken actually, then the \((\text{graphical code})\) is added to the box drawing process. /tcb/finish \(^{\text{P.205}}\) overwrites this key.

/tcb/finish unbroken=(graphical code)  (no default, initially unset)
If the box is set to be /tcb/breakable \(^{\text{P.389}}\) but is not broken actually or if the box is set to be /tcb/unbreakable \(^{\text{P.390}}\), then the \((\text{graphical code})\) is added to the box drawing process. /tcb/finish \(^{\text{P.205}}\) overwrites this key.

/tcb/no finish unbroken  (style, no default, initially set)
Removes the unbroken finish if set before.

/tcb/finish first=(graphical code)  (no default, initially unset)
If the box is set to be /tcb/breakable \(^{\text{P.389}}\) and is broken actually, then the \((\text{graphical code})\) is added to the box drawing process for the first part of the break sequence. /tcb/finish \(^{\text{P.205}}\) overwrites this key.

/tcb/no finish first  (style, no default, initially set)
Removes the first finish if set before.

/tcb/finish middle=(graphical code)  (no default, initially unset)
If the box is set to be /tcb/breakable \(^{\text{P.389}}\) and is broken actually, then the \((\text{graphical code})\) is added to the box drawing process for the middle parts (if any) of the break sequence. /tcb/finish \(^{\text{P.205}}\) overwrites this key.

/tcb/no finish middle  (style, no default, initially set)
Removes the middle finish if set before.

/tcb/finish last=(graphical code)  (no default, initially unset)
If the box is set to be /tcb/breakable \(^{\text{P.389}}\) and is broken actually, then the \((\text{graphical code})\) is added to the box drawing process for the last part of the break sequence. /tcb/finish \(^{\text{P.205}}\) overwrites this key.

/tcb/no finish last  (style, no default, initially set)
Removes the last finish if set before.

/tcb/finish unbroken and first=(graphical code)  (no default, initially unset)
This is an abbreviation for setting /tcb/finish unbroken and /tcb/finish first together. /tcb/finish \(^{\text{P.205}}\) overwrites this key.

/tcb/finish middle and last=(graphical code)  (no default, initially unset)
This is an abbreviation for setting /tcb/finish middle and /tcb/finish last together. /tcb/finish \(^{\text{P.205}}\) overwrites this key.

/tcb/finish unbroken and last=(graphical code)  (no default, initially unset)
This is an abbreviation for setting /tcb/finish unbroken and /tcb/finish last together. /tcb/finish \(^{\text{P.205}}\) overwrites this key.

/tcb/finish first and middle=(graphical code)  (no default, initially unset)
This is an abbreviation for setting /tcb/finish first and /tcb/finish middle together. /tcb/finish \(^{\text{P.205}}\) overwrites this key.
10.10 Hyper Option Keys

All options of this section need the package \texttt{hyperref} \cite{hyperref} to be loaded separately. All these options are implemented as /tcb/finish \textsuperscript{P.205} and can be disabled by /tcb/no finish \textsuperscript{P.206}.

If the package \texttt{hyperref} \cite{hyperref} is not loaded or if the \texttt{standard} \textsuperscript{P.215} skin is used, all hyper option are silently ignored.

\begin{itemize}
\item /tcb/hyperref=\langle marker\rangle \quad \text{(no default, initially unset)}
\end{itemize}

The whole frame of a \texttt{tcolorbox} is make an active hyperlink for a \langle marker\rangle which was given by \texttt{\label} or /tcb/label \textsuperscript{P.104} or /tcb/phantomlabel \textsuperscript{P.104}. Such, the \texttt{tcolorbox} is made a clickable button (depending on the previewer).

\begin{itemize}
\item /tcb/hyperref interior=\langle marker\rangle \quad \text{(no default, initially unset)}
\end{itemize}

Identical to /tcb/hyperref, but only the interior of a \texttt{tcolorbox} is made a hyperlink (without frame and title).

\begin{itemize}
\item /tcb/hyperref title=\langle marker\rangle \quad \text{(no default, initially unset)}
\end{itemize}

Identical to /tcb/hyperref, but only the title of a \texttt{tcolorbox} is made a hyperlink.

\begin{itemize}
\item /tcb/hyperref node=\langle \langle marker\rangle\{\langle node\rangle\}\rangle \quad \text{(no default, initially unset)}
\end{itemize}

Identical to /tcb/hyperref, but only the given Ti\texttt{K}Z \langle node\rangle is made a hyperlink. This \langle node\rangle may be \texttt{frame}, \texttt{interior}, \texttt{title}, or any other named node used for drawing the \texttt{tcolorbox}. The \langle node\rangle may be defined inside /tcb/underlay \textsuperscript{P.203}, /tcb/overlay \textsuperscript{P.74} or /tcb/finish \textsuperscript{P.205}. If the later is used, define the node before /tcb/hyperref node is applied.

\begin{itemize}
\item /tcb/hyperlink=\langle marker\rangle \quad \text{(no default, initially unset)}
\end{itemize}

The whole frame of a \texttt{tcolorbox} is make an active hyperlink for a \langle marker\rangle which was given by \texttt{\hypertarget} or /tcb/hypertarget \textsuperscript{P.106}. Such, the \texttt{tcolorbox} is made a clickable button (depending on the previewer).
Identical to /tcb/hyperlink \(^*\text{P.207}\), but only the \textit{interior} of a \texttt{tcolorbox} is made a hyperlink (without frame and title).

Identical to /tcb/hyperlink \(^*\text{P.207}\), but only the \textit{title} of a \texttt{tcolorbox} is made a hyperlink.

Identical to /tcb/hyperlink \(^*\text{P.207}\), but only the given \texttt{tcolorbox} \texttt{(node)} is made a hyperlink. This \texttt{(node)} may be \texttt{frame}, \texttt{interior}, \texttt{title}, or any other named node used for drawing the \texttt{tcolorbox}. The \texttt{(node)} may be defined inside /tcb/underlay \(^*\text{P.203}\), /tcb/overlay \(^*\text{P.74}\) or /tcb/finish \(^*\text{P.205}\). If the later is used, define the node \texttt{before} /tcb/hyperlink node is applied.

The whole \texttt{frame} of a \texttt{tcolorbox} is make an active hyperlink for an \texttt{(url)} in the same manner as using \texttt{\href} or \texttt{\url}. Such, the \texttt{tcolorbox} is made a clickable button (depending on the previewer).

Identical to /tcb/hyperurl \(^*\text{P.207}\), but additional \texttt{hyperref} \texttt{[15]} \texttt{(options)} are applied.

Identical to /tcb/hyperurl \(^*\text{P.207}\), but additional \texttt{hyperref} \texttt{[15]} \texttt{(options)} are applied.

Identical to /tcb/hyperurl \(^*\text{P.207}\), but additional \texttt{hyperref} \texttt{[15]} \texttt{(options)} are applied.
10.11 Jigsaw Skin Variants

As described in Section 9.1 on page 141, a `tcolorbox` is drawn by up to four engines. Typically, the `frame` engine fills the complete box area with color and the other engines fill certain areas with other colors. Finally, only the area which you see as `frame` of the box will display the frame color. For most applications, this is a good approach.

For certain boxes, a more delicate procedure is needed. E.g., if the box should be translucent, an already painted area cannot be made unpainted. Therefore, more elaborate frame engines saw holes into the frame where the interior area and optionally the title area will be painted. The resulting skins are called jigsaw skins. For standard, enhanced, and bicolor, there are variants called standard jigsaw, enhanced jigsaw, and bicolor jigsaw.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[use as bounding box] (0,0.8) rectangle +(0.1,0.1);
\shadedraw [shading=ball] (0,0) circle (1cm);
\shadedraw [ball color=red] (3,-2.2) circle (1cm);
\end{tikzpicture}

\tcbset{enhanced,colback=blue!5!white,
frame style={left color=red!75!black,right color=red!10!yellow},
fonttitle=\bfseries}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=A normal box]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=A translucent jigsaw box,
enhanced jigsaw,opacityback=0.35]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=A normal box]

Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo.
Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accum-
san bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl
penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla
ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.

\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=A translucent jigsaw box,
enhanced jigsaw,opacityback=0.35]

Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo.
Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accum-
san bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi. Morbi ac orci et nisl
penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla
ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.

\end{tcolorbox}
10.12 Draft Mode

To reduce the compilation time while drafting a document, the *draft mode* can be applied. Basically, it changes all skins to *spartan*[^260] and sets the */tcb/fit algorithm*[^447] to *squeeze*. Especially, when fuzzy shadows are used, the speedup will be considerable high.

It is strongly recommended that the draft mode is *not* used for the final document. Use *spartan*[^260] directly, if you want to stay with it. The draft mode implementation may change in future.

Normally, switching to the draft mode should not alter the geometry of your document. Since overlays are deactivated, any code placed there (e.g. counter changes) is not executed anymore! Also, */tcb/remember as*[^202] will not have any effect. You may exclude critical code with */tcbinterruptdraftmode / \tcbcontinuedraftmode* from converting to draft mode.

\tcbstartdraftmode

Any following *tcolorbox* code is put into *draft mode*. All skin settings are overruled with *spartan*[^260]. Overlays, watermarks, shadows, borderlines, and rounded corners are deactivated for all *tcolorbox* layers.

\tcbstopdraftmode

The *draft mode* is deactivated for the following code.

\tcbinterruptdraftmode

If the compilation is in *draft mode*, the *draft mode* is deactivated until a following */tcbcontinuedraftmode* is detected. If the compilation is not in *draft mode*, nothing happens and a following */tcbcontinuedraftmode* will not start the *draft mode*.

The pair */tcbinterruptdraftmode* and */tcbcontinuedraftmode* cannot be used nested.

\tcbcontinuedraftmode

Continues the *draft mode* which was suspended by a preceding */tcbinterruptdraftmode*. Nothing happens, if there was no draft mode before */tcbinterruptdraftmode*.

Code, which is placed between */tcbinterruptdraftmode* and */tcbcontinuedraftmode* is shielded from *draft mode*. 

[^202]: Page 430
[^260]: Page 260
If set to `true`, the `draft mode` is started. If set to `false`, the `draft mode` is stopped.

\begin{mybeamer}{Beamer box}
This box looks like a box provided by the \texttt{beamer} class.
\end{mybeamer}

\begin{mybeamer}[draftmode]{Beamer box}
This box looks like a box provided by the \texttt{beamer} class.
\end{mybeamer}
The \texttt{skins} library provides a catalog of skins to choose from which is documented in the following. The \texttt{skins} library has to be loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbuselibrary{skins}
\end{verbatim}

See Section 10 on page 156 for the documentation of all other options of the \texttt{skins} library.

- In principle, a skin is applied by choosing a value for \texttt{/tcb/skin}, e.g. \texttt{enhanced}. Since the parts of a breakable box should look different, there are individual skins for breakable boxes, also see Section 19.8 on page 403. Skins for breakable boxes derived from a base skin are called a skin family in the following.

- Instead of setting values for \texttt{/tcb/skin}, equally named options can be used which are shortcuts and which sometimes also change some geometry or style settings. These are the intended options for normal users. Typically, one of the following options is sufficient to select a skin:

  - \texttt{/tcb/standard} \textsuperscript{P.215}
  - \texttt{/tcb/standard jigsaw} \textsuperscript{P.216}
  - \texttt{/tcb/enhanced} \textsuperscript{P.217}
  - \texttt{/tcb/enhanced jigsaw} \textsuperscript{P.223}
  - \texttt{/tcb/enhanced standard} \textsuperscript{P.219}
  - \texttt{/tcb/enhanced standard jigsaw} \textsuperscript{P.223}
  - \texttt{/tcb/bicolor} \textsuperscript{P.230}
  - \texttt{/tcb/tile} \textsuperscript{P.239}
  - \texttt{/tcb/beamer} \textsuperscript{P.243}
  - \texttt{/tcb/widget} \textsuperscript{P.247}
  - \texttt{/tcb/empty} \textsuperscript{P.250}
  - \texttt{/tcb/spartan} \textsuperscript{P.260}
  - \texttt{/tcb/draft} \textsuperscript{P.261}

Additionally, there are some special applications:

  - \texttt{/tcb/marker} \textsuperscript{P.225}
  - \texttt{/tcb/blank} \textsuperscript{P.219}
  - \texttt{/tcb/blanker} \textsuperscript{P.251}
  - \texttt{/tcb/blankest} \textsuperscript{P.252}
The auxiliary macro \texttt{\textbackslash skinExampleSet} is used for the following examples to display skin applications. Note that \texttt{\textbackslash skinExampleSet} is not part of the package, but is defined just for this documentation.

\begin{verbatim}
\NewDocumentCommand{\skinExampleSet}{m}{% 
  \begin{tcbraster}[raster equal height,raster columns=3, 
  colback=LightGreen,colframe=DarkGreen,colbacktitle=LimeGreen!75!DarkGreen, 
  #1, 
  left=1mm,right=1mm,top=1mm,bottom=1mm,middle=1mm, 
  sidebyside gap=4mm]
  \begin{tcolorbox}
  This is my content.
  \end{tcolorbox}
  \begin{tcolorbox}
  This is my content. 
  \tcblower
  More content.
  \end{tcolorbox}
  \begin{tcolorbox}[sidebyside]
  My content.
  \tcblower
  More content.
  \end{tcolorbox}
  \begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=My title]
  This is my content.
  \end{tcolorbox}
  \begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=My title]
  This is my content.
  \tcblower
  More content.
  \end{tcolorbox}
  \begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=My title,sidebyside]
  My content.
  \tcblower
  More content.
  \end{tcolorbox}
  \begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=My title,sidebyside]
  My content.
  \tcblower
  More content.
  \end{tcolorbox}
  \end{tcbraster}
\end{verbatim}
11.1 Skin Family “standard”

Note that the option keys /tcb/frame style \(\text{P.} 156\), /tcb/interior style \(\text{P.} 157\), /tcb/segmentation style \(\text{P.} 159\), and /tcb/title style \(\text{P.} 159\) are not applicable to the standard skin. Also, watermarks (see Subsection 10.3) are not usable with the standard skin.

\[\text{/tcb/skin=standard} \quad \text{(skin)}\]

This is the standard skin from the core package. All drawing engines are set to type standard. The drawing is based on \text{pgf} commands and does not need the \text{tikz} package.

**Environment and engines for the skin “standard”**

- /tcb/graphical environment \(\text{P.} 142\): \text{pgfpicture}
- /tcb/frame engine \(\text{P.} 142\): \text{standard}
- /tcb/interior titled engine \(\text{P.} 142\): \text{standard}
- /tcb/interior engine \(\text{P.} 143\): \text{standard}
- /tcb/segmentation engine \(\text{P.} 143\): \text{standard}
- /tcb/title engine \(\text{P.} 143\): \text{standard}

\[\text{/tcb/standard} \quad \text{(style, no value)}\]

This is an abbreviation for setting skin=standard.

\[\text{\textbackslash skinExampleSet\{standard\}}\]

This is my content. This is my content. My content. More content.

My title

This is my content. This is my content. My content. More content.

More content.
This is the standard jigsaw skin from the core package. It differs from the skin `standard` by its frame engine, see Section 10.11 on page 209.

### Environment and engines for the skin “standard jigsaw”

- `/tcb/graphical environment`: `pgfpicture`
- `/tcb/frame engine`: `standardjigsaw`
- `/tcb/interior titled engine`: `standard`
- `/tcb/interior engine`: `standard`
- `/tcb/segmentation engine`: `standard`
- `/tcb/title engine`: `standard`

This is an abbreviation for setting `skin=standard jigsaw`.

```latex
{standard jigsaw, opacityframe=0.5, opacityback=0.5, opacitybacktitle=0.5, }
```

This is my content. More content. This is my content. More content. My title.

11.2 Skin Family “enhanced”

If you like the standard appearance of a tcolorbox but you want to have some “enhanced” features, the enhanced skin is what you are looking for.

/tcb/skin=enhanced  

This skin translates the drawing commands of the core package into tikz path commands. Therefore, it allows all tikz high level options for these paths and has more flexibility compared to the standard skin. You pay for this with some prolonged compilation time. The tikz path options can be given with the option keys /tcb/frame style, /tcb/interior style, /tcb/segmentation style, and /tcb/title style.

Environment and engines for the skin “enhanced”

/tcb/graphical environment: tikzpicture
/tcb/frame engine: path
/tcb/interior titled engine: path
/tcb/interior engine: path
/tcb/segmentation engine: path
/tcb/title engine: path

/tcb/enhanced  

This is an abbreviation for setting skin=enhanced.

\skinExampleSet{enhanced}

This is my content.
This is my content.
This is my content.
My title
My title
This is my content.
This is my content.
My content. More content.
My content. More content.
With the "enhanced" skin, it is quite easy to produce fancy looking effects.

Note that this is still a \texttt{tcolorbox}.

Of course, skins can be used for listings also.

\begin{equation}
\int_1^2 \frac{1}{x} \, dx = \ln(2).
\end{equation}
For unbreakable boxes, this is identical to using \texttt{/tcb/enhanced} \textsuperscript{P.217}. But, for breakable boxes, the \textit{break sequence} is identical to the \texttt{standard} \textsuperscript{P.215} skin, see Section 19.8 from page 403.

This style relies on the skin \texttt{enhanced} \textsuperscript{P.217}. All drawing operations are hidden and all margins are set to 0pt. See \texttt{/tcb/blanker} \textsuperscript{P.251} for switching off the drawing engines.

\begin{tcolorbox}[	exttt{blank,watermark text=A blank box}]
\texttt{\texttt{lipsum}[1]}
\end{tcolorbox}

Sometimes, a line is only a line. With \texttt{\textbackslash tcblover} \textsuperscript{P.12} you separate the box content into two functional units. \texttt{\textbackslash tcbliner} draws only a line which looks like the segmentation line between upper and lower part. Furthermore, you can use \texttt{\textbackslash tcbliner} more than just once. \texttt{\textbackslash tcbliner} always uses the \texttt{\textbackslash path} drawing engine. Therefore, the \texttt{\textbackslash tcb\textbackslash segmentation style} \textsuperscript{P.159} can be applied.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcblower}
\begin{tcbset}{enhanced,colframe=blue!50!black,colback=white}
\lipsum[1]
\lipsum[2]
\lipsum[3]
\lipsum[4]
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcblower}
\begin{tcolorbox}
\lipsum[1]
\lipsum[2]
\lipsum[3]
\lipsum[4]
\end{tcolorbox}


\texttt{\textbackslash tcbliner*}

Equivalent to \texttt{\textbackslash tcbliner}, but in a breakable box, \texttt{\textbackslash tcbliner*} is removed if at a page/box break. Also, it is removed at the end of a box.
This is a flavor of enhanced\(^{\text{P.217}}\) which is used as a first part in a break sequence for enhanced\(^{\text{P.217}}\). Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

### Environment and engines for the skin “enhancedfirst”

\[
\text{\textbackslash skinExampleSet{skin=enhancedfirst}}
\]

This is my content.  
This is my content.  
My content.  
More content.  

My title  
This is my content.  
This is my content.  
More content.  

\[
\text{\textbackslash tcb/skin=enhancedmiddle}
\]

This is a flavor of enhanced\(^{\text{P.217}}\) which is used as a middle part in a break sequence for enhanced\(^{\text{P.217}}\). Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

### Environment and engines for the skin “enhancedmiddle”

\[
\text{\textbackslash skinExampleSet{skin=enhancedmiddle}}
\]
This is a flavor of enhanced which is used as a last part in a break sequence for enhanced. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

### Environment and engines for the skin “enhancedlast”

- `/tcb/graphical environment`
- `/tcb/frame engine`
- `/tcb/interior titled engine`
- `/tcb/interior engine`
- `/tcb/segmentation engine`
- `/tcb/title engine`

- `tikzpicture`
- `pathlast`
- `pathlast`
- `pathlast`
- `pathlast`
- `pathlast`
This is the jigsaw variant of skin enhanced\(^\text{P.217}\). It differs by its frame engine, see Section 10.11 on page 209.

### Environment and engines for the skin “enhanced jigsaw”

- `/tcb/graphical environment\(^\text{P.142}\)`: tikzpicture
- `/tcb/frame engine\(^\text{P.142}\)`: pathjigsaw
- `/tcb/interior titled engine\(^\text{P.142}\)`: path
- `/tcb/interior engine\(^\text{P.143}\)`: path
- `/tcb/segmentation engine\(^\text{P.143}\)`: path
- `/tcb/title engine\(^\text{P.143}\)`: path

This is an abbreviation for setting `skin=enhanced jigsaw`.

\begin{tcbitemize}
\item This is my content.
\item This is my content.
\item My content.
\item More content.
\end{tcbitemize}

\begin{tcbitemize}
\item My title
\item This is my content.
\item This is my content.
\item More content.
\end{tcbitemize}

\begin{tcbitemize}
\item My title
\item My content.
\item More content.
\end{tcbitemize}

\begin{tcbitemize}
\item My title
\item My content.
\item More content.
\end{tcbitemize}

For unbreakable boxes, this is identical to using `/tcb/enhanced jigsaw`. But, for breakable boxes, the `break sequence` is identical to the standard jigsaw\(^\text{P.216}\) skin, see Section 19.8 from page 403.
This is the jigsaw variant of skin \texttt{enhancedfirst} \textsuperscript{P.221}. It differs by its frame engine, see Section 10.11 on page 209.

\begin{tabular}{|c|c|}
\hline
\texttt{/tcb/graphical environment} \textsuperscript{P.142}: & \texttt{tikzpicture} \\
\texttt{/tcb/frame engine} \textsuperscript{P.142}: & \texttt{pathfirstjigsaw} \\
\texttt{/tcb/interior titled engine} \textsuperscript{P.142}: & \texttt{pathfirst} \\
\texttt{/tcb/interior engine} \textsuperscript{P.143}: & \texttt{pathfirst} \\
\texttt{/tcb/segmentation engine} \textsuperscript{P.143}: & \texttt{path} \\
\texttt{/tcb/title engine} \textsuperscript{P.143}: & \texttt{pathfirst} \\
\hline
\end{tabular}

\begin{verbatim}
\skinExampleSet{skin=enhancedfirst jigsaw, 
 opacityframe=0.5,opacityback=0.5,opacitybacktitle=0.5, 
}
\end{verbatim}
This is the jigsaw variant of skin `enhancedmiddle`. It differs by its frame engine, see Section 10.11 on page 209.

**Environment and engines for the skin “enhancedmiddle jigsaw”**

- `/tcb/graphical environment`: `tikzpicture`
- `/tcb/frame engine`: `pathmiddlejigsaw`
- `/tcb/interior titled engine`: `pathmiddle`
- `/tcb/interior engine`: `pathmiddle`
- `/tcb/segmentation engine`: `path`
- `/tcb/title engine`: `pathmiddle`

```latex
\skinExampleSet{skin=enhancedmiddle jigsaw, opacityframe=0.5,opacityback=0.5,opacitybacktitle=0.5,}
```

**/tcb/marker** (style, no value)

This style relies on the skin `enhancedmiddle jigsaw`. It is intended to be used as an optical marker like a highlighter pen.

```latex
\begin{tcolorbox}[marker]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This examples demonstrates the creation of several text marker environments based on enhancedmiddle\textsuperscript{+P.221}.

\texttt{\textbackslash\texttt{tcbsset}{textmarker/.style={%
skin=enhancedmiddle jigsaw,breakable,parbox=false,
boxrule=0mm,lefrule=5mm,rightrule=5mm,boxsep=0mm,arc=0mm,outer arc=0mm,
left=3mm,right=3mm,top=1mm,bottom=1mm,toptitle=1mm,bottomtitle=1mm,oversize}}}

\texttt{\texttt{newtcolorbox}{yellow}{textmarker,colback=yellow!5!white,colframe=yellow}}
\texttt{\texttt{newtcolorbox}{orange}{textmarker,colback=DarkOrange!5!white,,
colframe=DarkOrange!75!yellow}}
\texttt{\texttt{newtcolorbox}{red}{textmarker,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red}}
\texttt{\texttt{newtcolorbox}{blue}{textmarker,colback=DeepSkyBlue!5!white,colframe=DeepSkyBlue}}
\texttt{\texttt{newtcolorbox}{green}{textmarker,colback=Chartreuse!5!white,colframe=Chartreuse}}
\texttt{\texttt{newtcolorbox}{rainbow}{textmarker,interior hidden,
frame style={top color=blue,bottom color=red,middle color=green}}}

\begin{yellow}
\lipsum[1-3]
\end{yellow}

\begin{orange}
\lipsum[4]
\end{orange}

\begin{red}
\lipsum[5]
\end{red}

\begin{green}
\lipsum[6]
\end{green}

\begin{blue}
\lipsum[7]
\end{blue}

\begin{rainbow}
\lipsum[8]
\end{rainbow}


Nulla malesuada porttitor diam. Donec felis erat, congue non, volutpat at, tincidunt tristique,


This is the jigsaw variant of skin \textit{enhancedlast} \textsuperscript{P.222}. It differs by its frame engine, see Section 10.11 on page 209.

### Environment and engines for the skin “enhancedlast”

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engine</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/graphical environment \textsuperscript{P.142}</td>
<td>tikzpicture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/frame engine \textsuperscript{P.142}</td>
<td>pathlastjigsaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/interior titled engine \textsuperscript{P.142}</td>
<td>pathlast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/interior engine \textsuperscript{P.143}</td>
<td>pathlast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/segmentation engine \textsuperscript{P.143}</td>
<td>path</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/title engine \textsuperscript{P.143}</td>
<td>pathlast</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

```latex
\skinExampleSet{skin=enhancedlast jigsaw, 
opacityframe=0.5,opacityback=0.5,opacitybacktitle=0.5,}
```

This is my content. This is my content. My content. More content.

My title

This is my content. This is my content. My content. More content.

This is my content. More content.
11.3 Skin Family “bicolor”

This skin is quite similar to the standard and enhanced skin. But instead of a segmentation line, the optional lower part of the box is filled with a different color or drawn with a different style.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Environment and engines for the skin “bicolor”</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{/tcb/graphical environment}: tikzpicture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{/tcb/interior titled engine}: special</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{/tcb/interior engine}: special</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{/tcb/segmentation engine}: special</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{/tcb/title engine}: path</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- The most basic usage of this skin is to set the background color of the lower part by \texttt{/tcb/colbacklower} and all other options like for the standard skin.

\begin{tcolorbox}[skin=bicolor,title=The title, colframe=FireBrick!75!black,colback=Salmon!50!white,colbacklower=Salmon] The upper part. \tcblower The lower part. \end{tcolorbox}

- The more advanced usage of this skin is to apply the \texttt{/tcb/frame style} and the \texttt{/tcb/interior style} like for the enhanced skin. Also, the \texttt{/tcb/segmentation style} can be used, but it is applied to the whole lower part.

\begin{tcolorbox}[skin=bicolor,title=The title, frame style={top color=FireBrick, bottom color=FireBrick!15!white,draw=black}, interior style={left color=Salmon,right color=Salmon!50!white}, segmentation style={right color=Salmon,left color=Salmon!50!white}] The upper part. \tcblower The lower part. \end{tcolorbox}
This is an abbreviation for setting skin=bicolor.

\skinExampleSet\{bicolor, colbacklower=LimeGreen!75!LightGreen, \}

This is my content. More content. My content. More content.

My title
This is my content. My title
This is my content. My title
This is my content.
The following options /tcb/colbacklower and /tcb/opacitybacklower are executed before /tcb/segmentation style \textsuperscript{P.159}, i.e. /tcb/segmentation style \textsuperscript{P.159} overrules them.

/tcb/colbacklower=⟨color⟩  
(no default, initially black!15!white)
Sets the background ⟨color⟩ of the lower part. It depends on the skin, if this value is used.

/tcb/opacitybacklower=⟨fraction⟩  
(no default, initially 1.0)
Sets the background opacity of the lower part to the given ⟨fraction⟩. It depends on the skin, if this value is used.

!2021-05-21

\texttt{\begin{tcblisting}\title{Snapshot of the staging area} \gitexample{The option ‘-a’ automatically stages all tracked and modified files before the commit. \par This can be combined with the message option ‘-m’ as seen in the third line.}} \end{tcblisting}}

\texttt{\begin{tcolorbox}[bicolor, \preaction={fill=blue!50!black}, pattern=checkerboard,pattern color=blue!50!gray}, \fonttitle=\ttfamily, \colback=blue!10, \colbacklower=white, \opacitybacklower=0.65, \title={Example for a semilucent lower part}] \begin{tcolorbox} This is the upper part. \tcblo\lineskip \kern.25em \begin{tcolorbox} And that is the lower part. \end{tcolorbox} \end{tcolorbox}}
This is a flavor of `bicolor` which is used as a *first* part in a break sequence for `bicolor`. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

### Environment and engines for the skin “bicolorfirst”

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Environment/Engine</th>
<th>Design Engine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/graphical environment</td>
<td><code>tikzpicture</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/frame engine</td>
<td><code>pathfirst</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/interior titled engine</td>
<td><code>special</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/interior engine</td>
<td><code>special</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/segmentation engine</td>
<td><code>special</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/title engine</td>
<td><code>pathfirst</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

```latex
\skinExampleSet{skin=bicolorfirst, 
colbacklower=LimeGreen!75!LightGreen, 
}
```

This is my content. More content. My content. More content. My title

This is my content. More content. My title

This is my content. More content. My title

This is my content. More content. My title
This is a flavor of \texttt{bicolor} which is used as a \textit{middle} part in a break sequence for \texttt{bicolor}. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

### Environment and engines for the skin “bicolormiddle”

- \texttt{/tcb/graphical environment}: \texttt{tikzpicture}
- \texttt{/tcb/frame engine}: \texttt{pathmiddle}
- \texttt{/tcb/interior titled engine}: \texttt{special}
- \texttt{/tcb/interior engine}: \texttt{special}
- \texttt{/tcb/segmentation engine}: \texttt{special}
- \texttt{/tcb/title engine}: \texttt{pathmiddle}

```latex
\skinExampleSet{skin=bicolormiddle, colbacklower=LimeGreen!75!LightGreen, }
```

This is my content. This is my content. This is my content. This is my content. This is my content.

My title

This is my content. This is my content. This is my content. This is my content. This is my content.
This is a flavor of bicolor which is used as a last part in a break sequence for bicolor. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

Environment and engines for the skin “bicolorlast”

- /tcb/graphical environment: \texttt{tikzpicture}
- /tcb/frame engine: \texttt{pathlast}
- /tcb/interior titled engine: \texttt{special}
- /tcb/interior engine: \texttt{special}
- /tcb/segmentation engine: \texttt{special}
- /tcb/title engine: \texttt{pathlast}

\begin{tcbexample}[skin=bicolorlast, colbacklower=LimeGreen!75!LightGreen,]
\begin{tcbitemize}
\item This is my content.
\item More content.
\item My content. More content.
\item My title
\item This is my content.
\item More content.
\end{tcbitemize}
\end{tcbexample}
This is the jigsaw variant of skin \texttt{bicolor} \cite[p.229]{skin}. It differs by its frame engine, see Section 10.11 on page 209.

**Environment and engines for the skin “bicolor jigsaw”**

\begin{itemize}
    \item \texttt{tikzpicture}
    \item \texttt{pathjigsaw}
    \item \texttt{special}
    \item \texttt{special}
    \item \texttt{special}
    \item \texttt{path}
\end{itemize}

This is an abbreviation for setting \texttt{skin=enhanced jigsaw}.

\begin{lstlisting}[language={TeX}]
\skinExampleSet{biclor jigsaw,  
colbacklower=LimeGreen!75!LightGreen,  
opacityframe=0.5,\opacityback=0.5,\opacitybacktitle=0.5, \opacitybacklower=0.5,  }
\end{lstlisting}
This is the jigsaw variant of skin \textit{bicolorfirst} \textsuperscript{P.232}. It differs by its frame engine, see Section 10.11 on page 209.

**Environment and engines for the skin “bicolorfirst jigsaw”**

- \texttt{/tcb/graphical environment} \textsuperscript{P.142}: \texttt{tikzpicture}
- \texttt{/tcb/frame engine} \textsuperscript{P.142}: \texttt{pathfirstjigsaw}
- \texttt{/tcb/interior titled engine} \textsuperscript{P.142}: \texttt{special}
- \texttt{/tcb/interior engine} \textsuperscript{P.143}: \texttt{special}
- \texttt{/tcb/segmentation engine} \textsuperscript{P.143}: \texttt{special}
- \texttt{/tcb/title engine} \textsuperscript{P.143}: \texttt{pathfirst}

\begin{verbatim}
\skinExampleSet{skin=bicolorfirst jigsaw,
colbacklower=LimeGreen!75!LightGreen,
opacityframe=0.5,opacityback=0.5,opacitybacktitle=0.5,
opacitybacklower=0.5,}
\end{verbatim}
This is the jigsaw variant of skin \textit{bicolormiddle}\textsuperscript{P.233}. It differs by its frame engine, see Section 10.11 on page 209.

\begin{tikzpicture}
  \skinExampleSet{skin=bicolormiddle jigsaw,  
  colbacklower=LimeGreen!75!LightGreen,  
  opacityframe=0.5,opacityback=0.5,opacitybacktitle=0.5,  
  opacitybacklower=0.5,}
\end{tikzpicture}
This is the jigsaw variant of skin `bicolorlast`\textsuperscript{P.234}. It differs by its frame engine, see Section 10.11 on page 209.

### Environment and engines for the skin “bicolorlast jigsaw”

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Environment/Engine</th>
<th>Engine Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/graphical environment\textsuperscript{P.142}</td>
<td>tikzpicture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/frame engine\textsuperscript{P.142}</td>
<td>pathlastjigsaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/interior titled engine\textsuperscript{P.142}</td>
<td>special</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/interior engine\textsuperscript{P.143}</td>
<td>special</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/segmentation engine\textsuperscript{P.143}</td>
<td>special</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/title engine\textsuperscript{P.143}</td>
<td>pathlast</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\begin{Verbatim}
\skinExampleSet{skin=bicolorlast jigsaw,  
colbacklower=LimeGreen!75!LightGreen,  
opacityframe=0.5,opacityback=0.5,opacitybacktitle=0.5,  
opacitybacklower=0.5,  }
\end{Verbatim}

This is my content.  
More content.  
My content.  
More content.  

My title  
This is my content.  
More content.  
My content.  
More content.  

My title  
This is my content.  
More content.  
My content.  
More content.  

My title  
This is my content.  
More content.  
My content.  
More content.  

My title  
This is my content.  
More content.  
My content.  
More content.  

My title  
This is my content.  
More content.  
My content.  
More content.
11.4 Skin Family “tile”

This skin is a variant of skin bicolor$^{\text{P.229}}$. Especially, the optional lower part of the box is colored by /tcb/colbacklower$^{\text{P.231}}$. The main difference to bicolor$^{\text{P.229}}$ is that tile has no frame.

Environment and engines for the skin “tile”

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Environment/Engine</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/graphical environment</td>
<td>tikzpicture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/frame engine</td>
<td>empty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/interior titled engine</td>
<td>special</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/interior engine</td>
<td>special</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/segmentation engine</td>
<td>special</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/title engine</td>
<td>path</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This key applies skin=tile and in addition changes the geometry and some style options.
This is a flavor of \( \text{tile} \) which is used as a \textit{first} part in a break sequence for \( \text{tile} \). Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

**Environment and engines for the skin “tilefirst”**

\begin{itemize}
\item \texttt{/tcb/graphical environment} \( \rightarrow \text{P.142} \): \texttt{tikzpicture}
\item \texttt{/tcb/frame engine} \( \rightarrow \text{P.142} \): \texttt{empty}
\item \texttt{/tcb/interior titled engine} \( \rightarrow \text{P.142} \): \texttt{special}
\item \texttt{/tcb/interior engine} \( \rightarrow \text{P.143} \): \texttt{special}
\item \texttt{/tcb/segmentation engine} \( \rightarrow \text{P.143} \): \texttt{special}
\item \texttt{/tcb/title engine} \( \rightarrow \text{P.143} \): \texttt{pathfirst}
\end{itemize}

```latex
\skinExampleSet{skin=tilefirst,}
\skinExampleSet{colbacklower=LimeGreen!75!LightGreen,}
\skinExampleSet{boxrule=0pt,}
\skinExampleSet{}
```

This is my content. This is my content. This is my content.

This is a flavor of tile\(^{\text{P.239}}\) which is used as a middle part in a break sequence for tile\(^{\text{P.239}}\). Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

### Environment and engines for the skin “tilemiddle”

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Environment/Engine</th>
<th>Code</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/graphical environment (^{\text{P.142}})</td>
<td>tikzpicture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/frame engine (^{\text{P.142}})</td>
<td>empty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/interior titled engine (^{\text{P.142}})</td>
<td>special</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/interior engine (^{\text{P.143}})</td>
<td>special</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/segmentation engine (^{\text{P.143}})</td>
<td>special</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/title engine (^{\text{P.143}})</td>
<td>pathmiddle</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\[
\text{\texttt{\textbackslash skinExampleSet}}(\text{\texttt{skin=tilemiddle}},
\text{\texttt{colbacklower=LimeGreen!75!LightGreen}},
\text{\texttt{boxrule=0pt}},
)\]

This is my content.  This is my content.  My content.  More content.

My title

This is my content.  This is my content.  My content.  More content.
This is a flavor of tile\textsuperscript{P.239} which is used as a last part in a break sequence for tile\textsuperscript{P.239}. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

Environment and engines for the skin “tilelast”

\begin{itemize}
\item [/tcb/graphical environment\textsuperscript{P.142}]: tikzpicture
\item [/tcb/frame engine\textsuperscript{P.142}]: empty
\item [/tcb/interior titled engine\textsuperscript{P.142}]: special
\item [/tcb/interior engine\textsuperscript{P.143}]: special
\item [/tcb/segmentation engine\textsuperscript{P.143}]: special
\item [/tcb/title engine\textsuperscript{P.143}]: pathlast
\end{itemize}

\begin{tcbexample}
\skinExampleSet{s\textsuperscript{Skin}=tilelast, 
  colbacklower=LimeGreen!75!LightGreen, 
  boxrule=0pt, 
}

\begin{tcbitemize}
\item This is my content. 
\item My title
\item This is my content.
\item More content.
\end{tcbitemize}

\begin{tcbitemize}
\item This is my content. 
\item My title
\item This is my content.
\item More content.
\end{tcbitemize}

\begin{tcbitemize}
\item This is my content. 
\item My title
\item This is my content.
\item More content.
\end{tcbitemize}
\end{tcbexample}
11.5 Skin Family “beamer”

This skin resembles boxes known from the `beamer` class and therefore is called “beamer”. It uses the normal colors from the core package but shades them a little bit.

Environment and engines for the skin “beamer”

- `/tcb/graphical environment` \textit{P. 142}: `tikzpicture`
- `/tcb/frame engine` \textit{P. 142}: `path`
- `/tcb/interior titled engine` \textit{P. 142}: `special`
- `/tcb/interior engine` \textit{P. 143}: `special`
- `/tcb/segmentation engine` \textit{P. 143}: `special`
- `/tcb/title engine` \textit{P. 143}: `path`

This key applies \texttt{skin=beamer} and in addition changes the geometry and some style options.

\begin{tcolorbox}[	exttt{beamer},colback=Salmon!50!white,colframe=FireBrick!75!black, adjusted title=A colored box with the \texttt{beamer} skin]
This box looks like a box provided by the \texttt{beamer} class.
\end{tcolorbox}

A colored box with the “beamer” skin

This box looks like a box provided by the `beamer` class.
This is a flavor of `beamer` which is used as a first part in a break sequence for `beamer`. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

### Environment and engines for the skin “beamerfirst”

```
\skinExampleSet{beamer,title filled=false,skin=beamerfirst}
```

This is my content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My content. More content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My content. More content.

This is a flavor of `beamer` which is used as a middle part in a break sequence for `beamer`. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

### Environment and engines for the skin “beamermiddle”

```
\skinExampleSet{beamer,title filled=false,skin=beamermiddle}
```

This is my content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My content. More content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My content. More content.
This is a flavor of `beamer` which is used as a last part in a break sequence for `beamer`. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

Environment and engines for the skin “beamerlast”

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Environment</th>
<th>Engine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>/tcb/graphical environment</code></td>
<td><code>tikzpicture</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>/tcb/frame engine</code></td>
<td><code>pathlast</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>/tcb/interior titled engine</code></td>
<td><code>special</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>/tcb/interior engine</code></td>
<td><code>special</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>/tcb/segmentation engine</code></td>
<td><code>special</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>/tcb/title engine</code></td>
<td><code>pathlast</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

```latex
\skinExampleSet{beamer,title filled=false,skin=beamerlast}

This is my content.
This is my content.
My content.
More content.

My title
This is my content.
This is my content.
My content.
More content.
```

246
11.6 Skin Family “widget”

This skin uses the normal colors from the core package but shades them a little bit. The appearance of the skin can be controlled by \texttt{/tcb/frame style} \textsuperscript{P.156}, \texttt{/tcb/interior style} \textsuperscript{P.157}, and \texttt{/tcb/segmentation style} \textsuperscript{P.159}, if needed.

**Environment and engines for the skin “widget”**

- \texttt{/tcb/graphical environment} \textsuperscript{P.142}: \texttt{tikzpicture}
- \texttt{/tcb/frame engine} \textsuperscript{P.142}: \texttt{path}
- \texttt{/tcb/interior titled engine} \textsuperscript{P.142}: \texttt{path}
- \texttt{/tcb/interior engine} \textsuperscript{P.143}: \texttt{path}
- \texttt{/tcb/segmentation engine} \textsuperscript{P.143}: \texttt{special}
- \texttt{/tcb/title engine} \textsuperscript{P.143}: \texttt{special}

This key applies \texttt{skin=widget} and in addition changes the geometry and some style options.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[widget,colback=Salmon!50!white,colframe=FireBrick!75!black,]
adjusted title=A colored box with the \enquote{widget} skin
\end{tcolorbox}
```

A colored box with the “widget” skin

This is my content.


This is a flavor of \texttt{widget}\(^{P.247}\) which is used as a \textit{first} part in a break sequence for \texttt{widget}\(^{P.247}\). Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

\begin{tabular}{|l|}
\hline
\texttt{/tcb/graphical environment}\(^{P.142}\): \texttt{tikzpicture} \\
\texttt{/tcb/frame engine}\(^{P.142}\): \texttt{pathfirst} \\
\texttt{/tcb/interior titled engine}\(^{P.142}\): \texttt{pathfirst} \\
\texttt{/tcb/interior engine}\(^{P.143}\): \texttt{pathfirst} \\
\texttt{/tcb/segmentation engine}\(^{P.143}\): \texttt{special} \\
\texttt{/tcb/title engine}\(^{P.143}\): \texttt{special} \\
\hline
\end{tabular}

\begin{tabular}{|l|}
\hline
This is my content. \\
This is my content. \\
This is my content. \\
My content. \\
More content. \\
My content. \\
More content. \\
My title \\
This is my content. \\
This is my content. \\
This is my content. \\
My title \\
This is my content. \\
This is my content. \\
More content. \\

\end{tabular}

This is a flavor of \texttt{widget}\(^{P.247}\) which is used as a \textit{middle} part in a break sequence for \texttt{widget}\(^{P.247}\). Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

\begin{tabular}{|l|}
\hline
\texttt{/tcb/graphical environment}\(^{P.142}\): \texttt{tikzpicture} \\
\texttt{/tcb/frame engine}\(^{P.142}\): \texttt{pathmiddle} \\
\texttt{/tcb/interior titled engine}\(^{P.142}\): \texttt{pathmiddle} \\
\texttt{/tcb/interior engine}\(^{P.143}\): \texttt{pathmiddle} \\
\texttt{/tcb/segmentation engine}\(^{P.143}\): \texttt{special} \\
\texttt{/tcb/title engine}\(^{P.143}\): \texttt{special} \\
\hline
\end{tabular}

\begin{tabular}{|l|}
\hline
This is my content. \\
This is my content. \\
This is my content. \\
My content. \\
More content. \\
My content. \\
More content. \\
My title \\
This is my content. \\
This is my content. \\
This is my content. \\
My title \\
This is my content. \\
This is my content. \\
More content. \\

\end{tabular}
This is a flavor of \texttt{widget} \textsuperscript{P.247} which is used as a last part in a break sequence for \texttt{widget} \textsuperscript{P.247}. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

Environment and engines for the skin “\texttt{widgetlast}”

\begin{itemize}
\item \texttt{/tcb/graphical environment} \textsuperscript{P.142}: \texttt{tikzpicture}
\item \texttt{/tcb/frame engine} \textsuperscript{P.142}: \texttt{pathlast}
\item \texttt{/tcb/interior titled engine} \textsuperscript{P.142}: \texttt{pathlast}
\item \texttt{/tcb/interior engine} \textsuperscript{P.143}: \texttt{pathlast}
\item \texttt{/tcb/segmentation engine} \textsuperscript{P.143}: \texttt{special}
\item \texttt{/tcb/title engine} \textsuperscript{P.143}: \texttt{special}
\end{itemize}

\begin{verbatim}
\skinExampleSet{widget,skin=widgetlast}
\end{verbatim}
11.7 Skin Family “empty”

\[\text{\texttt{/tcb/skin=empty}}\]

This skin sets all engines to \texttt{empty}, i.e. nothing is drawn at all. Therefore, this skin is a good starting point to create a complete new style by yourself.

Environment and engines for the skin “empty”

\[
\begin{align*}
/tcb/graphical\ environment & \rightarrow P.142: \texttt{tikzpicture} \\
/tcb/frame\ engine & \rightarrow P.142: \texttt{empty} \\
/tcb/interior\ titled\ engine & \rightarrow P.142: \texttt{empty} \\
/tcb/interior\ engine & \rightarrow P.143: \texttt{empty} \\
/tcb/segmentation\ engine & \rightarrow P.143: \texttt{empty} \\
/tcb/title\ engine & \rightarrow P.143: \texttt{empty}
\end{align*}
\]

Note that the text colors stay unchanged when a skin is applied. Since the standard title color is white, the title of a box with skin \texttt{empty} becomes invisible, if not set to another color by \texttt{/tcb/coltitle} \[\rightarrow P.28\].

\[\text{\texttt{/tcb/empty}}\]

This is an abbreviation for setting \texttt{skin=empty}.

\[
\begin{array}{|c|c|c|}
\hline
\text{This is my content.} & \text{This is my content.} & \text{My content.} \\
\text{More content.} & \text{More content.} & \text{More content.} \\
\hline
\end{array}
\]

\[
\begin{array}{|c|c|c|}
\hline
\text{My title} & \text{My title} & \text{My title} \\
\text{This is my content.} & \text{This is my content.} & \text{My content.} \\
\text{More content.} & \text{More content.} & \text{More content.} \\
\hline
\end{array}
\]
This style relies on the skin empty. All engines are set to empty and all margins are set to 0pt. In contrast to tcb/blank, the graphical paths are not constructed with exception of the geometry nodes.

\begin{tcolorbox} [blanker, watermark text=A blank box]
\lipsum [1]
\end{tcolorbox}


% \tcbselibrary{fitting}
\newtcboxfit{MYBOX}[1]{blanker, width=4cm, height=7cm, top=4pt, watermark text=#1}

\begin{tabular}{|c|c|c|}
\hline
A & B & C \\
\hline
\MYBOX{A}{\lipsum[1]} & \MYBOX{B}{\lipsum[2]} & \MYBOX{C}{\lipsum[3]} \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
This style extends /tcb/blanker\textsuperscript{P.251}. All engines are set to empty and all margins are set to 0pt. In contrast to /tcb/blanker\textsuperscript{P.251}, also title, shadow, underlay, overlay, finish and borderline are removed.

% \tcbuselibrary{raster}
\begin{tcbraster}
  \tcbset{raster columns=3,raster equal height, title=Box \tcbasternum, enhanced,size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white, coltitle=yellow!85!black, drop fuzzy shadow,watermark text={Box \tcbasternum}, borderline={.25mm}{-0.5mm}{green!40!black}, finish={\begin{tcbclipframe}\draw[blue,opacity=0.1,line width=1cm](frame.south west) -- (frame.north east);\end{tcbclipframe}},}
\begin{tcolorbox}\lipsum[4]\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[blanker]\lipsum[4]\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[blankest]\lipsum[4]\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcbraster}

Box 1
\lipsum[4]

Box 2
\lipsum[4]


This is a flavor of empty\textsuperscript{P.250} which is used as a first part in a break sequence for empty\textsuperscript{P.250}. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

\begin{tcbitemize}
\item /tcb/graphical environment\textsuperscript{P.142}: \texttt{tikzpicture}
\item /tcb/frame engine\textsuperscript{P.142}: \texttt{empty}
\item /tcb/interior titled engine\textsuperscript{P.142}: \texttt{empty}
\item /tcb/interior engine\textsuperscript{P.143}: \texttt{empty}
\item /tcb/segmentation engine\textsuperscript{P.143}: \texttt{empty}
\item /tcb/title engine\textsuperscript{P.143}: \texttt{empty}
\end{tcbitemize}

```latex
\skinExampleSet{
  skin=emptyfirst,
  coltitle=Navy,borderline={2pt}{0pt}{black!10!white},
}
```

This is my content.  
This is my content.  
More content.

My title

This is my content.  
This is my content.  
More content.

My title

This is my content.  
This is my content.  
More content.

My title
This is a flavor of empty \textsuperscript{P.250} which is used as a middle part in a break sequence for empty \textsuperscript{P.250}. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

**Environment and engines for the skin “emptymiddle”**

- /tcb/graphical environment $\textsuperscript{P.142}$: \texttt{tikzpicture}
- /tcb/frame engine $\textsuperscript{P.142}$: \texttt{empty}
- /tcb/interior titled engine $\textsuperscript{P.142}$: \texttt{empty}
- /tcb/interior engine $\textsuperscript{P.143}$: \texttt{empty}
- /tcb/segmentation engine $\textsuperscript{P.143}$: \texttt{empty}
- /tcb/title engine $\textsuperscript{P.143}$: \texttt{empty}

\begin{tcbexample}
\exampleSet{skin=emptymiddle, 
  coltitle=Navy,
  borderline={2pt}{0pt}{black!10!white},
}

This is my content.  
This is my content.  
This is my content.  
My title  
This is my content.  
My title  
This is my content.  
More content.  
More content.  
My content.  
More content.  
My title  
My content.  
More content.
\end{tcbexample}
This is a flavor of empty which is used as a last part in a break sequence for empty. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

Environment and engines for the skin “emptylast”

\skinExampleSet{skin=emptylast, coltitle=Navy,borderline={2pt}{0pt}{black!10!white}, }

This is my content. This is my content. My content. More content.

My title
This is my content.

My title
This is my content. More content.
This example demonstrates a breakable customized box. Here, we define an environment `freebox`. The first application of `freebox` produces an unbroken `tcolorbox`. The box is drawn by the code given by `/tcb/frame code`^{P.145} and `/tcb/interior code`^{P.146}. The second application of `freebox` is broken into several parts which are drawn by the codes given by `/tcb/skin first is subskin of`^{P.148}, `/tcb/skin middle is subskin of`^{P.148}, and `/tcb/skin last is subskin of`^{P.148}.

% Preamble:
\usepackage{tikz,lipsum}
%\tcbuselibrary{skins,breakable}
\tikzset{coltria/.style={fill=red!15!white}}
\newtcolorbox{freebox}[1][\empty, breakable,height fixed for=first and middle, leftrule=5mm,left=2mm, frame style={fill,top color=red!75!black,bottom color=red!75!black,middle color=red}, colback=yellow!50!white, watermark color=red!50!yellow!75!white, watermark text on=unbroken is unbroken box, watermark text on=first is first part, watermark text on=middle is middle part, watermark text on=last is last part, ]{empty,}

\tcbuselibrary{skins,breakable}
\newtcolorbox{freebox}[1][\empty, breakable,height fixed for=first and middle, leftrule=5mm,left=2mm, frame style={fill,top color=red!75!black,bottom color=red!75!black,middle color=red}, colback=yellow!50!white, watermark color=red!50!yellow!75!white, watermark text on=unbroken is unbroken box, watermark text on=first is first part, watermark text on=middle is middle part, watermark text on=last is last part, ]{empty,}

\tcbuselibrary{skins,breakable}
\newtcolorbox{freebox}[1][\empty, breakable,height fixed for=first and middle, leftrule=5mm,left=2mm, frame style={fill,top color=red!75!black,bottom color=red!75!black,middle color=red}, colback=yellow!50!white, watermark color=red!50!yellow!75!white, watermark text on=unbroken is unbroken box, watermark text on=first is first part, watermark text on=middle is middle part, watermark text on=last is last part, ]{empty,}

\tcbuselibrary{skins,breakable}
\newtcolorbox{freebox}[1][\empty, breakable,height fixed for=first and middle, leftrule=5mm,left=2mm, frame style={fill,top color=red!75!black,bottom color=red!75!black,middle color=red}, colback=yellow!50!white, watermark color=red!50!yellow!75!white, watermark text on=unbroken is unbroken box, watermark text on=first is first part, watermark text on=middle is middle part, watermark text on=last is last part, ]{empty,}

\tcbuselibrary{skins,breakable}
\newtcolorbox{freebox}[1][\empty, breakable,height fixed for=first and middle, leftrule=5mm,left=2mm, frame style={fill,top color=red!75!black,bottom color=red!75!black,middle color=red}, colback=yellow!50!white, watermark color=red!50!yellow!75!white, watermark text on=unbroken is unbroken box, watermark text on=first is first part, watermark text on=middle is middle part, watermark text on=last is last part, ]{empty,}

\tcbuselibrary{skins,breakable}
\newtcolorbox{freebox}[1][\empty, breakable,height fixed for=first and middle, leftrule=5mm,left=2mm, frame style={fill,top color=red!75!black,bottom color=red!75!black,middle color=red}, colback=yellow!50!white, watermark color=red!50!yellow!75!white, watermark text on=unbroken is unbroken box, watermark text on=first is first part, watermark text on=middle is middle part, watermark text on=last is last part, ]{empty,}

\tcbuselibrary{skins,breakable}
\newtcolorbox{freebox}[1][\empty, breakable,height fixed for=first and middle, leftrule=5mm,left=2mm, frame style={fill,top color=red!75!black,bottom color=red!75!black,middle color=red}, colback=yellow!50!white, watermark color=red!50!yellow!75!white, watermark text on=unbroken is unbroken box, watermark text on=first is first part, watermark text on=middle is middle part, watermark text on=last is last part, ]{empty,}

\tcbuselibrary{skins,breakable}
\newtcolorbox{freebox}[1][\empty, breakable,height fixed for=first and middle, leftrule=5mm,left=2mm, frame style={fill,top color=red!75!black,bottom color=red!75!black,middle color=red}, colback=yellow!50!white, watermark color=red!50!yellow!75!white, watermark text on=unbroken is unbroken box, watermark text on=first is first part, watermark text on=middle is middle part, watermark text on=last is last part, ]{empty,}

\tcbuselibrary{skins,breakable}
\newtcolorbox{freebox}[1][\empty, breakable,height fixed for=first and middle, leftrule=5mm,left=2mm, frame style={fill,top color=red!75!black,bottom color=red!75!black,middle color=red}, colback=yellow!50!white, watermark color=red!50!yellow!75!white, watermark text on=unbroken is unbroken box, watermark text on=first is first part, watermark text on=middle is middle part, watermark text on=last is last part, ]{empty,}

\tcbuselibrary{skins,breakable}
\newtcolorbox{freebox}[1][\empty, breakable,height fixed for=first and middle, leftrule=5mm,left=2mm, frame style={fill,top color=red!75!black,bottom color=red!75!black,middle color=red}, colback=yellow!50!white, watermark color=red!50!yellow!75!white, watermark text on=unbroken is unbroken box, watermark text on=first is first part, watermark text on=middle is middle part, watermark text on=last is last part, ]{empty,}

\tcbuselibrary{skins,breakable}
\newtcolorbox{freebox}[1][\empty, breakable,height fixed for=first and middle, leftrule=5mm,left=2mm, frame style={fill,top color=red!75!black,bottom color=red!75!black,middle color=red}, colback=yellow!50!white, watermark color=red!50!yellow!75!white, watermark text on=unbroken is unbroken box, watermark text on=first is first part, watermark text on=middle is middle part, watermark text on=last is last part, ]{empty,}

\tcbuselibrary{skins,breakable}
\newtcolorbox{freebox}[1][\empty, breakable,height fixed for=first and middle, leftrule=5mm,left=2mm, frame style={fill,top color=red!75!black,bottom color=red!75!black,middle color=red}, colback=yellow!50!white, watermark color=red!50!yellow!75!white, watermark text on=unbroken is unbroken box, watermark text on=first is first part, watermark text on=middle is middle part, watermark text on=last is last part, ]{empty,}

\tcbuselibrary{skins,breakable}
\newtcolorbox{freebox}[1][\empty, breakable,height fixed for=first and middle, leftrule=5mm,left=2mm, frame style={fill,top color=red!75!black,bottom color=red!75!black,middle color=red}, colback=yellow!50!white, watermark color=red!50!yellow!75!white, watermark text on=unbroken is unbroken box, watermark text on=first is first part, watermark text on=middle is middle part, watermark text on=last is last part, ]{empty,}

\tcbuselibrary{skins,breakable}
\newtcolorbox{freebox}[1][\empty, breakable,height fixed for=first and middle, leftrule=5mm,left=2mm, frame style={fill,top color=red!75!black,bottom color=red!75!black,middle color=red}, colback=yellow!50!white, watermark color=red!50!yellow!75!white, watermark text on=unbroken is unbroken box, watermark text on=first is first part, watermark text on=middle is middle part, watermark text on=last is last part, ]{empty,}


11.8 Skin “spartan”

This skin is quite ... spartan. It supports no rounded corners, no overlays, no shadows, no borderlines, and no finishes. The only exception are underlays. One cannot do very fancy things with this skin, but it compiles very fast. Therefore, the spartan skin is used for the draft mode, see Section 10.12 on page 211. Nevertheless, it can be used as a normal skin.

Environment and engines for the skin “spartan”

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Environment/Engine</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/graphical environment</td>
<td>tikzpicture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/frame engine</td>
<td>spartan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/interior titled engine</td>
<td>spartan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/interior engine</td>
<td>spartan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/segmentation engine</td>
<td>spartan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/title engine</td>
<td>spartan</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This is an abbreviation for setting skin=spartan.

\skinExampleSet{spartan}

This is my content.

This is my content.

My content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

This is my content.

My content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

This is my content.

My content.

More content.
11.9 Skin “draft”

This skin is intended to be used while drafting new geometric settings for a \tcolorbox.

Environment and engines for the skin “draft”

\tcb/graphical environment $^{\text{P.142}}$: \texttt{tikzpicture}
\tcb/frame engine $^{\text{P.142}}$: \textit{special}
\tcb/interior titled engine $^{\text{P.142}}$: \textit{special}
\tcb/interior engine $^{\text{P.143}}$: \textit{special}
\tcb/segmentation engine $^{\text{P.143}}$: \textit{path}
\tcb/title engine $^{\text{P.143}}$: \textit{path}

This is an abbreviation for setting \texttt{skin=draft}.

\skinExampleSet{draft}

This is my content.


Nulla facilisis.


This skin family “freelance” is deprecated with \texttt{tcolorbox} 3.00. It is not longer needed, because \texttt{/tcb/frame code} \texttt{tikzpicture}, \texttt{/tcb/interior code} \texttt{freelance}, \texttt{/tcb/interior titled code} \texttt{freelance}, and \texttt{/tcb/title code} \texttt{freelance} can be applied to every skin now. In this sense, everything has become freelance now.

For users of \texttt{/tcb/freelance}: Old code should continue to work. There may be exceptions for breakable freelance boxes under certain circumstances. For new code, use \texttt{/tcb/empty} \texttt{tikzpicture} or \texttt{/tcb/enhanced} \texttt{tikzpicture} where you would have used \texttt{/tcb/freelance} before.

\begin{description}
\item[] /tcb/skin=freelance (skin)
\begin{itemize}
\item This skin gives full freedom for the appearance of the \texttt{tcolorbox}. All drawing engines are set to type freelance; they use the \texttt{tikz} package and compute the \texttt{/tcb/geometry} nodes.
\end{itemize}
\end{description}

\begin{itemize}
\item \texttt{/tcb/graphical environment=tikzpicture} \texttt{tikzpicture}
\item \texttt{/tcb/frame engine=freelance} \texttt{freelance}
\item \texttt{/tcb/interior titled engine=freelance} \texttt{freelance}
\item \texttt{/tcb/interior engine=freelance} \texttt{freelance}
\item \texttt{/tcb/segmentation engine=freelance} \texttt{freelance}
\item \texttt{/tcb/title engine=freelance} \texttt{freelance}
\end{itemize}

\begin{description}
\item[] /tcb/freelance (style, no value)
\begin{itemize}
\item This is an abbreviation for setting \texttt{skin=freelance}.
\end{itemize}
\end{description}

\begin{description}
\item[] /tcb/skin=freelancefirst (skin)
\begin{itemize}
\item This skin equals freelance with exception of the break sequence, see Section 19.8 on page 403.
\end{itemize}
\end{description}

\begin{description}
\item[] /tcb/skin=freelancemiddle (skin)
\begin{itemize}
\item This skin equals freelance with exception of the break sequence, see Section 19.8 on page 403.
\end{itemize}
\end{description}

\begin{description}
\item[] /tcb/skin=freelancelast (skin)
\begin{itemize}
\item This skin equals freelance with exception of the break sequence, see Section 19.8 on page 403.
\end{itemize}
\end{description}

\begin{description}
\item[] /tcb/extend freelance=⟨options⟩ (no default, initially empty)
\begin{itemize}
\item The \texttt{⟨options⟩} are added to the skin definition of freelance.
\end{itemize}
\end{description}

\begin{description}
\item[] /tcb/extend freelancefirst=⟨options⟩ (no default, initially empty)
\begin{itemize}
\item The \texttt{⟨options⟩} are added to the skin definition of freelancefirst which is used as first part of the break sequence of freelance. See \texttt{/tcb/skin first is subskin of} for a substitute of this key.
\end{itemize}
\end{description}

\begin{description}
\item[] /tcb/extend freelancemiddle=⟨options⟩ (no default, initially empty)
\begin{itemize}
\item The \texttt{⟨options⟩} are added to the skin definition of freelancemiddle which is used as middle part of the break sequence of freelance. See \texttt{/tcb/skin middle is subskin of} for a substitute of this key.
\end{itemize}
\end{description}

\begin{description}
\item[] /tcb/extend freelancelast=⟨options⟩ (no default, initially empty)
\begin{itemize}
\item The \texttt{⟨options⟩} are added to the skin definition of freelancelast which is used as last part of the break sequence of freelance. See \texttt{/tcb/skin last is subskin of} for a substitute of this key.
\end{itemize}
\end{description}
The \texttt{skins} library adds some commands to conveniently include boxed image files. For the following macros and options, the \texttt{skins} library has to be loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

\begin{tcbuselibrary}{skins}
\end{tcbuselibrary}

See Section 10 on page 156 for the documentation of all other options of the \texttt{skins} library.

\section*{12.1 Macros}

\begin{tcbincludegraphics}[⟨options⟩]{⟨file name⟩}
\end{tcbincludegraphics}

In principle, this macro includes an image file denoted by \texttt{⟨file name⟩} using the standard \texttt{\includegraphics} and puts it into a \texttt{\tcolorbox}. The \texttt{⟨options⟩} are \texttt{\tcolorbox} keys to set up the colored box. Use \texttt{/tcb/graphics options} \texttt{P.267} to specify options for the underlying \texttt{\includegraphics}. Some \texttt{\tcolorbox} option keys are automatically set, namely \texttt{/tcb/enhanced} \texttt{P.217} and options to center the image inside the box.

The sizing of the included image is done depending on the following:

- If a \texttt{/tcb/width} \texttt{P.34} is specified, but no fixed \texttt{/tcb/height} \texttt{P.53}, the image is sized to fill the inner width of the box. The height of the box adapts to the image.
- If a fixed \texttt{/tcb/height} \texttt{P.53} is specified, the image is sized to fill the fixed inner area of the box.
- If the \texttt{/tcb/capture} \texttt{P.100} mode \texttt{/tcb/hbox} \texttt{P.100} is specified, the image is sized according to given \texttt{\includegraphics} options only. The box adapts to the image.

\begin{tcbincludegraphics}[title=Normal]{goldshade.png}
\begin{tcbincludegraphics}[title=Fixed height,height=3cm]{goldshade.png}
\begin{tcbincludegraphics}[title=hbox mode,hbox,graphics options={width=3cm}]{goldshade.png}
\end{tcbincludegraphics}
The auxiliary macro \texttt{\texttt{imagename}} may be used inside \texttt{\texttt{tcbincludegraphics}} to display the name of the file. \texttt{\texttt{imagename}} is already partially detokenized and is allowed to contain special characters like the underscore. Note that an appropriate font is required to display such characters.

\begin{tcbraster}
\begin{tcbincludegraphics}[title=\texttt{\texttt{imagename}}]{goldshade.png}
\end{tcbincludegraphics}
\begin{tcbincludegraphics}[finish={\node[fill=white,fill opacity=0.5,text opacity=1] at (frame.center) {\textbf{\ttfamily\texttt{imagename}}};}]{blueshade.png}
\end{tcbincludegraphics}
\end{tcbraster}
This is a generalized version of \texttt{tcbincludegraphics} which allows to include a complete PDF file denoted by \texttt{file name}. Every page is boxed into an own \texttt{tcolorbox} customized by the given \texttt{options}. It is reasonable to put such a series of boxes inside a \texttt{tcb raster} for alignment. Use \texttt{/tcb/graphics pages} to use a selection of pages instead of using the whole file. The auxiliary macro \texttt{imagepage} may be used inside \texttt{tcbincludepdf} to display the current page number.

\begin{tcbaster}[raster columns=3,colframe=blue,colback=white,% \tcbuselibrary{raster}
  left=0pt,right=0pt,top=0pt,bottom=0pt,boxsep=0pt,boxrule=0.6pt,
toptitle=1mm,bottomtitle=1mm,drop lifted shadow,center title,
  graphics pages={1,...,6},title={\texttt{\ imagename} [\texttt{imagepage}]}]
\end{tcbaster}
\texttt{tcbincludepdf\{tcolorbox-example.pdf\}}

\section{Colored boxes}
My box.
My title
My box with my title.
Upper part of my box.
Lower part of my box.
My title
I can do this also with a title.

\section{Phrases}

\begin{itemize}
  \item My box.
  \item My title
  \item My box with my title.
\end{itemize}

\section{Watermarks}

\section{Boxes in boxes}

\section{Boxed title}
This box uses a boxed title. The box of the title can be formatted inde-
pendently from the main box.

\section{Image page}
This box is filled with an external image.

\section{Image page}
Nullam at lectus. In sagittis ultrices mauris. Curabitur malesuada erat
mi erat, cursus id, nonummy sed, ullamcorper eget, sapien. Praesent

\section{Image page}
Nulla malesuada porttitor diam. Donec felis erat, congue non, volutpat
here, you see my nice box with a picture as a watermark. This picture

\section{Image page}
This is a selection of pages instead of using the whole file. The auxiliary macro \texttt{imagepage} may be used inside \texttt{tcbincludepdf} to display the current page number.

\section{Image page}
Here, you see my nice box with a picture as a watermark. This picture
12.2 Option Keys

\texttt{/tcb/graphics options=(options)} \hspace{1cm} \text{(no default, initially empty)}

Used for \texttt{\tcbincludegraphics}\textsuperscript{P.264} and \texttt{\tcbincludepdf}\textsuperscript{P.266} to specify \texttt{\includegraphics\{options\}}.

\begin{verbatim}
\% \tcbuselibrary{raster}
\begin{tcbraster}[raster columns=3,size=fbox,raster equal height, colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!20!black,drop fuzzy shadow]
\tcbincludegraphics{goldshade.png}
\newcommand{\myangle}{angle=20}\
\tcbincludegraphics[graphics options=\myangle]{goldshade.png}
\tcbincludegraphics[graphics options={viewport=0cm 0cm 8cm 4cm,clip}]{goldshade.png}
\end{tcbraster}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{/tcb/graphics directory=(directory)} \hspace{1cm} \text{(no default, initially empty)}

Used for \texttt{\tcbincludegraphics}\textsuperscript{P.264} and \texttt{\tcbincludepdf}\textsuperscript{P.266} to specify a file system \texttt{(directory)} where the image files are located.

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset{
  graphics directory=.,
  graphics directory=examples,
  graphics directory=../../pictures,
}
\end{verbatim}

The \texttt{\graphicspath} macro from the \texttt{graphics} package is superior to this option. \texttt{/tcb/graphics directory} may be used especially for \texttt{\tcbincludepdf}\textsuperscript{P.266}.

\texttt{/tcb/graphics pages=(selection)} \hspace{1cm} \text{(no default, initially 1,...,\texttt{\pdfpages})}

Used for \texttt{\tcbincludepdf}\textsuperscript{P.266} to specify a \texttt{(selection)} of pages to be included. The largest page number is accessible by \texttt{\pdfpages}. The \texttt{(selection)} has to be given using the \texttt{\foreach} syntax of \texttt{Ti\kern-0.1em kZ}.

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset{
  graphics pages=(1,3,7),
  graphics pages=(1,...,10),
  graphics pages=(1,3,...,18),
  graphics pages=(100,...,\pdfpages),
}
\end{verbatim}
\texttt{/tcb/graphics orientation=\textit{orientation}} (no default, initially \texttt{as-is})

Used for \texttt{tcbincludegraphics} ⇫ P.264 and \texttt{tcbincludepdf} ⇫ P.266 to guarantee a certain \textit{orientation} of the included image. After all other options for the image are processed, the result is possibly rotated to be in landscape or portrait mode.

Feasible values for \textit{orientation} are:

- \texttt{as-is}: no rotation of the processed image.
- \texttt{landscape}: the processed image is possibly rotated by 90 degrees to ensure that the final width is not smaller than the final height.
- \texttt{landscape*}: the processed image is possibly rotated by -90 degrees to ensure that the final width is not smaller than the final height.
- \texttt{portrait}: the processed image is possibly rotated by 90 degrees to ensure that the final height is not smaller than the final width.
- \texttt{portrait*}: the processed image is possibly rotated by -90 degrees to ensure that the final height is not smaller than the final width.

\begin{tcblandscape}[raster columns=6,size=fbox,raster equal height, colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!20!black,drop fuzzy shadow]
\tcbincludegraphics{Basilica_5.png}
\tcbincludegraphics[graphics orientation=landscape]{Basilica_5.png}
\tcbincludegraphics[graphics orientation=portrait]{Basilica_5.png}
\tcbincludegraphics[graphics orientation=portrait*]{Basilica_5.png}
\tcbincludegraphics[graphics options={viewport=0cm 0cm 2cm 3cm,clip}]{goldshade.png}
\tcbincludegraphics[graphics options={viewport=0cm 0cm 2cm 3cm,clip},
\hspace{1cm} graphics orientation=landscape]{goldshade.png}
\end{tcblandscape}
The \texttt{skins} library adds some image and picture fill options to the vast option set of \LaTeX\ [22]. These options can be used in any \texttt{tikzpicture}. For the following options, the \texttt{skins} library has to be loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbuselibrary{skins}
\end{verbatim}

See Section 10 on page 156 for the documentation of all other options of the \texttt{skins} library.

13.1 Fill Plain

\texttt{/tikz/fill plain image=⟨file name⟩} (no default, initially unset)

Fills the current path with an external image referenced by \texttt{⟨file name⟩}. The image is put in the center of the path, but it is not resized to fit into the path area.

\begin{verbatim}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[draw,fill plain image=goldshade.png]
(2.75,-0.75) -- (3,0) -- (2.75,0.75)
\foreach \w in {45,90,...,315}
{ -- (\w:1.5cm) } -- cycle;
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{/tikz/fill plain image*=⟨file name⟩} (no default, initially unset)

Fills the current path with an external image referenced by \texttt{⟨file name⟩}. The image is put in the center of the path, but it is not resized to fit into the path area. The \texttt{⟨graphics options⟩} are given to the underlying \texttt{\includegraphics} command.

\begin{verbatim}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[draw,
fill plain image*=\{width=2.5cm\} goldshade.png]
(2.75,-0.75) -- (3,0) -- (2.75,0.75)
\foreach \w in {45,90,...,315}
{ -- (\w:1.5cm) } -- cycle;
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{/tikz/fill plain picture=⟨graphical code⟩} (no default, initially unset)

Fills the current path with the given \texttt{⟨graphical code⟩}. The result is put in the center of the path, but it is not resized to fit into the path area. Note that this is almost identical to the standard path picture option.

\begin{verbatim}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[draw,fill plain picture=\%
\draw[red!50!yellow,line width=2mm]
(0,0) circle (1cm);
\draw[red,line width=5mm] (-1,-1) -- (1,1);
\draw[red,line width=5mm] (-1,1) -- (1,-1);
]}\]
(2.75,-0.75) -- (3,0) -- (2.75,0.75)
\foreach \w in {45,90,...,315}
{ -- (\w:1.5cm) } -- cycle;
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{verbatim}
13.2 Fill Stretch

/\texttt{tikz/fill\ stretch\ image}=\langle\text{file\ name}\rangle
(no\ default,\ initially\ unset)

Fills the current path with an external image referenced by \langle\text{file\ name}\rangle. The image is stretched to fill the path area.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[fill\ stretch\ image=goldshade.png]
(2.75,-0.75) -- (3,0) -- (2.75,0.75)
\foreach \w in {45,90,...,315}
{ -- (\w:1.5cm) } -- cycle;
\end{tikzpicture}

/\texttt{tikz/fill\ stretch\ image**}=\langle\text{graphics\ options}\rangle\langle\text{file\ name}\rangle
(no\ default,\ initially\ unset)

Fills the current path with an external image referenced by \langle\text{file\ name}\rangle. The \langle\text{graphics options}\rangle are given to the underlying \texttt{includegraphics} command. The image is stretched to fill the path area.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[fill\ stretch\ image**=
\{angle=90,origin=c\}\langle\text{goldshade.png}\rangle]
(2.75,-0.75) -- (3,0) -- (2.75,0.75)
\foreach \w in {45,90,...,315}
{ -- (\w:1.5cm) } -- cycle;
\end{tikzpicture}

/\texttt{tikz/fill\ stretch\ picture}=\langle\text{graphical\ code}\rangle
(no\ default,\ initially\ unset)

Fills the current path with the given \langle\text{graphical\ code}\rangle. The result is stretched to fill the path area.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[draw,fill\ stretch\ picture=
%\draw[red!50!yellow,line width=2mm]
\draw[red!50!yellow,line width=2mm]
(0,0) circle (1cm);
\draw[red,line width=5mm] (-1,-1) -- (1,1);
\draw[red,line width=5mm] (-1,1) -- (1,-1);
]
(2.75,-0.75) -- (3,0) -- (2.75,0.75)
\foreach \w in {45,90,...,315}
{ -- (\w:1.5cm) } -- cycle;
\end{tikzpicture}
13.3 Fill Overzoom

\tikz/fill overzoom image=(\textit{file name}) \quad \text{(no default, initially unset)}

Fills the current path with an external image referenced by \textit{(file name)}. The image is
zoomed such that the path area fills the image.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[fill overzoom image=goldshade.png]
(2.75,-0.75) -- (3,0) -- (2.75,0.75)
\foreach \w in {45,90,...,315}
{ -- (\w:1.5cm) } -- cycle;
\end{tikzpicture}

\tikz/fill overzoom image*=\{\textit{\texttt{graphics options}}}\{\textit{file name}\} \quad \text{(no default, initially unset)}

Fills the current path with an external image referenced by \textit{(file name)}. The \textit{(\texttt{graphics options})} are given to the underlying \texttt{includegraphics} command. The image is zoomed
such that the path area fills the image.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[fill overzoom image*=
\{\texttt{angle=90,origin=c}\}\{goldshade.png\}]
(2.75,-0.75) -- (3,0) -- (2.75,0.75)
\foreach \w in {45,90,...,315}
{ -- (\w:1.5cm) } -- cycle;
\end{tikzpicture}

\tikz/fill overzoom picture=\texttt{\textit{\texttt{graphical code}}} \quad \text{(no default, initially unset)}

Fills the current path with the given \texttt{(\textit{graphical code})}. The result is zoomed such that the
path area fills the image.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[draw,fill overzoom picture={%}
\draw[red!50!yellow,line width=2mm]
(0,0) circle (1cm);
\draw[red,line width=5mm] (-1,-1) -- (1,1);
\draw[red,line width=5mm] (-1,1) -- (1,-1);
]
(2.75,-0.75) -- (3,0) -- (2.75,0.75)
\foreach \w in {45,90,...,315}
{ -- (\w:1.5cm) } -- cycle;
\end{tikzpicture}
13.4 Fill Zoom

/tikz/fill zoom image=(file name) (no default, initially unset)
Fills the current path with an external image referenced by \textit{file name}. The image is zoomed such that it fits inside the path area. Typically, some parts of the path area will stay unfilled.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[draw,fill zoom image=goldshade.png]
(2.75,-0.75) -- (3,0) -- (2.75,0.75)
\foreach \w in {45,90,...,315}
{ -- (\w:1.5cm) } -- cycle;
\end{tikzpicture}

/tikz/fill zoom image*=\{\textit{graphics options}\}\{\textit{file name}\} (no default, initially unset)
Fills the current path with an external image referenced by \textit{file name}. The \textit{graphics options} are given to the underlying \texttt{\includegraphics} command. The image is zoomed such that it fits inside the path area. Typically, some parts of the path area will stay unfilled.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[draw,fill zoom image*=\{angle=90,origin=c\}\{goldshade.png\}]
(2.75,-0.75) -- (3,0) -- (2.75,0.75)
\foreach \w in {45,90,...,315}
{ -- (\w:1.5cm) } -- cycle;
\end{tikzpicture}

/tikz/fill zoom picture=(graphical code) (no default, initially unset)
Fills the current path with the given \textit{graphical code}. The result is zoomed such that it fits inside the path area. Typically, some parts of the path area will stay unfilled.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[draw,fill zoom picture=%
\draw[red!50!yellow,line width=2mm]
(0,0) circle (1cm);
\draw[red,line width=5mm] (-1,-1) -- (1,1);
\draw[red,line width=5mm] (-1,1) -- (1,-1);
)]
(2.75,-0.75) -- (3,0) -- (2.75,0.75)
\foreach \w in {45,90,...,315}
{ -- (\w:1.5cm) } -- cycle;
\end{tikzpicture}
13.5 Fill Shrink

/tikz/fill shrink image=(file name) (no default, initially unset)
Fills the current path with an external image referenced by (file name). The image is
zoomed such that it fits inside the path area, but it never gets enlarged. Typically, some
parts of the path area will stay unfilled.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[draw,fill shrink image=goldshade.png]
(2.75,-0.75) -- (3,0) -- (2.75,0.75)
\foreach \w in {45,90,...,315}
{ -- (\w:1.5cm) } -- cycle;
\end{tikzpicture}

/tikz/fill shrink image*=(file name) (no default, initially unset)
Fills the current path with an external image referenced by (file name). The (graphics
options) are given to the underlying includegraphics command. The image is zoomed
such that it fits inside the path area, but it never gets enlarged. Typically, some parts of
the path area will stay unfilled.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[draw,
fill shrink image*={width=1.5cm}{goldshade.png}]
(2.75,-0.75) -- (3,0) -- (2.75,0.75)
\foreach \w in {45,90,...,315}
{ -- (\w:1.5cm) } -- cycle;
\end{tikzpicture}

/tikz/fill shrink picture=(graphical code) (no default, initially unset)
Fills the current path with the given (graphical code). The result is zoomed such that it
fits inside the path area, but it never gets enlarged. Typically, some parts of the path area
will stay unfilled.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[draw,fill shrink picture={%
\draw[red!50!yellow,line width=2mm]
(0,0) circle (1cm);
\draw[red,line width=5mm] (-1,-1) -- (1,1);
\draw[red,line width=5mm] (-1,1) -- (1,-1);
}]
(2.75,-0.75) -- (3,0) -- (2.75,0.75)
\foreach \w in {45,90,...,315}
{ -- (\w:1.5cm) } -- cycle;
\end{tikzpicture}
13.6 Fill Tile

/tikz/fill tile image=(file name) (no default, initially unset)
Fills the current path with a tile pattern using an external image referenced by \textit{file name}.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[fill tile image=pink_marble.png]
(2.75,-0.75) -- (3.0) -- (2.75,0.75)
\foreach \w in {45,90,...,315}
{ -- (\w:1.5cm) } -- cycle;
\end{tikzpicture}

/tikz/fill tile image*={(graphics options)}{(file name)} (no default, initially unset)
Fills the current path with a tile pattern using an external image referenced by \textit{file name}. The \textit{graphics options} are given to the underlying \texttt{\includegraphics} command.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[fill tile image*={width=1cm}{pink_marble.png}]
(2.75,-0.75) -- (3.0) -- (2.75,0.75)
\foreach \w in {45,90,...,315}
{ -- (\w:1.5cm) } -- cycle;
\end{tikzpicture}

/tikz/fill tile picture=(graphical code) (no default, initially unset)
Fills the current path with a tile pattern using the given \textit{graphical code}.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[draw,fill tile picture={%}
\draw[red!50!yellow,line width=2mm]
(0,0) circle (1cm);
\draw[red,line width=5mm] (-1,-1) -- (1,1);
\draw[red,line width=5mm] (-1,1) -- (1,-1);
\}
(2.75,-0.75) -- (3.0) -- (2.75,0.75)
\foreach \w in {45,90,...,315}
{ -- (\w:1.5cm) } -- cycle;
\end{tikzpicture}

/tikz/fill tile picture*={(fraction)}{(graphical code)} (no default, initially unset)
Fills the current path with a tile pattern using the given \textit{graphical code}. The graphic is resized by \textit{fraction}.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[draw,fill tile picture*={0.25}{%}
\draw[red!50!yellow,line width=2mm]
(0,0) circle (1cm);
\draw[red,line width=5mm] (-1,-1) -- (1,1);
\draw[red,line width=5mm] (-1,1) -- (1,-1);
\}
(2.75,-0.75) -- (3.0) -- (2.75,0.75)
\foreach \w in {45,90,...,315}
{ -- (\w:1.5cm) } -- cycle;
\end{tikzpicture}
13.7 Filling Options

/tikz/fill image opacity=(fraction)  
(no default, initially 1.0)
Sets the fill opacity for the image or picture fill options to the given \(\text{fraction}\).

\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[fill stretch image=goldshade.png] (0,0) circle (1cm);
\path[fill=red,fill stretch image=goldshade.png,fill image opacity=0.75] (2,0) circle (1cm);
\path[fill=red,fill stretch image=goldshade.png,fill image opacity=0.5] (4,0) circle (1cm);
\path[fill=red,fill stretch image=goldshade.png,fill image opacity=0.25] (6,0) circle (1cm);
\path[fill=red] (8,0) circle (1cm);
\end{tikzpicture}

/tikz/fill image scale=(fraction)  
(no default, initially 1.0)
Stretches, zooms, overzooms or shrinks the image or picture to the given \(\text{fraction}\) of the width and height of the current path.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[draw,fill zoom image=goldshade.png] (0,0) rectangle +(2,2);
\path[draw,fill zoom image=goldshade.png,fill image scale=0.75] (3,0) rectangle +(2,2);
\path[draw,fill zoom image=goldshade.png,fill image scale=1.5] (6,0) rectangle +(2,2);
\end{tikzpicture}

/tikz/fill image options=(graphics options)  
(no default, initially empty)
The \(\text{graphics options}\) are given to the underlying \texttt{\includegraphics} command for the image fill options. This can be just together with \texttt{/tikz/fill stretch image}^P.270, \texttt{/tikz/fill overzoom image}^P.271, \texttt{/tikz/fill zoom image}^P.272, and \texttt{/tikz/fill tile image}^P.274.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[fill image options={width=1cm},
      fill tile image=pink_marble.png] (2.75,-0.75) -- (3,0) -- (2.75,0.75)
\foreach \w in {45,90,...,315}
  { -- (\w:1.5cm) } -- cycle;
\end{tikzpicture}
13.8 Straightening of the Arcs

This patch is considered as an experimental feature. It changes some of the original TikZ code. This change may break with future updates of TikZ.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\node[fill stretch image=blueshade.png] (A) at (120:3cm) {A};
\node[fill stretch image=goldshade.png] (B) at (60:3cm) {B};
\node[preaction={fill stretch image=blueshade.png},
      fill stretch image=goldshade.png,
      fill image opacity=0.5] (C) {C};
\path (A) -- node{$+$} (B);
\draw[->,very thick] (A)--(C);
\draw[->,very thick] (B)--(C);
\end{tikzpicture}

\texttt{\texttt{tcbpatcharcangular}}

The TikZ package provides a nice \texttt{rounded corners} option to replace all corners by little arcs. \texttt{\texttt{tcbpatcharcangular}} is a patch which straightens the arcs. To say it more prosaic, the little arcs are replaced by little straight lines.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\draw[thick,rounded corners=8pt]
(0,0) -- (0,2) -- (1,3.25) -- (2,2) -- (2,0) -- (0,2) -- (2,2) -- (0,0) -- (2,0);
\tcbpatcharcangular
\draw[thick,rounded corners=8pt,xshift=2.5cm]
(0,0) -- (0,2) -- (1,3.25) -- (2,2) -- (2,0) -- (0,2) -- (2,2) -- (0,0) -- (2,0);
\end{tikzpicture}

\texttt{\texttt{tcbpatcharcround}}

This macro reverts \texttt{\texttt{tcbpatcharcangular}}, i.e., the patch from \texttt{\texttt{tcbpatcharcangular}} is replaced by the original code.
13.9 Extracting Node Dimensions

The following auxiliary macros are defined by the \texttt{skins} library. They allow to determine the width and height of an arbitrary \LaTeX{} node. To be more specific, they determine the east-to-west and the north-to-south dimensions which may be not the maximal dimensions for a non-rectangular node. Note that the following dimensions are measured exactly including the line width of the border line. If a new rectangle or node with the same dimensions and a border is to be drawn, this border width has to be substracted.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\node[align=center,draw=red,fill=yellow] (A) {This is my\ example node};
\tcbsetmacrotowidthofnode\mywidth{A}
\tcbsetmacrotoheightofnode\myheight{A}
\path[fill=blue!25!white] % rectangle without border
\hspace{2mm}(A.south east) rectangle node{Copy} +\mywidth,\myheight;
\node[draw=blue,fill=blue!25!white, % standard border width 0.4pt
minimum width=\mywidth-0.4pt, % minus width of border
minimum height=\myheight-0.4pt % minus height of border
] at (A) {Copy 2};
\end{tikzpicture}

13.10 Hyper Nodes

The following auxiliary macro is defined by the \texttt{skins} library.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\node[align=center,draw=red,fill=red!5] (mybutton) {Click me to jump to Section~\ref*{sec:tikzimagefilling}};
\tcbhypernode\hyperref[sec:tikzimagefilling]{mybutton}
\end{tikzpicture}

Click me to jump to Section 13
\textbf{14 \ Beamer Support}

The \texttt{skins} library adds some supporting options for the \texttt{beamer} package \cite{beamer}. For the following options, the \texttt{skins} library has to be loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbuselibrary{skins}
\end{verbatim}

See Section 10 on page 156 for the documentation of all other options of the \texttt{skins} library.

\begin{verbatim}
/\texttt{tcb/only}=\langle overlay specification\rangle\{\langle options\rangle\} \quad \text{(style, no default, initially unset)}
\end{verbatim}

Sets the given \texttt{tcolorbox} \texttt{\langle options\rangle} in dependency of a \texttt{beamer} \texttt{\langle overlay specification\rangle}. Note that this needs the \texttt{beamer} class \cite{beamer}. The \texttt{\langle options\rangle} will only be used on the specified \texttt{beamer} frames.

\begin{verbatim}
\documentclass{beamer}
\usepackage[many]{tcolorbox}
\begin{document}
\begin{frame}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title,fonttitle=\textbf{\textcolor{red!50!black}}
\textcolor{red!10},colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10,colbacktitle=red,
sidebyside,righthand width=3cm,
lowerbox=invisible,lower separated=false,
drop lifted shadow,
only=<1>{colbacktitle=yellow,coltitle=red!50!black,colframe=red},
only=<3>{colback=yellow!50,\textcolor{red}{watermark text=Attention!}},
only=<3->{lowerbox=visible}
\]
This is a test.
\begin{itemize}[<+->]
  \item One
  \item Two
  \item \textbf{Three}
  \item Four
\end{itemize}
\begin{equation*}
\int_{1}^{x} \frac{1}{t} \, dt = \ln(x).
\end{equation*}
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{frame}
\end{document}
\end{verbatim}
\documentclass{beamer}
\usepackage[most]{tcolorbox}
\begin{document}
\begin{frame}[fragile]
\begin{tcblisting}{beamer,colback=blue!5,colframe=blue!20!gray,coltitle=yellow,
title=Example,
only=<1>{lowerbox=invisible},only=<2>{}
This is an \textbf{example listing}
\end{tcblisting}
\end{frame}
\end{document}
Sets the `/tcb/beamer alerted` style in dependency of a `beamer ⟨overlay specification⟩`. `/tcb/beamer alerted` can be redefined for customization.

This style is not intended to be used directly, but in concealed way by applying `/tcb/alert`. The style can be redefined.

The following examples use `tcbitemize`\textsuperscript{P.300} from `raster` for convenient use of a list of boxes which are uncovered one by one.
\documentclass{beamer}
\usepackage[most]{tcolorbox}
\begin{document}
\begin{frame}
\begin{tcbitemize}[raster equal height=rows, enhanced, colback=blue!5, colframe=blue!20!gray, coltitle=yellow, beamer hidden/.style={invisible, interior hidden, colframe=blue!20!gray!15}, beamer alerted/.style={colframe=red!50!gray}, ]
\tcbitem [title=One, alert=<1>]
First Statement
\tcbitem [title=Two, hide=<-1>, alert=<2>]
Second Statement
\tcbitem [title=Three, hide=<-2>, alert=<3>]
Test
\tcbitem [title=Four, hide=<-3>, alert=<4>]
\begin{equation*}
\int_{1}^{x} \frac{1}{t} \, dt = \ln(x).
\end{equation*}
\tcbitem [title=Five, hide=<-4>, alert=<5>]
\includegraphics[width=1cm]{goldshade.png}
\tcbitem [title=Six, hide=<-5>, alert=<6>]
Test
\end{tcbitemize}
\end{frame}
\end{document}
\documentclass{beamer}
\usepackage[most]{tcolorbox}
\begin{document}
\begin{frame}
\begin{tcbitemize}[
\raster equal height=rows,
beamer,colback=blue!5,colframe=blue!20!gray,coltitle=yellow,
beamer']
\tcbitem[title=One,alert=<1>]
First Statement
\tcbitem[title=Two,hide=<-1>,alert=<2>]
Second Statement
\tcbitem[title=Three,hide=<-2>,alert=<3>]
Three
Test
\[ \int_{1}^{x} \frac{1}{t} \, dt = \ln(x). \]
\tcbitem[title=Four,alert=<4>]
\[ \int_{1}^{x} \frac{1}{t} \, dt = \ln(x). \]
\tcbitem[title=Five,alert=<5>]
\[ \int_{1}^{x} \frac{1}{t} \, dt = \ln(x). \]
\tcbitem[title=Six,alert=<6>]
Test
\end{tcbitemize}
\end{frame}
\end{document}
\begin{equation*}
\int_{1}^{x} \frac{1}{t} \, dt = \ln(x).
\end{equation*}
15 Library \vignette

The library is loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

\tcbuselibrary{vignette}

This also loads the \texttt{skins} library, see Section 10 on page 156, and the \texttt{fadings} library of \texttt{tikz} [22].

15.1 Vignette Drawing

\tcbvignette\{options\}

In this context, a \texttt{vignette} is a four part rectangular frame. It is constructed as several Ti\texttt{k}Z paths and, therefore, can only be used inside a \texttt{tikzpicture} environment or inside \texttt{tcolorbox} \textsuperscript{P.12} options.

The \{options\} control position, size and style settings of the vignette. Theses options have the common key path /tcb/vig/ and are described in the following.

The next examples show direct \tcbvignette usage without a \texttt{tcolorbox} \textsuperscript{P.12}.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\tcbvignette{}
\end{tikzpicture}

\begin{tikzpicture}
\node[draw,fill=blue!15!white] (A) {Test};
\tcbvignette{outside node=A,raised color=blue}
\end{tikzpicture}

\begin{tikzpicture}
\node[draw,fill=blue!15!white] (A) {Another Test};
\tcbvignette{size=3mm,outside node=A,
 north style=red,east style=yellow,
 south style=blue,west style=green}
\end{tikzpicture}

\begin{tikzpicture}
\node[inner sep=3mm,fill=red!75] (A) {Test};
\tcbvignette{over node=A,fade in}
\end{tikzpicture}

\tcbvignette can be used directly inside appropriate options keys for \texttt{tcolorbox} \textsuperscript{P.12}. Note that options like /tcb/underlay \textsuperscript{P.203} need /tcb/enhanced \textsuperscript{P.217} or similar settings.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,size=small,sharp corners,
colback=green!10,colframe=green!50!black,
boxrule=1mm,titlerule=0mm,
title=My title,center title,fonttitle=\textbf{series},
underlay={\tcbvignette[size=1mm,inside node=frame,
 raised color=green!50!black]}]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
Mostly, convenient short cuts like `/tcb/underlay vignette`\(^{P.292}\) can be used to add a vignette to a `tcolorbox`\(^{P.12}\). Here, \texttt{\textbackslash tcbvignette} is used internally.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,size=small,sharp corners, colback=green!10,colframe=green!50!black, boxrule=1mm,titlerule=0mm, title=My title,center title,fonttitle=\bfseries, underlay vignette]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

15.2 Generic Geometry Settings

\texttt{/tcb/vig/xmin}={\langle length\rangle} (no default, initially 0pt)
Sets the lower horizontal limit of a \texttt{\textbackslash tcbvignette} \(^{P.284}\).

\texttt{/tcb/vig/xmax}={\langle length\rangle} (no default, initially 1cm)
Sets the upper horizontal limit of a \texttt{\textbackslash tcbvignette} \(^{P.284}\).

\texttt{/tcb/vig/ymin}={\langle length\rangle} (no default, initially 0pt)
Sets the lower vertical limit of a \texttt{\textbackslash tcbvignette} \(^{P.284}\).

\texttt{/tcb/vig/ymax}={\langle length\rangle} (no default, initially 1cm)
Sets the upper vertical limit of a \texttt{\textbackslash tcbvignette} \(^{P.284}\).

\begin{tikzpicture}
\fill [black!20] (0,0) rectangle (3,2);
\path [pattern=checkerboard,pattern color=black!30](0,0) rectangle (3,2);
\texttt{\textbackslash tcbvignette}\{xmin=1cm,xmax=2.5cm,ymin=0.5cm,ymax=1.75cm\}
\end{tikzpicture}

\texttt{/tcb/vig/lower left corner}={\langle coordinates\rangle} (style, initially 0,0)
Sets the lower left corner of a \texttt{\textbackslash tcbvignette} \(^{P.284}\). This style sets /tcb/vig/xmin and /tcb/vig/ymin.

\texttt{/tcb/vig/upper right corner}={\langle coordinates\rangle} (style, initially 1,1)
Sets the upper right corner of a \texttt{\textbackslash tcbvignette} \(^{P.284}\). This style sets /tcb/vig/xmax and /tcb/vig/ymax.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\fill [black!20] (0,0) rectangle (3,2);
\path [pattern=checkerboard,pattern color=black!30](0,0) rectangle (3,2);
\texttt{\textbackslash tcbvignette}\{lower left corner={1,0.5},
\quad upper right corner={2.5,1.75}\}
\end{tikzpicture}

\texttt{/tcb/vig/inside node}={\langle name\rangle} (style, initially unset)
Places the \texttt{\textbackslash tcbvignette} \(^{P.284}\) inside the node with the given \langle name\rangle. The outer limits of the vignette are adapted to the node geometry.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\node[minimum width=2cm,minimum height=1cm] (A) {Node A};
\texttt{\textbackslash tcbvignette}\{inside node=A\}
\draw[very thick] (A.south west) rectangle (A.north east);
\end{tikzpicture}
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \node[minimum width=2cm, minimum height=1cm] (A) {Node A};
  \tcbvignette[name=\texttt{outside node=A}]
  \draw[very thick] (A.south west) rectangle (A.north east);
\end{tikzpicture}

\begin{tikzpicture}
  \node[minimum width=2cm, minimum height=1cm] (A) {Node A};
  \tcbvignette[over node offset=1mm, over node=A]
  \draw[very thick] (A.south west) rectangle (A.north east);
\end{tikzpicture}

\begin{tikzpicture}
  \tcbvignette[north size=4mm]
\end{tikzpicture}

\begin{tikzpicture}
  \tcbvignette[south size=4mm]
\end{tikzpicture}

\begin{tikzpicture}
  \tcbvignette[east size=4mm]
\end{tikzpicture}

\begin{tikzpicture}
  \tcbvignette[west size=4mm]
\end{tikzpicture}
/tcb/vig/vertical size=(length) \begin{tikzpicture} \tcbvignette{vertical size=4mm} \end{tikzpicture}

/tcb/vig/horizontal size=(length) \begin{tikzpicture} \tcbvignette{horizontal size=4mm} \end{tikzpicture}

/tcb/vig/size=(length) \begin{tikzpicture} \tcbvignette{size=4mm} \end{tikzpicture}

/tcb/vig/north size=P.286 and /tcb/vig/south size=P.286, to the given \langle length \rangle.

/tcb/vig/east size=P.286 and /tcb/vig/west size=P.286, to the given \langle length \rangle.

/tcb/vig/north size=P.286, /tcb/vig/south size=P.286, etc. have to be set before /tcb/vig/outside node=P.286 is used.

15.3 Generic Color and Style Settings

/tcb/vig/north style={(style)} \begin{tikzpicture} \tcbvignette{north style=blue} \end{tikzpicture}

/tcb/vig/south style={(style)} \begin{tikzpicture} \tcbvignette{south style={draw=blue,fill=yellow}} \end{tikzpicture}

/tcb/vig/east style={(style)} \begin{tikzpicture} \tcbvignette{east style={left color=yellow!75!black, right color=blue!75!black}} \end{tikzpicture}

Sets Ti\kZ\langle\textit{style}\rangle options for the north \textit{vignette} part.

Sets Ti\kZ\langle\textit{style}\rangle options for the south \textit{vignette} part.

Sets Ti\kZ\langle\textit{style}\rangle options for the east \textit{vignette} part.

Sets Ti\kZ\langle\textit{style}\rangle options for the north vignette part.
Sets TikZ \langle style \rangle options for the west vignette part.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\tcbvignette{west style={preaction={fill=black!20},
 pattern=checkerboard,
 pattern color=black!30}}
\end{tikzpicture}

The four vignette parts are drawn inside a TikZ scope environment which takes the given \langle style \rangle as option.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\tcbvignette{scope={transparency group,opacity=0.25}}
\end{tikzpicture}

Creates a raised frame impression by setting the four style options \texttt{/tcb/vig/north style}, \texttt{/tcb/vig/south style}, \texttt{/tcb/vig/east style}, and \texttt{/tcb/vig/west style} to darkened and lightened variations of the given \langle color \rangle.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\tcbvignette{raised color=blue}
\end{tikzpicture}

Creates a lowered frame impression by setting the four style options \texttt{/tcb/vig/north style}, \texttt{/tcb/vig/south style}, \texttt{/tcb/vig/east style}, and \texttt{/tcb/vig/west style} to darkened and lightened variations of the given \langle color \rangle.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\tcbvignette{lowered color=green!75!black}
\end{tikzpicture}

Sets the four style options \texttt{/tcb/vig/north style}, \texttt{/tcb/vig/south style}, \texttt{/tcb/vig/east style}, and \texttt{/tcb/vig/west style} such that the color shades from the \langle inner \rangle color to the \langle outer \rangle color.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\tcbvignette{color from=red to blue!50}
\end{tikzpicture}

Sets the base color for \texttt{/tcb/vig/raised color}, \texttt{/tcb/vig/lowered color}, \texttt{/tcb/finish fading vignette}. Typically, this value has not to be set directly.
Especially, if shadings or fadings are used, the drawn \textit{vignette} graphs are displayed sometimes not as perfect as expected. Glitches and imperfections are very dependent on the previewer software. The \texttt{/tcb/vig/draw method} intends to give a choice of alternative drawing methods.

- \texttt{direct}: The \textit{vignette} parts are drawn/filled by using a single Ti\textit{k}Z graph. This is the preferred (and default) method for solid color graphs.
- \texttt{clipped}: The \textit{vignette} parts are drawn somewhat oversized and are clipped to the intended region. In combination with shadings and fadings this seems to give a better/different optical result (depends on the previewer).

\begin{tikzpicture}
\tcbvignette
\end{tikzpicture}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tcbvignette[color from=red to yellow,draw method=clipped]
\end{tikzpicture}

This option is a stopgap and may be changed or preferably removed in future.

15.4 Generic Fading Settings

The \texttt{fadings} library of \textit{tikz} \cite{tikzmanual} is loaded automatically by the \texttt{vignette} library. Amongst others, the fadings \texttt{west}, \texttt{east}, \texttt{north}, and \texttt{south} are defined inside the \texttt{fadings} library.

The \texttt{vignette} library adds some more fadings called \texttt{semi west}, \texttt{semi east}, \texttt{semi north}, and \texttt{semi south}. These fadings are much \textit{weaker} than the normal fadings.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\fill [black!20] (0,0) rectangle (1,1);
\path [pattern=checkerboard,pattern color=black!30] (0,0) rectangle (1,1);
\fill [path fading=semi west,blue] (0,0) rectangle (1,1);
\end{tikzpicture}

\begin{table}
\centering
\begin{tabular}{|c|c|}
\hline
\texttt{west} & \texttt{east} \\
\hline
\texttt{north} & \texttt{south} \\
\hline
\texttt{semi west} & \texttt{semi east} \\
\hline
\texttt{semi north} & \texttt{semi south} \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{table}
Sets the four style options /tcb/vig/north style\(^P\cdot287\), /tcb/vig/south style\(^P\cdot287\), /tcb/vig/east style\(^P\cdot287\), and /tcb/vig/west style\(^P\cdot288\) such that the paths fade from outside to inside.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\fill [black!20] (-0.5,-0.5) rectangle (1.5,1.5);
\path [pattern=checkerboard,pattern color=black!30] (-0.5,-0.5) rectangle (1.5,1.5);
\tcbvignette{fade in=blue}
\end{tikzpicture}

Sets the four style options /tcb/vig/north style\(^P\cdot287\), /tcb/vig/south style\(^P\cdot287\), /tcb/vig/east style\(^P\cdot287\), and /tcb/vig/west style\(^P\cdot288\) such that the paths fade from inside to outside.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\fill [black!20] (-0.5,-0.5) rectangle (1.5,1.5);
\path [pattern=checkerboard,pattern color=black!30] (-0.5,-0.5) rectangle (1.5,1.5);
\tcbvignette{fade out=blue}
\end{tikzpicture}

Sets the four style options /tcb/vig/north style\(^P\cdot287\), /tcb/vig/south style\(^P\cdot287\), /tcb/vig/east style\(^P\cdot287\), and /tcb/vig/west style\(^P\cdot288\) such that the paths fade weak from outside to inside.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\fill [black!20] (-0.5,-0.5) rectangle (1.5,1.5);
\path [pattern=checkerboard,pattern color=black!30] (-0.5,-0.5) rectangle (1.5,1.5);
\tcbvignette{semi fade in=blue}
\end{tikzpicture}

Sets the four style options /tcb/vig/north style\(^P\cdot287\), /tcb/vig/south style\(^P\cdot287\), /tcb/vig/east style\(^P\cdot287\), and /tcb/vig/west style\(^P\cdot288\) such that the paths fade weak from inside to outside.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\fill [black!20] (-0.5,-0.5) rectangle (1.5,1.5);
\path [pattern=checkerboard,pattern color=black!30] (-0.5,-0.5) rectangle (1.5,1.5);
\tcbvignette{semi fade out=blue}
\end{tikzpicture}
It is possible to assign different fadings for each side of the vignette, if needed. Therefore, the fadings have to be applied individually with the four style options \texttt{/tcb/vig/north style}, \texttt{/tcb/vig/south style}, \texttt{/tcb/vig/east style}, and \texttt{/tcb/vig/west style}.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\fill [black!20] (-0.5,-0.5) rectangle (1.5,1.5);
\path [pattern=checkerboard,pattern color=black!30] (-0.5,-0.5) rectangle (1.5,1.5);
\tcbvignette{
  north style={blue,path fading=south},
  east style ={blue,path fading=semi west},
  south style={blue,path fading=semi north},
  west style ={blue,path fading=east}
}
\end{tikzpicture}

\begin{tikzpicture}
\fill [black!20] (-0.5,-0.5) rectangle (1.5,1.5);
\path [pattern=checkerboard,pattern color=black!30] (-0.5,-0.5) rectangle (1.5,1.5);
\tcbvignette{
  north style={blue,path fading=west},
  east style ={blue,path fading=south},
  south style={red,path fading=east},
  west style ={red,path fading=north}
}
\end{tikzpicture}
15.5 Vignette as Underlay

This puts a \texttt{\tcbvignette} \textsuperscript{P.284} with the given \texttt{\langle\texttt{options}\rangle} as \texttt{\tcb/underlay} \textsuperscript{P.203} to a \texttt{tcolorbox} \textsuperscript{P.12}. The dimensions of the \textit{vignette} are matched to the dimensions of the \texttt{tcolorbox} \textsuperscript{P.12}. For example, \texttt{\tcb/leftrule} \textsuperscript{P.35} is used as \texttt{\tcb/vig/west size} \textsuperscript{P.286}. Also, \texttt{\tcb/colframe} \textsuperscript{P.27} is used as \texttt{\tcb/vig/raised color} \textsuperscript{P.288}.

For a \texttt{\tcb/breakable} \textsuperscript{P.389} \texttt{tcolorbox}, the \textit{vignette} is also been broken. Alternatively, \texttt{\tcbvignette} \textsuperscript{P.284} could be used directly inside an \texttt{\tcb/underlay} \textsuperscript{P.203} with appropriate settings.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,size=small,sharp corners,  
colback=green!10,colframe=green!50!black,  
boxrule=2mm,titlerule=0mm,  
title=My title,center title,fonttitle=\bfseries,  
underlay vignette]  
This is a tcolorbox.  
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,size=small,arc=0pt,  
colback=blue!10,colframe=blue,boxrule=2mm,  
underlay vignette={size=1.5mm}]  
This is a tcolorbox.  
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,size=small,sharp corners,  
colframe=red,interior hidden,boxrule=2mm,  
colupper=white,center upper,fontupper=\bfseries,  
underlay vignette]  
This is a tcolorbox.  
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,size=small,sharp corners,  
colback=red!50!yellow,frame hidden,boxrule=2mm,  
underlay vignette={color from=red!50!yellow to white,  
draw method=clipped,size=2.1mm}]  
This is a tcolorbox.  
\end{tcolorbox}

\tcbox[enhanced,sharp corners,colback=red!10,colframe=red]{Test}
\tcbox[enhanced,sharp corners,colback=red!10,colframe=red,  
underlay vignette]{Test}
This is a special style derived from /tcb/underlay vignette\textsuperscript{P.292}, where the frame color is shaded to create a soft raised frame impression.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,sharp corners, colback=green!10, colframe=green!50!black, size=small,boxrule=2mm,titlerule=0mm, title=My title,center title,fonttitle={\bfseries}, underlay raised shading vignette] This is a tcolorbox. \end{tcolorbox}

This style gives a similar effect as /tcb/underlay raised shading vignette, but a path fading is used here. Different optical impression are very previewer-dependent.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,sharp corners, colback=green!10, colframe=green!50!black, size=small,boxrule=2mm,titlerule=0mm, title=My title,center title,fonttitle={\bfseries}, underlay raised fading vignette] This is a tcolorbox. \end{tcolorbox}

This is a special style derived from /tcb/underlay vignette\textsuperscript{P.292}, where the frame color is shaded into the interior color.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,sharp corners,frame hidden, colback=green!10, colframe=green!50!black, size=small,boxrule=2mm,titlerule=0mm, title=My title,center title,fonttitle={\bfseries}, underlay shade in vignette] This is a tcolorbox. \end{tcolorbox}
15.6 Vignette as Finish

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,size=small, colback=green!10,colframe=green!50!black, boxrule=0.5mm,titlerule=0mm, title=My title,center title,fonttitle=\bfseries, finish vignette={size=1mm}]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

\tcbincludegraphics[blankest,width=3cm, finish vignette={size=3mm}]{pink_marble.png}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,size=small, colback=green!10,colframe=green!50!black, boxrule=0.5mm,titlerule=0mm, title=My title,center title,fonttitle=\bfseries, finish raised fading vignette={size=1mm}]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

\tcbincludegraphics[blankest,width=3cm, finish raised fading vignette={size=3mm}]{pink_marble.png}
This puts a `\tcbvignette` with the given \textit{options} as `\tcb/finish` to a `tcolorbox`. The default style settings fade the box into white from inside to outside. Note that `\tcb/vig/over node` is used here. `\tcb/vig/over node offset` can be adapted to overlap the box more or less. The fade color can be set using `\tcb/vig/base color`.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,size=small, colback=green!10,colframe=green!50!black, boxrule=0.5mm,titlerule=0mm, title=My title,center title,fonttitle=\bfseries, finish fading vignette={size=2mm}]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=blue!50!black,size=small, title=Example]
\tcbincludetruegraphics[blankest,width=3cm, finish fading vignette={base color=blue!50!black,size=3mm, over node offset=0.2mm}]{pink_marble.png}
\end{tcolorbox}
The library is loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

```
\usepackage{raster}
```

### 16.1 Concept of Rasters

A *raster* is used to align several colored boxes in a regular way. It can be seen as a far related counterpart to the *matrix* construct of TikZ, but it differs in many aspects.

In principle, *tcolorbox*es are arranged in rows and columns when put inside a `\tcbraster` environment. The boxes are fluently added to the raster like adding text to a paragraph. Especially, line/row breaks are done automatically and one cannot end a line/row ahead of schedule. Further, a *raster* is not restricted to a single page but may break into an arbitrary series of pages.


16.2 Macros of the Library

\begin{tcbraster}[(options)]
\begin{environment content}
\end{tcbraster}

A raster arranges enclosed boxes in a regular way, mainly into rows and columns. The \textit{(options)} are used to control the raster parameters and to set the properties for the enclosed boxes.

- The \textit{raster} is only allowed to contain a series of \texttt{tcolorbox}^\textit{P.12} environments or derived constructs. With some small restrictions, boxes created with \texttt{tcboxfit}^\textit{P.438} can also be added. Boxes created with \texttt{tcbox}^\textit{P.14} are not reasonable here, but may be used to a certain degree.
- Do not add anything else between the boxes inside the raster with exception of white-space. Especially, do not use \texttt{\\} or \texttt{\par} to end a row; row breaks are done automatically.
- The boxes inside a raster are numbered automatically. \texttt{\thetcbrasternum} may be used inside a box to access this number. The \LaTeX\ counter \texttt{tcbrastercolumn} holds the current column, the counter \texttt{tcbrasterrow} holds the current row, and the counter \texttt{tcbrasternum} holds the current box number.

\begin{tcbraster}[raster columns=3, raster equal height, size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white,colbacktitle=red!50!white, title={Box \texttt{\thetcbrasternum}}]
\begin{tcolorbox}First box\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}Second box\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}This is a box\ with\ a\ second\ line\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}Another box\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}A box again\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcbraster}

\begin{tcbraster}[raster columns=2, raster equal height=rows, size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white,colbacktitle=red!50!white, title={Box \texttt{\thetcbrasternum}}]
\begin{tcolorbox}First box\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}Second box\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}This is a box\ with\ a\ second\ line\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}Another box\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}A box again\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcbraster}
This is a special case of a `tcbraster` with the given \textit{options}.  

- Here, the enclosed boxes are created using `\tcbitem`.
- There has to be at least one `\tcbitem`.
- One cannot use anything else than `\tcbitem` to add something to the raster.

This leads to a very compact syntax.

\begin{tcbitemize}
[\textit{options}]
\end{tcbitemize}

\begin{tcbitemize}
\item First box
\item Second box
\item This is a box with a second line
\item A box again
\end{tcbitemize}

\tcbitemize has more restrictions than `tcbraster`. Especially, the `\texttt{tcb/capture}` mode has to be `\texttt{minipage}`. For example, `\texttt{tcb/fit}` cannot be used safely. If `\texttt{tcb/fit}` should be used, turn over to `tcbraster`.

\texttt{tcbitem} with \textit{options}

\tcbitem with \textit{options}
This is a convenience environment which combines a `tcolorbox` with an embedded `tcbraster`. The `box options` are given to the outer `tcolorbox`, while the `raster options` are given to the embedded `tcbraster`. This environment is especially useful for rasters inside rasters.

\begin{tcboxedraster}
\begin{tcolorbox}First box\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}Second box\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}This is a box with a second line\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}Another box\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}A box again\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcboxedraster}

\begin{tcboxedraster}[raster columns=3, raster equal height, size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white,colbacktitle=red!50!white, title={Box \# \the\tcbasternum}]
\begin{tcolorbox}First box\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}Second box\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}This is a box with a second line\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}Another box\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}A box again\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcboxedraster}

\begin{tcbraster}[raster columns=2, raster equal height, raster every box/.style={size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white, valign=center,halign=center}]
\begin{tcolorbox}One\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}Two\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcboxedraster}{blankest}
\begin{tcolorbox}Three\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}Four\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}Five\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}Six\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcboxedraster}
\begin{tcolorbox}Seven\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcbraster}
This is a convenience environment which combines a `tcolorbox` with an embedded \( \texttt{tcbitemize} \). The \langle box options \rangle are given to the outer \( \texttt{tcolorbox} \), while the \langle raster options \rangle are given to the embedded \( \texttt{tcbitemize} \). This environment is especially useful for rasters inside rasters.

\begin{tcboxeditemize}
\begin{raster}
\begin{itemize}
\item First box
\item Second box
\item This is a box with a second line
\item Another box
\item A box again
\end{itemize}
\end{raster}
\end{tcboxeditemize}
16.3 Option Keys of the Library

/tcb/raster columns=(number) (no default, initially 2)
Sets the \langle number \rangle of columns for a raster.

\begin{tcbitemize}
\raster columns=3, 
\size=small, colframe=red!50!black, colback=red!10!white
\tcbitem One
\tcbitem Two
\tcbitem Three
\tcbitem Four
\end{tcbitemize}

\begin{tcbitemize}
\raster columns=4, 
\size=small, colframe=blue!50!black, colback=blue!10!white
\tcbitem One
\tcbitem Two
\tcbitem Three
\tcbitem Four
\end{tcbitemize}

/tcb/raster rows=(number) (no default, initially 2)
Sets the \langle number \rangle of rows for a raster. Note that this is only relevant in connection with setting /tcb/raster height \*P.305 to a value greater than 0pt. Then, it defines the number of rows per given height.

/tcb/raster width=(length) (no default, initially \linewidth)
Sets the total raster width to the given \langle length \rangle. /tcb/raster left skip \*P.306 and /tcb/raster right skip \*P.306 are part of the total width. Note that both skip values are not changed by this option.

\begin{tcbitemize}
\raster width=\linewidth/2, 
\size=small, colframe=red!50!black, colback=red!10!white
\tcbitem One
\tcbitem Two
\tcbitem Three
\tcbitem Four
\end{tcbitemize}
\begin{tcbitemize}[raster width flush left=\linewidth/2, size=small, colframe=red!50!black, colback=red!10!white]
\tcbitem One
\tcbitem Two
\tcbitem Three
\tcbitem Four
\end{tcbitemize}

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster width center=\linewidth/2, size=small, colframe=red!50!black, colback=red!10!white]
\tcbitem One
\tcbitem Two
\tcbitem Three
\tcbitem Four
\end{tcbitemize}

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster width flush right=\linewidth/2, size=small, colframe=red!50!black, colback=red!10!white]
\tcbitem One
\tcbitem Two
\tcbitem Three
\tcbitem Four
\end{tcbitemize}
/tcb/raster height=(length) \hspace{1mm} (no default, initially 0pt)

Sets the raster height per /tcb/raster rows\textsuperscript{P.303} to the given (length). This forces an appropriate height for the enclosed boxes. /tcb/raster before skip and /tcb/raster after skip are not part of this calculation. If the (length) is set to 0pt, this feature is deactivated.

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster height=4cm, raster rows=2,
  size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]
\item One
\item Two
\item[enhanced, finish={\draw[blue,very thick,<->] (frame.south) -- node[right,pos=.75]{4cm} +(0,4); }]
  Three
\item Four
\item Five
\end{tcbitemize}

/tcb/raster before skip=(glue) \hspace{1mm} (no default, initially 2mm)

Space of the given (glue) is inserted vertically before the raster. This space is discardable.

/tcb/raster after skip=(glue) \hspace{1mm} (no default, initially 2mm)

Space of the given (glue) is inserted vertically after the raster. This space is discardable.

/tcb/raster equal skip=(length) \hspace{1mm} (style, no default)

Shortcut to set /tcb/raster before skip, /tcb/raster after skip, /tcb/raster column skip\textsuperscript{P.306}, and /tcb/raster row skip\textsuperscript{P.306} to the same (length) value.

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster equal skip=4mm,
  size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]
\item One
\item Two
\item Three
\item Four
\end{tcbitemize}
Space of the given \textit{length} is inserted horizontally left of the \textit{raster}.

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster left skip=2cm, size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]
\tcbitem One
\tcbitem Two
\tcbitem Three
\tcbitem Four
\end{tcbitemize}

Space of the given \textit{length} is inserted horizontally right of the \textit{raster}.

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster right skip=2cm, size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]
\tcbitem One
\tcbitem Two
\tcbitem Three
\tcbitem Four
\end{tcbitemize}

Space of the given \textit{length} is inserted horizontally between the columns.

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster column skip=2cm, size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]
\tcbitem One
\tcbitem Two
\tcbitem Three
\tcbitem Four
\end{tcbitemize}

Space of the given \textit{length} is inserted vertically between the rows.

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster row skip=0pt, size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]
\tcbitem One
\tcbitem Two
\tcbitem Three
\tcbitem Four
\end{tcbitemize}
\texttt{tcb/raster halign=(alignment)} (no default, initially \texttt{left})

Defines the horizontal alignment for the boxes of the rows of a \texttt{raster}, if these rows are not completely filled (mainly: the last one).

Feasible values for \texttt{alignment} are:

- \texttt{left}: align to the left side,
- \texttt{center}: align to the center,
- \texttt{right}: align to the right side.

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster halign=center, size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]
  \tcbitem One
  \tcbitem Two
  \tcbitem Three
\end{tcbitemize}

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster valign=top, raster columns=3, size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]
  \tcbitem \Huge One
  \tcbitem \Large Two
  \tcbitem Three
\end{tcbitemize}

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster valign=bottom, raster columns=3, size=small,colframe=green!50!black,colback=green!10!white]
  \tcbitem \Huge One
  \tcbitem \Large Two
  \tcbitem Three
\end{tcbitemize}

\texttt{tcb/raster valign=(alignment)} (no default, initially \texttt{center})

Defines the vertical alignment for the boxes of a row, if the boxes do not have equal height. This sets the \texttt{/tcb/box align} \cite{p.86} option.

Feasible values for \texttt{alignment} are:

- \texttt{top}: align to the top side,
- \texttt{center}: align to the center,
- \texttt{bottom}: align to the bottom side.

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster valign=top, raster columns=3, size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]
  \tcbitem \Huge One
  \tcbitem \Large Two
  \tcbitem Three
\end{tcbitemize}

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster valign=center, raster columns=3, size=small,colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!10!white]
  \tcbitem \Huge One
  \tcbitem \Large Two
  \tcbitem Three
\end{tcbitemize}

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster valign=bottom, raster columns=3, size=small,colframe=green!50!black,colback=green!10!white]
  \tcbitem \Huge One
  \tcbitem \Large Two
  \tcbitem Three
\end{tcbitemize}
N 2014-11-10  /tcb/raster equal height=(type)  (default all, initially none)
Puts the enclosed boxes into a common /tcb/equal height group\textsuperscript{p.61}. The \langle id\rangle of the equal height group is chosen automatically, but it may be set manually by /tcb/raster equal height group. Also see /tcb/minimum for current equal height group\textsuperscript{p.62}. Feasible values for \langle type\rangle are:
\begin{itemize}
  \item none: no equal height setting,
  \item rows: all boxes in a row are set to equal height,
  \item all: all boxes in the raster are set to equal height.
\end{itemize}
Note that you have to compile twice to see changes.

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster equal height=rows,
  size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]
  \tcitem One
  \tcitem \Huge Two
  \tcitem Three
  \tcitem Four
\end{tcbitemize}

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster equal height,
  size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]
  \tcitem One
  \tcitem \Huge Two
  \tcitem Three
  \tcitem Four
\end{tcbitemize}

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster equal height group=\langle id\rangle]  
\begin{tcbset}{size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white}
  \begin{tcolorbox}[equal height group=raster-manual-id]
    A single box
  \end{tcolorbox}
  \begin{tcbitemize}[raster equal height,raster equal height group=raster-manual-id]
    \tcitem One
    \tcitem \Huge Two
  \end{tcbitemize}
\end{tcbset}
\end{tcbitemize}

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster equal height group=\langle id\rangle]  
\begin{tcbset}{size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white}
  \begin{tcolorbox}[equal height group=raster-manual-id]
    A single box
  \end{tcolorbox}
  \begin{tcbitemize}[raster equal height,raster equal height group=raster-manual-id]
    \tcitem One
    \tcitem \Huge Two
  \end{tcbitemize}
\end{tcbset}
\end{tcbitemize}
/tcb/raster force size=\text{true}|\text{false} \quad (\text{default } \text{true, initially } \text{true})

Enforces the raster size computations onto the enclosed boxes. If set to \text{false}, individual settings can be used (for the better or worse).

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster force size=false, raster halign=center, size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]
\tcbitem One
\tcbitem Two
\tcbitem[add to width=-3cm] Three
\tcbitem[add to width=-3cm] Four
\tcbitem[add to width=-3cm] Five
\tcbitem[add to width=3cm] Six
\end{tcbitemize}

One Two
Three Four
Five Six

/tcb/raster reset \quad (\text{no value})

Sets all raster settings back to their default values. Note that /tcb/reset \cite{P.112} does not execute this option. Style settings like /tcb/raster odd column etc. are not touched by /tcb/raster reset.

16.4 Adding Styles for Specific Boxes

The following styles can be defined to address certain boxes inside a raster. Note that such style definitions are not removed by /tcb/reset \cite{P.112} or /tcb/raster reset. The style definitions are used in the order given below.

/tcb/raster every box \quad (\text{style})

This style is used for every box.

/tcb/raster odd column \quad (\text{style})

This style is used for every box in an odd column.

\begin{tcbitemize}[size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white, \text{raster odd column}.style={colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!10!white}]
\tcbitem One
\tcbitem Two
\tcbitem Three
\tcbitem Four
\end{tcbitemize}

One Two
Three Four

/tcb/raster even column \quad (\text{style})

This style is used for every box in an even column.

/tcb/raster column n \quad (\text{style})

This style is used for every box in the n-th column. n has to be replaced by a number.

/tcb/raster odd row \quad (\text{style})

This style is used for every box in an odd row.

309
This style is used for every box in an even row.

This style is used for every box in the \( m \)-th row. \( m \) has to be replaced by a number.

This style is used for every box with an odd number.

This style is used for every box with an even number.

This style is used for the box in the \( m \)-th row and \( n \)-th column. \( m \) and \( n \) have to be replaced by numbers.

This style is used for the box with number \( n \). \( n \) has to be replaced by a number.
16.5 Combining Columns or Rows

\begin{tcbitemize}
[raster equal height=rows, raster columns=3, title=\texttcbbrasternum, colframe=red!50!black, colback=red!10!white]
\tcbitem[colframe=blue!50!black, colback=blue!10!white, raster multicolumn=1]
  multicolumn=1
\tcbitem
\tcbitem
\tcbitem[colframe=blue!50!black, colback=blue!10!white, raster multicolumn=2]
  multicolumn=2
\tcbitem
\tcbitem[colframe=blue!50!black, colback=blue!10!white, raster multicolumn=3]
  multicolumn=3
\tcbitem
\tcbitem[colframe=blue!50!black, colback=blue!10!white, raster multicolumn=2]
  multicolumn=2
\end{tcbitemize}

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\texttt{\texttcbbrasternum} (no default, initially unset)

This option has to be set inside the option list of a \texttt{tcolorbox} \footnote{P.12} inside a \texttt{tcbraster} \footnote{P.299} or inside \texttt{\texttcbitem} \footnote{P.300} inside \texttt{tcbitemize} \footnote{P.300}. It merges the given \texttt{\langle number\rangle} of boxes into one single box on the same line. The resulting box gets the \texttt{\texttcbbrasternum} of the first box. If there are not enough boxes available on the current line, this option is ignored and a warning is given.
This option has to be set inside the option list of a `tcolorbox` inside a `tcb raster` or inside `\tcitem` inside `tcb itemize`. This option not really merges boxes, but simply sizes the current box to fit the space of \langle number\rangle rows.

/tcb/raster multirow needs /tcb/raster height to be set. How to achieve a similar result for boxes without fixed /tcb/raster height is shown afterwards.

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster rows=3,raster columns=3,raster height=6cm, raster every box/.style={colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white}]
\tcitem
\tcitem
\tcitem\[colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!10!white,raster multirow=2\]
multirow=2
\tcitem[raster multicolumn=2,raster multirow=2,blankest]
\begin{tcbitemize}[raster rows=2,raster columns=2,raster height=\tcb textheight]
\tcitem
\tcitem
\tcitem
\tcitem
\end{tcbitemize}
\end{tcbitemize}
For rasters without fixed \texttt{tcb/raster height} to \texttt{P.305}, \texttt{tcb/raster multirow} to \texttt{P.312} cannot be used. Note that \texttt{tcb/textheight} to \texttt{P.155} also cannot be used like in the previous example.

But, with combination of \texttt{tcb/raster equal height} to \texttt{P.308} and \texttt{tcb/space to} to \texttt{P.59}, a similar effect can be created:

\begin{tcbitemize}
  \item[\texttt{raster columns=3, raster equal height=rows}]
  \item[\texttt{raster every box/.style={colframe=red!50!black, colback=red!10!white}]} \item[\texttt{lipsum[2]}]
  \item[\texttt{tcbitem}]
  \item[\texttt{tcbitem}]
  \item[\texttt{tcbitem[colframe=blue!50!black, colback=blue!10!white]}]
  \item[\texttt{lipsum[2]}]
  \item[\texttt{tcbitem[raster multicolumn=2, blankest, space to=\myspace]}]
  \item[\texttt{begin\{tcbitemize\}[raster columns=2]}]
  \item[\texttt{tcbitem}]
  \item[\texttt{tcbitem[height=\myspace]}]
  \item[\texttt{tcbitem[height=\myspace]}]
  \item[\texttt{end\{tcbitemize\}}]
  \item[\texttt{end\{tcbitemize\}}]
\end{tcbitemize}

\begin{tcbitemize}
  \item This is a box of the inner raster.
\end{tcbitemize}
16.6 Rasters inside Rasters

A raster inside a raster cannot be used directly, because a raster can only contain a tcolorbox or something derived from a tcolorbox. So, a raster can be put inside a tcolorbox inside a raster.

Some examples for such constructions can be found at tcboxedraster\textsuperscript{+P.301}, /tcb/raster multicolumn\textsuperscript{+P.311}, /tcb/raster multirow\textsuperscript{+P.312}.

16.6.1 Raster Setup

The intermediating tcolorbox\textsuperscript{+P.12} can be made invisible by using /tcb/blankest\textsuperscript{+P.252}.

\begin{verbatim}
\begin{tcbraster}
[raster equal height=rows, 
raster every box/.style={colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white}]
\begin{tcolorbox}[blankest]
\begin{tcbraster}
[raster columns=1]
\begin{tcolorbox}One\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}Two\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcbraster}
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}raster+tcolorbox+raster\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcbraster}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\begin{tcbraster}
[raster equal height=rows, 
raster every box/.style={colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white}]
\begin{tcboxedraster}[raster columns=1]{blankest}
\begin{tcolorbox}One\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}Two\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcboxedraster}
\begin{tcolorbox}raster+tcboxedraster\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcbraster}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\begin{tcbitemize}
[raster equal height=rows, 
raster every box/.style={colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white}]
\tcbitem{blankest}
\begin{tcbitemize}[raster columns=1]
\tcbitem One
\tcbitem Two
\end{tcbitemize}
\tcbitem tcbitemize+tcbitem+tcbitemize
\end{tcbitemize}
\end{verbatim}

One Two
raster+tcolorbox+raster

One Two
raster+tcboxedraster

One Two
tcbitemize+tcbitem+tcbitemize
16.6.2 Placing Spaces

If the heights of boxes inside staggered rasters should be matched, the space has to be distributed accordingly.

- For fixed height boxes/rasters using `/tcb/raster height`, the height of boxes is available by \textbackslash \tcbtextheight. This can be used to size deeper layered boxes/rasters.

- For boxes/rasters layed out using `/tcb/raster equal height`, space can be distributed by `/tcb/space to`. It can take several compilations until all spaces are distributed correctly.

\begin{tcbitemize}
\item[\texttt{raster rows=2, raster height=6cm, raster every box/.style={colframe=red!50!black, colback=red!10!white}}] \tcbitem[\texttt{blankest}] \begin{tcbitemize}
\item[\texttt{raster columns=1, raster rows=2, raster height=\tcbtextheight}] \tcbitem One
\tcbitem Two
\end{tcbitemize}
\tcbitem This is a fixed height box.
\tcbitem Three
\tcbitem Four
\end{tcbitemize}
One

This box will adapt its height.


This is a flexible height box.
17 Libraries \texttt{listings}, \texttt{listingsutf8}, and \texttt{minted}

17.1 Loading the Libraries

In contrast to other \texttt{tcolorbox} libraries, the libraries \texttt{listings}, \texttt{listingsutf8}, and \texttt{minted} are concurrent in the sense that they all do the same thing, i.e. displaying listings with or without typesetting the listing in \LaTeX parallel. The difference is the underlying \LaTeX package which does the core job for displaying a listing. So, typically, you need just one of these libraries. If you do not have a clue which one of them you should use and you are using pdflatex, you should take \texttt{listingsutf8}. If you are using xelatex or lualatex, you should take \texttt{listings} as xelatex and lualatex are not compatible with \texttt{listingsutf8}.

The order in which the libraries are included influences the default settings and the \texttt{/tcb/reset} \cite{P.112} behavior. The settings of a later loaded library overwrite the settings of a previous loaded library. A library is never loaded twice.

17.1.1 Loading \texttt{listings}

This library uses the package \texttt{listings} \cite{6} to typeset listings. It is loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbuselibrary{listings}
\end{verbatim}

This also loads the package \texttt{listings} \cite{6}.

The \texttt{/tcb/listing engine} \cite{P.331} is set to \texttt{listings} by the library. To reactivate this setting, if overwritten by other libraries, use

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset{listing engine=listings}
\end{verbatim}

17.1.2 Loading \texttt{listingsutf8}

This library is not needed (and troublesome) when using Xe\LaTeX or Lua\LaTeX. Therefore, loading this library is automatically replaced by loading \texttt{listings} only, if pdflatex is not used.

To extend \texttt{listings} for UTF-8 encoded sources, you can use the support from the package \texttt{listingsutf8} \cite{11} by loading the library variant \texttt{listingsutf8}.

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbuselibrary{listingsutf8}
\tcbset{listing utf8=latin1}\% optional; \texttt{`latin1'} is the default.
\end{verbatim}

This also loads the library \texttt{listings} and the packages \texttt{listings} \cite{6} and \texttt{listingsutf8} \cite{11}.

The \texttt{/tcb/listing engine} \cite{P.331} is set to \texttt{listings} by the library. To reactivate this setting, if overwritten by other libraries, use

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset{listing engine=listings}
\end{verbatim}
17.1.3 Loading \texttt{minted}

This library uses the package \texttt{minted} \cite{12} to typeset listings. It is loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

\begin{Verbatim}
\texttt{tcbuselibrary(minted)}
\end{Verbatim}

This also loads the package \texttt{minted} \cite{12}.

\textbf{The \texttt{minted} package uses the external tool Pygments \cite{14} to apply syntax highlighting. It has to be installed and set up, before the library can be used, see \cite{12} and \cite{14}. The \texttt{tcolorbox} library \texttt{minted} does not work, if the package \texttt{minted} \cite{12} does not work.}

The /tcb/listing engine \textsuperscript{P.331} is set to \texttt{minted} by the library. To reactivate this setting, if overwritten by other libraries, use

\begin{Verbatim}
\texttt{tcbset(listing engine=minted)}
\end{Verbatim}

17.2 Common Macros of the Libraries

\begin{Verbatim}
\begin{tcblisting}\langle\texttt{options}\rangle
\langle\texttt{environment content}\rangle
\end{tcblisting}
\end{Verbatim}

Creates a colored box based on a \texttt{tcolorbox} \textsuperscript{P.12}. Controlled by the given \texttt{(options)}, the environment content is typeset normally and/or as a listing. Furthermore, the \texttt{(options)} control appearance and functions of the \texttt{tcolorbox}. By default, the listing is interpreted as a \LaTeX\ listing.

\begin{Verbatim}
\begin{tcblisting}\langle\texttt{colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black}\rangle
This is a \LaTeX\ example which displays the text as source code and in compiled form.
\end{tcblisting}
\end{Verbatim}

This is a \LaTeX\ example which displays the text as source code and in compiled form.

This is a \LaTeX\ example which displays the text as source code and in compiled form.
This is source code in another language (XML)

```xml
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<project name="Package tcolorbox" default="documentation" basedir=".">
  <description>
    Apache Ant build file (http://ant.apache.org/)
  </description>
</project>
```

This is source code in another language (XML)

```xml
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<project name="Package tcolorbox" default="documentation" basedir=".">
  <description>
    Apache Ant build file (http://ant.apache.org/)
  </description>
</project>
```

This box is as wide as needed (listing only !!)

```latex
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \fill[red] (0,0) rectangle (1,1);
\end{tikzpicture}
```

321
\begin{tcboutputlisting}
\textbf{This text} is written to a standardized file for later usage.
\end{tcboutputlisting}

\texttt{\textbackslash{}tcbinputlisting\{\texttt{\textit{options}}\}}

Creates a colored boxed based on a \texttt{tcolorbox}. The text content is read from a file named by the key value of \texttt{listing file}. Apart from that, the function is equal to that of \texttt{tcblisting} \textsuperscript{P.320}.

\texttt{\texttt{\textbackslash{}tcbinputlisting}\{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,text only\}} \texttt{\textbackslash{}tcbinputlisting}\{colback=green!5,colframe=green!75!black,listing only\}

\begin{tikzpicture}
\fill[red] (0,0) rectangle (1,1);
\end{tikzpicture}

\texttt{\texttt{\textbackslash{}tcbuselistingtext}}

Loads text from a file named by the key value of \texttt{listing file}.

\texttt{\texttt{\textbackslash{}tcbuselistinglisting}}

Typesets text as listing from a file named by the key value of \texttt{listing file}.

\texttt{\texttt{\textbackslash{}tcbusetemplisting}}

Typesets text as listing from a temporary file which was written by \texttt{tcbwritetemp} \textsuperscript{P.131}.

\texttt{\texttt{\textbackslash{}tcboutputlisting}}

Saves the environment content to a file which is named by the key value of \texttt{listing file}. Later, this file can be loaded by \texttt{tcbinputlisting} or \texttt{tcbuselistingtext} or \texttt{tcbuselistinglisting}.
See Section 24.4 on page 469 and Section 24.5 on page 471 for more elaborate methods to create new environments and commands.

If a new sort of \texttt{tcblisting} environments should be created with one optional argument only, one is highly recommended to use \texttt{\textbackslash DeclareTCBListing} \textsuperscript{P.469} or \texttt{\textbackslash NewTCBListing} \textsuperscript{P.469} instead of \texttt{\textbackslash newtcblisting} to avoid content scanning problems.

\begin{itemize}
  \item \texttt{newtcblisting[(init options)]\{\langle name\rangle\}[\langle number\rangle][\langle default\rangle]\{\langle options\rangle\}}
  \end{itemize}

Creates a new environment \langle name\rangle based on \texttt{tcblisting} \textsuperscript{P.320}. Basically, \texttt{newtcblisting} operates like \texttt{newenvironment}. This means, the new environment \langle name\rangle optionally takes \langle number\rangle arguments, where \langle default\rangle is the default value for the optional first argument. The \langle options\rangle are given to the underlying \texttt{tcblisting}. Note that \texttt{/tcb/savedelimiter} \textsuperscript{P.26} is set to the given \langle name\rangle automatically. The \langle init options\rangle allow setting up automatic numbering, see Section 5 from page 114.

\begin{verbatim}
newtcblisting{mybox}{%
colback=red!5!white,
colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{mybox}
This is my \LaTeX\ box.
\end{mybox}
This is my \LaTeX\ box.
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
newtcblisting{mybox}[1]{%
colback=red!5!white,
colframe=red!75!black,
fonttitle=\bfseries,
title={#1}}
\begin{mybox}{Listing Box}
This is my \LaTeX\ box.
\end{mybox}
Listing Box
This is my \LaTeX\ box.
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
newtcblisting{mybox}[2][]{%}
\begin{mybox}[listing only]
\{Listing Box\}
This is my \LaTeX\ box.
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}[listing side text]
\{Listing Box\}
This is my \LaTeX\ box.
\end{mybox}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
newtcblisting{mybox}[]%}
\begin{mybox}
This is my \LaTeX\ box.
\end{mybox}
\end{verbatim}
Definition in the preamble:
\newtcblisting[auto counter]{mycbox}[1]{% 
colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries, 
title=Listing \thetcbcounter: #1}

\begin{mycbox}{Listing Box}
This is my \LaTeX\ box.
\end{mycbox}

\renewtcblisting[\init options]{\name}{\number}{\default}{\options}

Operates like \newtcblisting on P.323, but based on \renewenvironment instead of \newenvironment. An existing environment is redefined.
\newtcbinputlisting[(init options)]{⟨name⟩}{⟨number⟩}{⟨default⟩}{⟨options⟩}

Creates a new macro \langle name⟩ based on \tcinputlisting \(^{p.322}\). Basically, \newtcbinputlisting operates like \newcommand. The new macro \langle name⟩ optionally takes \langle number⟩ arguments, where \langle default⟩ is the default value for the optional first argument. The \langle options⟩ are given to the underlying \tcinputlisting. The \langle init options⟩ allow setting up automatic numbering, see Section 5 from page 114.

\newtcbinputlisting[use counter from=mycbox]{\mylisting}[2][]{%
listing file={#2},
title=Listing (\thetcbcounter) of \texttt{#2},
colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, fonttitle=\bfseries, 
listing only, breakable, #1}

\mylisting[before upper=\textit{This is the included file content:}]
  {\jobname.tcbtemp}

**Listing (2) of tcolorbox.tcbtemp**

This is the included file content:
\newtcbinputlisting[use counter from=mycbox]{\mylisting}[2][]{%
listing engine=minted, minted language=latex, minted style=colorful, 
listing file={#2},
title=Listing (\thetcbcounter) of \texttt{#2},
colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, fonttitle=\bfseries, 
listing only, breakable, #1}

\mylisting[before upper=\textit{This is the included file content:}]
  {\jobname.tcbtemp}

**Listing (3) of tcolorbox.tcbtemp**

This is the included file content:
\newtcbinputlisting[use counter from=mycbox]{\mylisting}[2][]{%
listing engine=minted, minted language=latex, minted style=colorful, 
listing file={#2},
title=Listing (\thetcbcounter) of \texttt{#2},
colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, fonttitle=\bfseries, 
listing only, breakable, #1}

\mylisting[before upper=\textit{This is the included file content:}]
  {\jobname.tcbtemp}

\renewtcbinputlisting[(init options)]{⟨name⟩}{⟨number⟩}{⟨default⟩}{⟨options⟩}

Operates like \newtcbinputlisting, but based on \renewcommand instead of \newcommand. An existing macro is redefined.
17.3 Option Keys of the \texttt{listings} Library

\texttt{/tcb/listing\_options\{key\ list\}} \hspace{1cm} (no default, initially \texttt{style=tcblatex})

Sets the options from the package \texttt{listings} \cite{6} which are used during typesetting of the listing. For \LaTeX\ listings, there is a predefined \texttt{listings} style named \texttt{tcblatex} which can be used.

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!25,left=6mm, listing options={style=tcblatex,numbers=left,numberstyle=\tiny\color{red!75!black}}}  
This is a \LaTeX\ example which displays the text as source code and in compiled form. Additionally, we use line numbers here.
\end{tcblisting}

\begin{tcblisting}{no listing options}
All \texttt{listings} options removed.
\end{tcblisting}

\texttt{/tcb/no\ listing\ options} \hspace{1cm} (no value, initially unset)

Abbreviation for \texttt{listing\ options=\{\}}. This removes all options for the \texttt{listings} package. This includes the \texttt{tcblisting} standard style \texttt{tcblatex} and the encoding presets. Use this option, if you want to set the \texttt{listings} options outside of \texttt{tcblisting}, e.g. globally in the preamble.

\begin{tcblisting}{no listing options}
All \texttt{listings} options removed.
\end{tcblisting}

\texttt{/tcb/listing\ style\{style\}} \hspace{1cm} (no default, initially \texttt{tcblatex})

Abbreviation for \texttt{listing\ options\{style=\ldots\}}. This key sets a \texttt{\{style\}} for the \texttt{listings} package, see \cite{6}. For \LaTeX, there is a predefined style named \texttt{tcblatex}.

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black, listing style=tcblatex}
Here, we use the predefined style.
\end{tcblisting}
/tcb/listing inputencoding=(encoding) (no default, initially \inputencodingname)

Sets the input encoding value for the predefined listing style tcblatex and tcbdocumentation from the library \documentclass[document]. The initial value is derived from the package inputenc if used.

/tcb/listing remove caption=true|false (default true, initially true)

If set to true, some part of the caption building code of the listings package is silenced to prevent some unwanted interaction with the hyperref package resulting in additional vertical space. If set to false, the listings package code is kept unchanged. Note that listings outside \tcblisting and \tcbinputlisting are always processed normally. Typically, a user is not expected to use this key at all.

/tcb/every listing line=(text) (no default, initially unset/empty)

Inserts some \text to the begin of every line of a listing. Note that this a hack of the listings package code. This may become unusable or superfluous in the future.

\begin{commandshell}
ls -al
cd /usr/lib
\end{commandshell}

See further options in Section 17.6 on page 331.

\footnote{For an combined example of using \lstinline inside a tcolorbox, see \texttt{\DeclareTotalTCBox} \texttt{P.467}.}
17.4 Option Keys of the \texttt{listingsutf8} Library

The \texttt{listingsutf8} library is not needed (and troublesome) when using \texttt{XeLaTeX} or \texttt{LuaLaTeX}. Therefore, loading this library is automatically replaced by loading \texttt{listings} only, if \texttt{pdfLaTeX} is \textit{not} used.

The \texttt{listingsutf8} library is an extension of the \texttt{listings} library, so all options from Section 17.3 on page 326 are applicable.

\texttt{/tcb/listing utf8=⟨one-byte-encoding⟩} (style, no default, initially \texttt{latin1})

Abbreviation for using \texttt{/tcb/listing inputencoding} \textsuperscript{+P.327} together with UTF-8 support from the package \texttt{listingsutf8} \textsuperscript{[11]}. This option is available only for the library variant \texttt{listingsutf8}. The \texttt{⟨one-byte-encoding⟩} is one of the applicable encodings from \textsuperscript{[11]}, e.g. \texttt{latin1} which is the default.

Be aware that this means restriction to this specific \texttt{⟨one-byte-encoding⟩}; e.g. \texttt{latin1} comprises umlauts and other accented characters, but not the Euro sign. If you want to use the \texttt{listings} package and «real» UTF-8 source code, then do \textit{not} use \texttt{listingsutf8} but \texttt{listings} with \texttt{/tcb/listing inputencoding} \textsuperscript{+P.327}=\texttt{utf8} and with specific manual hacks for specific UTF-8-encoded characters.

See further options in Section 17.6 on page 331.
17.5 Option Keys of the \texttt{minted} Library

\texttt{/tcb/minted language}=(\textit{programming language})
(no default, initially \texttt{latex})

Sets a \textit{\textit{programming language}} known to \texttt{Pygments} [14].

```latex
\begin{tcblisting}{listing engine=minted,minted style=trac,
minted language=java,
colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,listing only}
public class HelloWorld {
    // A 'Hello World' in Java
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        System.out.println("Hello World!");
    }
}
\end{tcblisting}
```

\texttt{/tcb/minted options}=(\textit{key list})
(no default, initially \texttt{tabsize=2,fontsize=\small},
\texttt{breaklines,autogobble})

Sets the options from the package \texttt{minted} [12] which are used during typesetting of the listing.

```latex
% \tcbuselibrary{skins}
\newtcblisting{myjava}{listing engine=minted,
minted style=colorful,
minted language=java,
minted options={fontsize=\small,breaklines,autogobble,linenos,numbersep=3mm},
colback=blue!5!white,colframe=blue!75!black,listing only,
left=5mm,enhanced,
overlay={\begin{tcbclipinterior}\fill[red!20!blue!20!white] (frame.south west)
rectangle ([xshift=5mm]frame.north west);\end{tcbclipinterior}}}

\begin{myjava}
public class HelloWorld {
    // A 'Hello World' in Java
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        System.out.println("Hello World!");
    }
}
\end{myjava}
```

```latex
1 public class HelloWorld {
2    // A 'Hello World' in Java
3    public static void main(String[] args) {
4        System.out.println("Hello World!");
5    }
6}
```
Sets a \texttt{style} known to \texttt{Pygments} \cite{pygments}. This is independent from /\texttt{tcb/minted options}\(^{\text{P.329}}\). Note that styles are always applied globally; all following examples will be set in the given \texttt{style} until a new style is set. Also note that setting \texttt{\usemintedstyle{\langle style\rangle}} only once per document is more economic, if all styles in a document are the same. For examples of different styles, see /\texttt{tcb/minted language}\(^{\text{P.329}}\) and /\texttt{tcb/minted options}\(^{\text{P.329}}\).

See further options in Section 17.6 on the following page.
17.6 Common Option Keys of all Libraries

For the \langle options \rangle in \texttt{tcblisting} \textsuperscript{320} respectively \texttt{tcbinputlisting} \textsuperscript{322} the following \pgf keys can be applied. The key tree path \texttt{/tcb/} is not to be used inside these macros.

\texttt{/tcb/listing engine=⟨engine⟩} \hspace{1cm} (no default)

Sets the \langle engine \rangle which typesets the listings. Feasible values are

- \texttt{listings}, if library \texttt{listings} or \texttt{listingsutf8} is loaded.
- \texttt{minted}, if library \texttt{minted} is loaded.

\texttt{/tcb/listing file=⟨file name⟩} \hspace{1cm} (no default, initially \texttt{\jobname.listing})

Sets the \langle file name \rangle of the file which is used to save listings.

\texttt{/tcb/listing and text} \hspace{1cm} (no value, initially set)

Typesets the environment content as listing in the upper part and as compiled text in the lower part.

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,listing and text}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}

This is a \LaTeX\ example.

This is a \LATEX\ example.

\texttt{/tcb/text and listing} \hspace{1cm} (no value)

Typesets the environment content as compiled text in the upper part and as listing in the lower part.

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,text and listing}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}

This is a \LATEX\ example.

This is a \LaTeX\ example.

\texttt{/tcb/listing only} \hspace{1cm} (no value)

Typesets the environment content as listing.

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,listing only}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}

This is a \LaTeX\ example.
/tcb/text only

Typesets the environment content as compiled text.

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,text only}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}

This is a \LaTeX\ example.

/tcb/comment=(text)

Records a comment with ⟨text⟩ as content. The comment is displayed e.g. in conjunction with /tcb/listing and comment \textsuperscript{P.335} and /tcb/comment and listing \textsuperscript{P.335}.

\begin{tcblisting}{comment={This comment is really only a comment},
  colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcblisting}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

/tcb/comment only

Typesets the environment content with the comment text.

\begin{tcblisting}{comment only,
  comment={This is a comment.},
  colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcblisting}

This is a comment.

/tcb/image comment=⟨(options)⟩{⟨filename⟩}

Uses an image denoted by ⟨filename⟩ as comment for the listing. The image is included by the standard \includegraphics macro with given ⟨options⟩.

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,listing side comment,
  image comment={width=2.5cm}{example-image-a.pdf},center lower}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}

This is a \LaTeX\ example.
Uses an image denoted by \(^{(filename)}\) as \textit{comment} for the listing. The image is included by the \texttt{tcbincludegraphics} \(^{\text{P.264}}\) macro. The inclusion can be customized by \texttt{/tcb/comment style} \(^{\text{P.335}}\).

The library \texttt{skins} is needed to apply this option.

\begin{verbatim}
% \tcbuselibrary{skins}
\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,listing side comment,  
    righthand width=3cm,lower separated=false,  
    tcbimage comment={example-image-a.pdf},  
    comment style={size=fbox,colframe=blue,colback=blue!50,sharp corners,  
        drop fuzzy shadow}}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}
\end{verbatim}
3.2 Theorem (Summation of Numbers):

For all natural number $n$ it holds:

$$\sum_{i=1}^{n} i = \frac{n(n + 1)}{2}.$$
/tcb/pdf extension\equal{}\langle extension\rangle \quad \text{(no default, initially pdf)}

Sets the PDF file name extension for /tcb/pdf comment \textsuperscript{P.334} to \langle extension\rangle. Note that \langle extension\rangle always overwrites any actual extension given inside /tcb/pdf comment \textsuperscript{P.334}.

/tcb/comment style\equal{}\langle options\rangle \quad \text{(no default, initially empty)}

Sets the \langle options\rangle for /tcb/tcbimage comment \textsuperscript{P.333} and /tcb/pdf comment \textsuperscript{P.334}. These are tcolorbox options to customize the colored box drawn around the image(s), also image options encapsulated by /tcb/graphics options \textsuperscript{P.267}, and tcbraster \textsuperscript{P.299} options for /tcb/pdf comment \textsuperscript{P.334}.

/tcb/listing and comment \quad \text{(no value)}

Typesets the environment content as listing in the upper part and a given comment in the lower part.

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,listing and comment, comment={This is my comment. It may contain line breaks.\par
It can even use the environment content «This is a \LaTeX\ example.}}
\end{tcblisting}

This is a \LaTeX\ example.

This is my comment. It may contain line breaks.
It can even use the environment content «This is a \LaTeX\ example.»

/tcb/comment and listing \quad \text{(no value)}

Typesets a given comment in the upper part and the environment content as listing in the lower part.

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,comment and listing, comment={This is my comment.}}
\end{tcblisting}

This is a \LaTeX\ example.

This is my comment.
/tcb/listing side text

Typesets the environment content side by side as listing in the left (upper) part and as compiled text in the right (lower) part. This is a shortcut for setting \texttt{/tcb/listing} and \texttt{\texttt{text}} \textsuperscript{\texttt{P.331}} and \texttt{/tcb/sidebyside} \textsuperscript{\texttt{P.123}}.

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,listing side text}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}

This is a \LaTeX\ example. This is a \LaTeX\ example.

Note that \texttt{sidebyside=false} has to be added, if the setting of \texttt{/tcb/listing side text} is to be annihilated.

/tcb/text side listing

Typesets the environment content side by side as compiled text in the left (upper) part and as listing in the right (lower) part. This is a shortcut for setting \texttt{/tcb/text} and \texttt{\texttt{listing}} \textsuperscript{\texttt{P.331}} and \texttt{/tcb/sidebyside} \textsuperscript{\texttt{P.123}}.

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,text side listing}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}

This is a \LaTeX\ example. This is a \LaTeX\ example.

/tcb/listing outside text

Typesets the environment content side by side as listing in a \texttt{tcolorbox} and as compiled text outside the box in the right part of the page. Nevertheless, the outside text is treated as \texttt{lower} part of the \texttt{tcolorbox} and can be formatted with all lower part options. The space partitioning is done with the side by side options from Section 6 on page 123.

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,listing outside text}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}

This is a \LaTeX\ example. This is a \LaTeX\ example.
Typesets the environment content side by side as listing in a tcolorbox and as compiled text outside the box in the left part of the page. Nevertheless, the outside text is treated as lower part of the tcolorbox and can be formatted with all lower part options. The space partitioning is done with the side by side options from Section 6 on page 123.

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,text outside listing} This is a \LaTeX\ example. \end{tcblisting}

This is a \LaTeX\ example.

This is a \LaTeX\ example.

Typesets the environment content side by side as listing in the left (upper) part and a given comment in the right (lower) part. This is a shortcut for setting /tcb/listing and comment \textsuperscript{P.335} and /tcb/sidebyside \textsuperscript{P.123}.

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,listing side comment, righthand width=1.5cm,image comment={width=1.5cm}{example-image-a.pdf}} This is a \LaTeX\ example. \end{tcblisting}

This is a \LaTeX\ example.

This is a \LaTeX\ example.

Typesets the environment content side by side with a given comment in the left (upper) part and as listing in the right (lower) part. This is a shortcut for setting /tcb/comment and listing \textsuperscript{P.335} and /tcb/sidebyside \textsuperscript{P.123}.

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,comment side listing, lefthand width=1.5cm,image comment={width=1.5cm}{example-image-a.pdf}} This is a \LaTeX\ example. \end{tcblisting}

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,comment side listing, lefthand width=1.5cm,image comment={width=1.5cm}{example-image-a.pdf}} This is a \LaTeX\ example. \end{tcblisting}

This is a \LaTeX\ example.
Typesets the environment content side by side as listing in a \texttt{tcolorbox} and a given comment outside the box in the right part of the page. Nevertheless, the outside text is treated as \textit{lower} part of the \texttt{tcolorbox} and can be formatted with all lower part options. The space partitioning is done with the side by side options from Section 6 on page 123.

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,listing outside comment, righthand width=1.5cm,image comment={width=1.5cm}{example-image-a.pdf}}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}

Typesets the environment content side by side as listing in a \texttt{tcolorbox} and a given comment outside the box in the left part of the page. Nevertheless, the outside text is treated as \textit{lower} part of the \texttt{tcolorbox} and can be formatted with all lower part options. The space partitioning is done with the side by side options from Section 6 on page 123.

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,comment outside listing, lefthand width=1.5cm,image comment={width=1.5cm}{example-image-a.pdf}}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}

Typesets the environment content as listing in a \texttt{tcolorbox} and as compiled text outside and below the box. The outside text is treated as \textit{lower} part of the \texttt{tcolorbox} and can be formatted with all lower part options. The distance between box and text is controlled by \texttt{/tcb/middle}. \footnote{P.43}

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,listing above text}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,listing above* text}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}

Widely equal to \texttt{/tcb/listing above text}, but the outside text is not formatted with the lower part options. Also, it is not put into a minipage and it may span several pages. The distance between box and text is controlled by \texttt{/tcb/after}. \footnote{P.81}

N 2014-11-07
Typesets the environment content as listing in a \texttt{tcolorbox} and as compiled text outside and above the box. The outside text is treated as \textit{lower} part of the \texttt{tcolorbox} and can be formatted with all lower part options. The distance between box and text is controlled by \texttt{/tcb/middle}.\(^{P.43}\)

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,text above listing}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}

This is a \LaTeX\ example.

Widely equal to \texttt{/tcb/text above listing}, but the outside text is not formatted with the lower part options. Also, it is not put into a minipage and it may span several pages. The distance between box and text is controlled by \texttt{/tcb/before}.\(^{P.81}\).

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,listing above comment, center lower,image comment={width=3cm}{example-image-a.pdf}}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}

This is a \LaTeX\ example.

Widely equal to \texttt{/tcb/listing above comment}, but the outside comment is not formatted with the lower part options. Also, it is not put into a minipage and it may span several pages. The distance between box and comment is controlled by \texttt{/tcb/after}.\(^{P.81}\).
/tcb/comment above listing

Typesets the environment content as listing in a tcolorbox and a given comment outside and above the box. The outside text is treated as lower part of the tcolorbox and can be formatted with all lower part options. The distance between box and comment is controlled by \texttt{/tcb/middle}\cite{p.43}.

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,comment above listing,center lower,image comment={width=3cm}{example-image-a.pdf}}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}

\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]
A
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \LaTeX\ example.

/tcb/comment above* listing

Widely equal to \texttt{/tcb/comment above listing}, but the outside comment is not formatted with the lower part options. Also, it is not put into a minipage and it may span several pages. The distance between box and comment is controlled by \texttt{/tcb/before}\cite{p.81}.

\begin{tcblisting}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}
17.7 Option Keys for Processing and Full Document Examples

A complete \LaTeX document including \documentclass, \begin{document} and \end{document} cannot be processed directly by tcolorbox. It always has to be compiled separately. There are two methods supported by the package to process and display such a full document example:

- Prepare and compile the example document independent from your main document. The source file and the resulting PDF file can be included into the main document afterwards. This is the most economic way since the example document can be left untouched after the example is complete.

- The other possibility is to compile the example on the fly while the main document is compiled. This way has some charm, because the example can be edited inside the main document. But be aware that the compilation of the example is issued on every run of the main document. Also, there are fewer degrees of freedom how the example is compiled.

For both methods, the resulting example PDF file can be included as a \tcbpdfcomment. The following example shows how to apply the first method. There already is a file tcolorbox-example.tex and a PDF file tcolorbox-example.pdf. Both of them are input partly by the following:
\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=green!5!white,colframe=green!75!black]
  Upper part of my box.
  \tcblower
  Lower part of my box.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=yellow!5!white,colframe=yellow!50!black,
  colbacktitle=yellow!75!black,title=My title]
  I can do this also with a title.
  \tcblower
  Lower part of my box.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=yellow!10!white,colframe=red!75!black,lowerbox=invisible,
  savelowerto=\jobname_ex.tex]
  Now, we play hide and seek. Where is the lower part?
  \tcblower
  I'm invisible until you find me.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=yellow!10!white,colframe=red!75!black,title=Here I am]
  \input{\jobname_ex.tex}
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,sharp corners=uphill,
  colback=blue!50!white,colframe=blue!25!black,coltext=yellow,
  fontupper=\Large\bfseries,arc=6mm,boxrule=2mm,boxsep=5mm,
  borderline={0.3mm}{0.3mm}{white}]
  Funny settings.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,frame style image=blueshade.png,
  opacityback=0.75,opacitybacktitle=0.25,
  colback=blue!5!white,colframe=blue!75!black,
  title=My title]
  This box is filled with an external image. \par
  Title and interior are made partly transparent to show the image.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,attach boxed title to top
  center={yshift=-3mm,yshifttext=-1mm},
  colback=blue!5!white,colframe=blue!75!black,colbacktitle=red!80!black,
  title=My title,fonttitle=\bfseries,
  boxed title style={size=small,colframe=red!50!black}]
  ...
\end{tcolorbox}
1. Colored boxes

My box

My box with an title.

Title part of my box.

Lower part of my box.

2. \LaTeX-Examples

\begin{equation}
\sum_{i=1}^n i = \frac{n(n + 1)}{2}
\end{equation}

3. Theorems

\begin{enumerate}
\item \textbf{Theorem 3.1} on page 2.
\item \textbf{Theorem 3.2} (Summation of Numbers): For all natural number $n$ it holds:

\begin{equation}
\sum_{i=1}^n i = \frac{n(n + 1)}{2}
\end{equation}

\end{enumerate}

4. Watermarks

Here, you see my nice box with a picture as a watermark. This picture is automatically resized to fit the dimensions of my box. Instead of a screen, some text can also be transformed into graphical code. For the documentation for more options.

5. Boxes in boxes

My box

Box inside my box

And now for something completely different. Here!

6. Breakable Boxes

My box

This box can be broken.

This box can be broken

This box can be broken also with a title.

Here I am

I'm invisible until you find me.

Now, we play hide and seek. Where is the lower part?

This is a L\TeX example:

\begin{equation}
\sum_{i=1}^n i = \frac{n(n + 1)}{2}
\end{equation}

This is a \LaTeX example:

\begin{equation}
\sum_{i=1}^n i = \frac{n(n + 1)}{2}
\end{equation}

4 Watermarks

Here is a watermark picture.

5 Boxes in boxes

Here is also a title.

This box can be broken.

This box can be broken also with an external image.

The title and interior are scaled proportionally to show the image.

6 Breakable Boxes

I'm invisible until you find me.

Now, we play hide and seek. Where is the lower part?

This box can be broken.

This box can be broken also with a title.

Here I am

I'm invisible until you find me.

Now, we play hide and seek. Where is the lower part?

This box can be broken.

This box can be broken also with a title.

Here I am

I'm invisible until you find me.

Now, we play hide and seek. Where is the lower part?

This box can be broken.

This box can be broken also with a title.

Here I am

I'm invisible until you find me.

Now, we play hide and seek. Where is the lower part?

This box can be broken.

This box can be broken also with a title.

Here I am

I'm invisible until you find me.
/tcb/no process

Removes all processing commands if set before.

/tcb/process code=⟨code⟩

(No default, initially empty)

Adds ⟨code⟩ which is executed during \tcbinputlisting \textsuperscript{P.322} and \tcblisting \textsuperscript{P.320}. At the time of executing the given ⟨code⟩, the listing is already written to /tcb/listing file \textsuperscript{P.331}, but the colored box is not constructed yet. Its intended use is to process the listing somehow before displaying. The processing result can be used inside a \tcacomment \textsuperscript{P.332}. Several /tcb/process code options can be given which are processed in the given order. Typically, ⟨code⟩ is added by using the following styles /tcb/run system command, /tcb/run \texttt{pdflatex}, etc.

To use the further options, the compiler has to be called with the -shell-escape permission to authorize potentially dangerous system calls. Be warned that this is a security risk. Anyway, it’s more economic to compile examples independent from the main document and to include them as shown in the previous pages.

/tcb/run system command=⟨system command⟩

(style, no default, initially unset)

Runs a ⟨system command⟩, if the document is compiled with the -shell-escape permission. The current listing file can be accessed as \filename@area\filename@base\filename@ext. This ⟨system command⟩ is added to /tcb/process code.

/tcb/compilable listing

(style, no default)

Sets /tcb/listing file \textsuperscript{P.331} to \jobname-listing-⟨counter⟩.

The default /tcb/listing file \textsuperscript{P.331} setting cannot be used to compile a listing, since the base name equals the \jobname and the included PDF files should be unique. Therefore, to use /tcb/run \texttt{pdflatex} etc., the /tcb/listing file \textsuperscript{P.331} has to be set to a unique value. One may use /tcb/compilable listing for this purpose.

/tcb/run pdflatex=⟨arguments⟩

(style, no default, initially unset)

Issues a pdflatex compilation of the listing with the given ⟨arguments⟩.

• The main document has to be compiled with the -shell-escape permission.

• The /tcb/listing file \textsuperscript{P.331} has to be unique for the listing.

• If the listing has to be compiled twice, add run pdflatex two times to the option list.

\begin{tcblisting}{enhanced jigsaw,lower separated=false, leftlower=0pt,rightlower=0pt, colframe=red!50!black,colback=yellow!10!white, listing options={style=tcblatex,texcsstyle=*\color{red!70!black}}, listing and comment, pdf comment,freeze pdf, compilable listing, run pdflatex}
\documentclass{beamer}
\usetheme{Warsaw}
\begin{document}
\begin{frame}{Beamer example}
\begin{block}{Hello World}
\begin{itemize}[<+>]
\item One
\item Two
\end{itemize}
\end{block}
\end{frame}
\end{document}
\begin{alertblock}{Integral}
\begin{equation}
\int_1^x \frac{1}{t} \, dt = \ln(x).
\end{equation}
\end{alertblock}
\documentclass{article}
\usepackage{pstricks,multido}
\begin{document}
\psset{unit=3} \%
\multido{\nHue=0.01+0.01}{100}{% 
\definecolor{MyColor}{hsb}{\nHue,1,1}
\pscircle\pslinewidth\pscolor{MyColor}{\nHue}}
\end{document}
For most applications, you will like to add /tcb/freeze pdf as option, since the included pdf file is only refreshed, if the source for this file has changed.

/tcb/freeze file\langle file\rangle

(no default, initially unset)

Observes some \langle file\rangle, usually the final file produced by /tcb/process code \textsuperscript{P.344}, /tcb/run system command \textsuperscript{P.344}, /tcb/run pdflatex \textsuperscript{P.344}, etc. If the MD5 checksum of the current /tcb/listing file \textsuperscript{P.331} is unchanged and \langle file\rangle exists, the processing is skipped and the \langle file\rangle is kept (frozen). Typically, the style /tcb/freeze pdf can be used for convenience.

/tcb/freeze none

(no default, initially set)

Freeze no file and always execute the given process commands.

/tcb/freeze extension\langle text\rangle

(style, no default)

Calls /tcb/freeze file with the current /tcb/listing file \textsuperscript{P.331} stripped with its extension plus \langle text\rangle as new extension.

... listing file=myfile.tex,
    freeze extension=modified.pdf, \% \rightarrow myfile-modified.pdf is observed
...  

/tcb/freeze pdf

(no value)

Calls /tcb/freeze file with the current /tcb/listing file \textsuperscript{P.331} stripped with its extension plus .pdf as new extension.

/tcb/freeze png

(no value)

Calls /tcb/freeze file with the current /tcb/listing file \textsuperscript{P.331} stripped with its extension plus .png as new extension. See the examples for /tcb/run pdflatex \textsuperscript{P.344} and /tcb/run ps2pdf \textsuperscript{P.346}.

/tcb/freeze jpg

(no value)

Calls /tcb/freeze file with the current /tcb/listing file \textsuperscript{P.331} stripped with its extension plus .jpg as new extension.
17.8 Creation of LaTeX Tutorials

The following source code gives a guideline for the creation of LaTeX tutorials. In the next section, a framework for LaTeX exercises is described. All examples shall be numbered optionally.

Firstly, some additional tcb keys are defined for the appearance. For the examples, three environments texexp, texexptitled, and texexptitledspec are defined with automatic numbering.

- \textit{texexp} is used for untitled examples,
- \textit{texexptitled} is used for titled examples,
- \textit{texexptitledspec} is used for titled examples with special treatment.

\textit{Definition in the preamble:}

\begin{lstlisting}[language=LaTeX]
\tcbset{
  texexp/.style={colframe=red!50!yellow!50!black, colback=red!50!yellow!5!white,
  coltitle=red!50!yellow!3!white,
  fonttitle=\small\textbf, fontupper=\small, fontlower=\small},
example/.style 2 args={texexp,
  title={Example \thetcbcounter: #1},label={#2}},
}
\tcblisting{texexp}
This is a \LaTeX\ example which displays the text as source code
and in compiled form.
\end{tcblisting}

\begin{tcblisting}{texexp}
This is a \LaTeX\ example which displays the text as source code
and in compiled form.
\end{tcblisting}

\begin{tcblisting}{texexptitled}
Here, we use Example \ref{firstExample} with a title line.
\end{tcblisting}

\begin{example}
Example 17.1: First example with a title line
Here, we use Example \ref{firstExample} with a title line.
\end{example}

348
This is a LaTeX example which displays the text as source code and in compiled form.

This is a LaTeX example which displays the text as source code and in compiled form.

This is a LaTeX example which displays the text as source code and in compiled form.

This is a LaTeX example which displays the text as source code only.

This is a LaTeX example which displays the text in compiled form only.

Example 17.2: An Example with a Heading

This is a LaTeX example with a numbered heading line which can be referred to.

Here, we see Example 17.2.
The keys can be used in combination. Here, an example with a heading line and source code only is given.

Here, we see Example \ref{heading2}.

Example 17.3: Another Example with a Heading

The keys can be used in combination. Here, an example with a heading line and source code only is given.

Here, we see Example 17.3.

Example 17.4: A floating Example with a Heading

This is another \LaTeX\ example with numbered heading line. But now, the box is a floating object.

The floating box of the last example is seen as Example \ref{heading3} on page \pageref{heading3}.

The floating box of the last example is seen as Example 17.4 on page 350.

Example 17.5: Special application

Some \LaTeX\ source code.

For special cases, the environment \texttt{tcolorbox} with style \texttt{example} can be used directly. As one can see, the upper and the lower part of the box can be used uncoupled also.

The following series of examples demonstrate the application of \texttt{tcolorbox-P.12} options for diversification.
Example 17.6: How to use options (1):
The basic example

\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[fill=yellow!50!white] (0,0) circle (11mm);
\path[fill=white] (0,0) circle (9mm);
\foreach \w/\c in {90/red,210/green,330/blue}
{\path[shading=ball,ball color=\c] (\w:1cm) circle (7mm);}
\end{tikzpicture}

Example 17.7: How to use options (2):
The text output is centered and the segmentation line has vanished.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[fill=yellow!50!white] (0,0) circle (11mm);
\path[fill=white] (0,0) circle (9mm);
\foreach \w/\c in {90/red,210/green,330/blue}
{\path[shading=ball,ball color=\c] (\w:1cm) circle (7mm);}
\end{tikzpicture}
Example 17.8: How to use options (3):
Here, the \texttt{tikzpicture} is totally hidden. The \texttt{bicolor} skin highlights the output.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[fill=yellow!50!white] (0,0) circle (11mm);
\path[fill=white] (0,0) circle (9mm);
\foreach \w/\c in {90/red,210/green,330/blue}
{\path[shading=ball,ball color=\c] (\w:1cm) circle (7mm);}
\end{tikzpicture}

Example 17.9: How to use options (4):
The \texttt{bicolor} skin also works with side by side mode

\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[fill=yellow!50!white] (0,0) circle (11mm);
\path[fill=white] (0,0) circle (9mm);
\foreach \w/\c in {90/red,210/green,330/blue}
{\path[shading=ball,ball color=\c] (\w:1cm) circle (7mm);}
\end{tikzpicture}
Example 17.10: How to use options (5):
Putting our picture outside is just a matter of one word.
\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[fill=yellow!50!white] (0,0) circle (11mm);
\path[fill=white] (0,0) circle (9mm);
\foreach \w/\c in {90/red,210/green,330/blue}
{\path[shading=ball,ball color=\c]
 (\w:1cm) circle (7mm);}
\end{tikzpicture}

Example 17.11: How to use options (6):
The picture may also be put above the listing box.
\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[fill=yellow!50!white] (0,0) circle (11mm);
\path[fill=white] (0,0) circle (9mm);
\foreach \w/\c in {90/red,210/green,330/blue}
{\path[shading=ball,ball color=\c]
 (\w:1cm) circle (7mm);}
\end{tikzpicture}
Example 17.12: How to use options (7): Our style is easily transformed into a beamerish one.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[fill=yellow!50!white] (0,0) circle (11mm);
\path[fill=white] (0,0) circle (9mm);
\foreach \w/\c in {90/red,210/green,330/blue}
{\path[shading=ball,ball color=\c]
 (\w:1cm) circle (7mm);}
\end{tikzpicture}
17.9 Creation of \LaTeX Exercises

In the following, a guideline is given for the creation of \LaTeX exercises with solutions. These solutions are saved to disk for application at a place of choice. Therefore, all used exercises are logged to a file `\jobname.records` for automatic processing. The solution contents themselves are saved to a subdirectory named `solutions`. Also see Section 8 on page 135.

- Before the first exercise is given, `\tcbstartrecording` \textsuperscript{P.135} has to be called to start recording.
- The solution is given as content of a `tcboutputlisting` \textsuperscript{P.322} environment. Note, that you can use this content also inside the exercise with `\tcbuselistingtext` \textsuperscript{P.322} in compiled form.
- After the last exercise is given (and before using the solutions), `\tcbstoprecording` \textsuperscript{P.135} has to be called to stop recording.
- The solutions are loaded by `\tcbinputrecords` \textsuperscript{P.135}.

Inside the exercise text, there may be text parts which are needed as \LaTeX source code and as compiled text as well. These parts can be saved by `\tcbwritetemp` \textsuperscript{P.133} and used in compiled form by `\tcbugetemp` \textsuperscript{P.133} or as source code by `\tcbugetemplisting` \textsuperscript{P.322}.

At first, we generate some a common style for the exercises and the solutions. Further, since exercises and solutions should be numbered, we force to use a label \textit{⟨marker⟩}. Automatically, the label `exe:⟨marker⟩` is used to mark the exercise and the label `sol:⟨marker⟩` is used to mark the solution.

```
\tcbset{texercisestyle/.style={arc=0.5mm, colframe=blue!25!yellow!90!white, colback=blue!25!yellow!5!white, coltitle=blue!25!yellow!40!black, fonttitle=\small\sffamily\bfseries, fontupper=\small, fontlower=\small, listing options={style=tcblatex,texcsstyle=\*\color{red!40!black}},}}
```

With these preparations, the kernel environment \texttt{texercise} for our exercises is created quickly:

```
\newtcolorbox[auto counter,number within=section,list inside=exam]{texercise}[]{%
texercisestyle, listing file={solutions/texercise\texttt{\thetcbcounter}.tex}, label={exe:\texttt{\thetcbcounter}}, record={\string\processsol{solutions/texercise\texttt{\thetcbcounter}.tex}{\texttt{\thetcbcounter}}}, title={Exercise \texttt{\thetcbcounter} Solution on page \texttt{\pageref{sol:\texttt{\thetcbcounter}}}}, list text={Exercise with solution on page \texttt{\pageref{sol:\texttt{\thetcbcounter}}}}}
```
The following examples demonstrate the application.

\begin{texercise}{tabular_example}

\begin{center}
\begin{tabular}{|p{3cm}|p{3cm}|p{3cm}|p{3cm}|}
\hline
\multicolumn{4}{|c|}{\bfseries\itshape Das alte Italien} \\
\hline
\multicolumn{2}{|c|}{\bfseries Antike} & \multicolumn{2}{c|}{\bfseries Mittelalter} \\
\hline
\multicolumn{1}{|c|}{\itshape Republik} & \multicolumn{1}{c|}{\itshape Kaiserreich} & \multicolumn{1}{c|}{\itshape Franken} & \multicolumn{1}{c|}{\itshape Teilstaaten} \\
\hline
In den Zeiten der römischen Republik standen dem Staat jeweils zwei Konsuln vor, deren Machtbefugnisse identisch waren. & Das römische Kaiserreich wurde von einem Alleinherrscher, dem Kaiser, regiert. & In der Völkerwanderungszeit übernahmen die Goten und später die Franken die Vorherrschaft. & Im späteren Mittelalter regierten Fürsten einen Fleckenteppich von Einzelstaaten. \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{center}

\end{texercise}

Exercise 17.1

Solution on page 359

Create the following table:

\begin{center}

\begin{tabular}{|c|c|c|c|}
\hline
\bfseries Antike & \bfseries Mittelalter \\
\hline
\bfseries Republik & \bfseries Kaiserreich & \bfseries Franken & \bfseries Teilstaaten \\
\hline
In den Zeiten der römischen Republik standen dem Staat jeweils zwei Konsuln vor, deren Machtbefugnisse identisch waren. & Das römische Kaiserreich wurde von einem Alleinherrscher, dem Kaiser, regiert. & In der Völkerwanderungszeit übernahmen die Goten und später die Franken die Vorherrschaft. & Im späteren Mittelalter regierten Fürsten einen Fleckenteppich von Einzelstaaten. \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{center}
Create a new macro `\verb+headingline+` which produces the following output:

```latex
\headingline{Very important heading}
```

Exercise 17.2  Solution on page 359

Create a new macro `\verb+headingline+` which produces the following output:

```
\headingline{Very important heading}
```

Very important heading

Exercise 17.3  Solution on page 359

Create a new macro `\verb+minitable+` which produces the following output:

```
\minitable{My heading}{In this tiny tabular, there is only a heading and some text below which has a width of ten centimeters.}
```

```
My heading

In this tiny tabular, there is only a heading and some text below which has a width of ten centimeters.
```
Create a new macro \verb+\synop+ which typesets a synoptic text according to the following example. Base your macro on a tabular which takes the total line width. \par
\verb+$\verb+$

\synop{Neil Armstrong}{That’s one small step for a man, one giant leap for mankind.}{Das ist ein kleiner Schritt für einen Mann, ein riesiger Sprung für die Menschheit.}

\synop{Neil Armstrong}{That’s one small step for a man, one giant leap for mankind.}{Das ist ein kleiner Schritt für einen Mann, ein riesiger Sprung für die Menschheit.}


\begin{tcblisting}
\verb+$\verb+$
\verb+$\verb+$
\end{tcblisting}

\begin{tcbwritetemp}
\verb+$\verb+$
\verb+$\verb+$
\end{tcbwritetemp}

\tcbusetemplisting

Now, we give a list of all exercises with:

\begin{tcblisting}
\verb+$\verb+$
\verb+$\verb+$
\end{tcblisting}

17.10 List of Exercises

17.1 Exercise with solution on page 359 ........................................... 356
17.2 Exercise with solution on page 359 ........................................... 357
17.3 Exercise with solution on page 359 ........................................... 357
17.4 Exercise with solution on page 360 ........................................... 358
17.11 Solutions for the given \LaTeX Exercises

For all solutions, a macro \texttt{\processsol} was written to the file \texttt{\jobname.records}. Now, we need a definition for this macro to use the solutions.

\begin{verbatim}
% \usepackage{hyperref} % for phantomlabel
\newtcbinputlisting{\processsol}[]{%
texercisestyle, listing only, listing file={#1}, phantomlabel={sol:#2},%
title={Solution for Exercise \ref{exe:#2} on page \pageref{exe:#2}},}
\end{verbatim}

The loading of all solutions is done by:

\texttt{\tcbinputrecords}

With this, we get:

\begin{verbatim}
\begin{tabular}{|p{3cm}|p{3cm}|p{3cm}|p{3cm}|}\hline
\multicolumn{4}{|c|}{\bfseries\itshape Das alte Italien}\hline
\multicolumn{2}{|c|}{\bfseries\itshape Antike} & \multicolumn{2}{c|}{\bfseries\itshape Mittelalter}\hline
\multicolumn{1}{|c|}{\itshape Republik} & \multicolumn{1}{c|}{\itshape Kaiserreich} & \multicolumn{1}{c|}{\itshape Franken} & \multicolumn{1}{c|}{\itshape Teilstaaten}\hline
In den Zeiten der r"{o}mischen Republik standen dem Staat jeweils zwei Konsuln vor, deren Machtbefugnisse identisch waren. & Das r"{o}mische Kaiserreich wurde von einem Alleinherrscher, dem Kaiser, regiert. & In der V"{o}lkerwanderungszeit "{u}bernahmen die Goten und sp"{a}ter die Franken die Vorherrschaft. & Im sp"{a}teren Mittelalter regierten F"{u}rsten einen Fleckenteppich von Einzelstaaten.\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{verbatim}

Solution for Exercise 17.2 on page 357

\begin{verbatim}
\newcommand{\headingline}[1]{% 
\begin{center}\Large\bfseries #1\end{center}}
\end{verbatim}

Solution for Exercise 17.3 on page 357

\begin{verbatim}
\newcommand{\minitable}[2]{% 
\begin{center}\begin{tabular}{p{10cm}}\hline
\multicolumn{1}{c}{\bfseries#1}\hline
#2\hline
\end{tabular}\end{center}}
\end{verbatim}
Solution for Exercise 17.4 on page 358

\newcommand{\synop}[3]{%
  \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\linewidth-\tabcolsep*2-\arrayrulewidth}/2|%
    p{\linewidth-\tabcolsep*2-\arrayrulewidth}/2\}@{}}
  \hline
  \multicolumn{2}{c}{\bfseries #1}\\hline
  \multicolumn{1}{c|}{\itshape English} & \multicolumn{1}{c}{\itshape German}\hline
  #2 & #3
  \end{tabular}}

\synop{English and German}{English}{German}

\begin{tabular}{@{}p{\linewidth-\tabcolsep*2-\arrayrulewidth}/2|%
    p{\linewidth-\tabcolsep*2-\arrayrulewidth}/2\}@{}}
  \hline
  \multicolumn{2}{c}{\bfseries Exercise 17.4}\\hline
  \multicolumn{1}{c|}{\itshape Problem} & \multicolumn{1}{c}{\itshape Solution}\hline
  #1 & #2\hline
  \end{tabular}
The library is loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

```
\tcbuselibrary{theorems}
```

This also loads the package `amsmath`.

### 18.1 Macros of the Library

```
\newtcbtheorem[\langle init options \rangle]{\langle name \rangle}{\langle display name \rangle}{\langle options \rangle}{\langle prefix \rangle}
```

Creates new environments \langle name \rangle and \langle name \rangle* based on `tcolorbox` to frame a (mathematical) theorem. The \langle display name \rangle is used in the title line with a number, e.g. «Theorem 5.1». The \langle options \rangle are given to the underlying `tcolorbox` to control the appearance. The \langle init options \rangle allow setting up automatic numbering, see Section 5 on page 114. The new environment \langle name \rangle takes one optional and two mandatory parameters. The optional parameter supplements the options and should be used only in rare cases. The first mandatory parameter is the title text for the theorem and is also set as `/tcb/nameref` identifier. The second mandatory parameter is a \langle marker \rangle. The theorem is automatically labeled with \langle prefix\rangle\langle separator\rangle\langle marker \rangle where \langle separator \rangle is predefined as “:”, see `/tcb/label separator`.

The new environment \langle name \rangle* takes one optional and one mandatory parameter and represents an unnumbered variant of the environment \langle name \rangle. This variant is not labeled and not listed in lists of theorems.

#### Definition in the preamble:

```
\newtcbtheorem[number within=section]{mytheo}{My Theorem}{colback=green!5,colframe=green!35!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}{th}
```

% usage of `\nameref` needs `nameref` or `hyperref` to be loaded
```
\begin{mytheo}{This is my title}{theoexample}
This is the text of the theorem. The counter is automatically assigned and, in this example, prefixed with the section number. This theorem is numbered with \ref{th:theoexample}, it is given on page \pageref{th:theoexample}, and it is titled «This is my title».\n\end{mytheo}
```

My Theorem 18.1: This is my title

This is the text of the theorem. The counter is automatically assigned and, in this example, prefixed with the section number. This theorem is numbered with 18.1, it is given on page 361, and it is titled «This is my title».

```
\begin{mytheo}[label=myownlabel]{This is my title}{}
The label parameter can be left empty without `LaTeX` error. Or you may use an own label to reference Theorem \ref{myownlabel}.\n\end{mytheo}
```

My Theorem 18.2: This is my title

The label parameter can be left empty without `BibTeX` error. Or you may use an own label to reference Theorem 18.2.
\begin{mytheo}\{\}
  The title can also be left empty without problem. Note that the \enquote{:} vanished magically.
\end{mytheo}

My Theorem 18.3
The title can also be left empty without problem. Note that the “;” vanished magically.

\begin{mytheo*}{Unnumbered Theorem}
  This theorem is not numbered.
\end{mytheo*}

My Theorem: Unnumbered Theorem
This theorem is not numbered.

\begin{mytheo*}\{\}
  This theorem has no number and no title.
\end{mytheo*}

My Theorem
This theorem has no number and no title.

To switch off the \nameref feature permanently, add \nameref/.style={\} inside the \langle\options\rangle list.

\renewtcbtheorem[\langle init options\rangle]{\langle name\rangle}{\langle display name\rangle}{\langle options\rangle}{\langle prefix\rangle}

Operates like \newtcbtheorem *P.361, but based on \renewenvironment instead of \newenvironment. An existing environment is redefined.

\tcbmaketheorem{\langle name\rangle}{\langle display name\rangle}{\langle options\rangle}{\langle counter\rangle}{\langle prefix\rangle}

\newtcbtheorem *P.361 supersedes this macro.

Creates a new environment \langle name\rangle based on \tcolorbox to frame a (mathematical) theorem. The \langle display name\rangle is used in the title line with a number, e.g. «Theorem 5.1». The \langle options\rangle are given to the underlying \tcolorbox to control the appearance. The \langle counter\rangle is used for automatic numbering. The new environment \langle name\rangle takes one optional and two mandatory parameters. The optional parameter supplements the options and should be used only in rare cases. The first mandatory parameter is the title text for the theorem and the second mandatory parameter is a \langle marker\rangle. The theorem is automatically labeled with \langle prefix\rangle\langle separator\rangle\langle marker\rangle where \langle separator\rangle is predefined as “;”, see /tcb/label separator *P.368.
\tcbmath\{\text{mathematical box content}\}

Creates a \texttt{tcolorbox} \footnote{P.12} which is fitted to the width of the given \textit{\langle mathematical box content \rangle}. This box is intended to be applied as part of a larger formula and may be used as replacement for the \texttt{boxed} macro of \texttt{amsmath}.

\begin{equation}
\tcbset\{fonttitle=\scriptsize\}
\tcboxmath\{colback=LightBlue!25!white, colframe=blue\}{ a^2 = 16 } \quad \Rightarrow \quad \tcboxmath\{colback=Salmon!25!white, colframe=red, title=Implication\}\% \\
\{ a = 4 \lor a = -4. \}
\end{equation}

\texttt{a}^2 = 16 \Rightarrow \quad \text{Implication} \quad a = 4 \lor a = -4.

(3)

\tcbhighmath\{\text{mathematical box content}\}

This is a special case of the \texttt{tcbmath} macro which uses the style \texttt{/tcb/highlight math} \footnote{P.373}. It is intended to provide context sensitive highlighting of formula parts. The color settings via \texttt{/tcb/highlight math style} \footnote{P.373} may be different inside theorems or other colored areas and outside.

\begin{align}
\tcbhighmath\{\sum\limits_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n}\} &= \infty. \\
\int x^2 \ dx &= \frac{1}{3} x^3 + c.
\end{align}

\begin{tcolorbox}\[\texttt{ams align},\texttt{myformula}\]
\tcbhighmath\{\sum\limits_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n}\} &= \infty. \\
\int x^2 \ dx &= \frac{1}{3} x^3 + c.
\end{tcolorbox}

\sum\limits_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} = \infty.

(4)

\int x^2 \ dx = \frac{1}{3} x^3 + c.

(5)

\sum\limits_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} = \infty.

(6)

\int x^2 \ dx = \frac{1}{3} x^3 + c.

(7)
\texttt{\textbackslash tcbhighmath}^\textsuperscript{P.363} can be used in symbiosis with the \texttt{empheq} package which allows to specify own boxing commands to mark multiline formulas.

\begin{center}
\begin{empheq}[box=\textcolor{red}{\tcbhighmath}]{align}
a&=\sin(z) \\
E&=mc^2 + \int_a^b x \, dx
\end{empheq}
\end{center}

\begin{tcbset}{highlight math style={enhanced,
colframe=red!60!black,colback=yellow!50!white,arc=4pt,boxrule=1pt,
drop fuzzy shadow}}
\begin{empheq}[box=\textcolor{red}{\tcbhighmath}]{align}
a&=\sin(z) \\
E&=mc^2 + \int_a^b x \, dx
\end{empheq}
\end{tcbset}

Besides \texttt{\textbackslash tcbhighmath}^\textsuperscript{P.363}, one can easily define an independent new box based on \texttt{\textbackslash tcbox}^\textsuperscript{P.14} which acts like \texttt{\textbackslash tcbhighmath}^\textsuperscript{P.363}:

\begin{center}
\begin{empheq}[box=\textcolor{green}{\otherbox}]{align}
a = \sin(z) \\
E = mc^2 + \int_a^b x \, dx
\end{empheq}
\end{center}

\begin{equation}
\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash tcbhighmath}} \{E\} = \textcolor{green}{\otherbox}\{mc^2\}
\end{equation}
18.2 Option Keys of the Library

/\texttt{tcb/separator \, sign}\quad\langle\texttt{sign}\rangle\quad\text{(no default, initially :)}

The given \langle\texttt{sign}\rangle is used inside the title text of a theorem as separator between display name combined with number and the specific title text. It is omitted, if there is no specific title text.

\begin{verbatim}
% \usepackage{amssymb}
\newtcbtheorem[use counter from=mytheo]{sometheorem}{Theorem}{
\{colback=white,colframe=red!50!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
    \, separator sign=\{ \ \&blacktriangleright\}\}\{theo\}
\begin{sometheorem}{My example}{}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}
\end{verbatim}

\textbf{Theorem 18.4 ▶ My example}

My theorem text.

/\texttt{tcb/separator \, sign \, colon}\quad\text{(style, no value, initially set)}

Sets \texttt{/tcb/separator sign} to the default colon : sign.

\begin{verbatim}
\newtcbtheorem[use counter from=mytheo]{sometheorem}{Theorem}{
\{colback=white,colframe=red!50!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
    \, separator sign colon\}\{theo\}
\begin{sometheorem}{My example}{}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}
\end{verbatim}

\textbf{Theorem 18.5 – My example}

My theorem text.

/\texttt{tcb/separator \, sign \, none}\quad\text{(style, no value)}

Sets \texttt{/tcb/separator sign} to empty.

\begin{verbatim}
\newtcbtheorem[use counter from=mytheo]{sometheorem}{Theorem}{
\{colback=white,colframe=red!50!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
    \, separator sign none\}\{theo\}
\begin{sometheorem}{My example}{}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}
\end{verbatim}

\textbf{Theorem 18.6 My example}

My theorem text.
The given \langle left \rangle and \langle right \rangle delimiter signs are used to frame the descriptive title text of a theorem.

Theorem 18.7: «My example»
My theorem text.

Theorem 18.8: (My example)
My theorem text.

Theorem 18.9: My example
My theorem text.
Sets \textit{⟨text⟩} (e.g. font settings) before the descriptive title text deviating from /\tcb/fonttitle\textsuperscript{\p.29}. The \textit{⟨text⟩} is removed, if \texttt{description font} is used without value.

\begin{tcbtheorem}[use counter from=mytheo]{sometheorem}{Theorem}[]{\begin{sometheorem}{My example}{}}\end{sometheorem}

Theorem 18.10: \textit{“My example”}

My theorem text.

\texttt{\newtcbtheorem[use counter from=mytheo]{sometheorem}{Theorem}}
\begin{tcbtheorem}{\begin{sometheorem}{My example}{}}\end{sometheorem}

\texttt{\newtcbtheorem[use counter from=mytheo]{sometheorem}{Theorem}}
\begin{tcbtheorem}{\begin{sometheorem}{My example}{}}\end{sometheorem}

Theorem 18.11: \textit{My example}

My theorem text.

\texttt{\newtcbtheorem[use counter from=mytheo]{sometheorem}{Theorem}}
\begin{tcbtheorem}{\begin{sometheorem}{My example}{}}\end{sometheorem}

Theorem 18.12: My example.

My theorem text.

\texttt{\newtcbtheorem[use counter from=mytheo]{sometheorem}{Theorem}}
\begin{tcbtheorem}{\begin{sometheorem}{My example}{}}\end{sometheorem}
Sets /tcb/terminator sign colon \textsuperscript{P.367} to the colon : sign.

```
\newtcbtheorem[use counter from=mytheo]{sometheorem}{Theorem}[
{colback=white,colframe=red!50!black,fonttitle=\bfseries, separator sign dash,terminator sign colon}{theo}]
\begin{sometheorem}{My example}{}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}
```

Theorem 18.13 – My example:

My theorem text.

Sets /tcb/terminator sign dash \textsuperscript{P.367} to an en-dash sign.

```
\newtcbtheorem[use counter from=mytheo]{sometheorem}{Theorem}[
{colback=white,colframe=red!50!black,fonttitle=\bfseries, terminator sign dash}{theo}]
\begin{sometheorem}{My example}{}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}
```

Theorem 18.14: My example –

My theorem text.

Sets /tcb/terminator sign none \textsuperscript{P.367} to the default empty text.

```
\newtcbtheorem[use counter from=mytheo]{sometheorem}{Theorem}[
{colback=white,colframe=red!50!black,fonttitle=\bfseries, label separator=*}{theo}]
\begin{sometheorem}{My example}{myex}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}
```

See Example \ref{theo*myex}.

Theorem 18.15: My example

My theorem text.

See Example 18.15.
The given \langle \textit{style} \rangle is used in connection with labels created with environments which are defined themselves by \newtcbtheorem \textsuperscript{P.361}. This \langle \textit{style} \rangle uses one argument which is automatically set to the full label marker of the environment, i.e. a text consisting of \langle \textit{prefix} \rangle (defined by \newtcbtheorem \textsuperscript{P.361}), /tcb/label separator \textsuperscript{P.368}, and \langle \textit{marker} \rangle (defined by an actual theorem environment).

\begin{tcblisting}[sidebyside,columns={m},column 1={width=0.95\linewidth},highlight code=true]
% The following adds a hyper target to all environments
% created with \newtcbtheorem
\tcbset{theorem full label supplement={hypertarget={#1}}}\\
\newtcbtheorem[use counter from=mytheo]{sometheorem}{Theorem}\\
{colback=white,colframe=red!50!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}{theo}\\
\begin{sometheorem}{My example}{myex2}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}
This automated \hyperlink{theo:myex2}{hyper target can be linked to with a hyper link}.

\textbf{Theorem 18.16: My example}
\begin{minipage}{0.95\linewidth}
My theorem text.
\end{minipage}
This automated hyper target can be linked to with a hyper link.

A second usage of /tcb/theorem full label supplement overwrites the first setting.

\begin{tcblisting}[sidebyside,columns={m},column 1={width=0.95\linewidth},highlight code=true]
\newtcbtheorem[use counter from=mytheo]{sometheorem}{Theorem}\\
{colback=white,colframe=red!50!black,fonttitle=\bfseries, theorem label supplement={hypertarget={XYZ-##1}}, theorem full label supplement={code={\marginnote{##1}}}}{theo}\\
\begin{sometheorem}{My example}{myex3}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}
This automated \hyperlink{XYZ-myex3}{hyper target can be linked to with a hyper link}.

\textbf{Theorem 18.17: My example}
\begin{minipage}{0.95\linewidth}
My theorem text.
\end{minipage}
This automated hyper target can be linked to with a hyper link.

\end{tcblisting}
Sets the hanging indent of the theorem title to `auto` or the given ⟨length⟩. For `auto`, the hanging indent matches the display name, number and separator sign of the theorem. If ⟨length⟩ is negative, the theorem title is indented positively without hanging indent.

\newtcbtheorem[use counter from=mytheo]{sometheorem}{Theorem}
{colback=white,colframe=red!50!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}{theo}

\begin{sometheorem}{This is a very long and complicated title for a quite short and nearly empty theorem}{myexA1}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}

\begin{sometheorem}[theorem hanging indent=5mm]{This is a very long and complicated title for a quite short and nearly empty theorem}{myexA2}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}

\begin{sometheorem}[theorem hanging indent=0pt]{This is a very long and complicated title for a quite short and nearly empty theorem}{myexA3}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}

\begin{sometheorem}[theorem hanging indent=-5mm]{This is a very long and complicated title for a quite short and nearly empty theorem}{myexA4}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}

Theorem 18.18: This is a very long and complicated title for a quite short and nearly empty theorem
My theorem text.

Theorem 18.19: This is a very long and complicated title for a quite short and nearly empty theorem
My theorem text.

Theorem 18.20: This is a very long and complicated title for a quite short and nearly empty theorem
My theorem text.

Theorem 18.21: This is a very long and complicated title for a quite short and nearly empty theorem
My theorem text.
%tcb/theorem name and number
(style, no value, initially set)

Prints theorem name followed by theorem number inside the title.

\newtcbtheorem[use counter from=mytheo]{sometheorem}{Theorem}
{colback=white,colframe=red!50!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
 theorem name and number}{theo}
\begin{sometheorem}{My example}{}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}

Theorem 18.22: My example

My theorem text.

%tcb/theorem number and name
(style, no value)

Prints theorem number followed by theorem name inside the title.

\newtcbtheorem[use counter from=mytheo]{sometheorem}{Theorem}
{colback=white,colframe=red!50!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
 theorem number and name}{theo}
\begin{sometheorem}{My example}{}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}

18.23 Theorem: My example

My theorem text.

%tcb/theorem name
(style, no value)

Prints theorem name without number inside the title.

\newtcbtheorem[use counter from=mytheo]{sometheorem}{Theorem}
{colback=white,colframe=red!50!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
 theorem name,enhanced,watermark text={\thetcbcounter}}{theo}
\begin{sometheorem}{My example}{}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}

Theorem: My example

My theorem text. 18.24
This key is internally used by \tcbmaketheorem, but can be used directly in a tcolorbox for a more flexible approach. The \langle display name \rangle is used together with the increased \langle counter \rangle value and the \langle title \rangle for the title line of the box. Additionally, a \label with the given \langle marker \rangle is created.

\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=green!10,colframe=green!50!black,arc=4mm, theorem={Test}{texercise}{Direct usage}{myMarker}]
\end{tcolorbox}

Here, we see the test \ref{myMarker}.

For a common appearance inside the document, the key \texttt{theorem} should not be used directly as in the example above, but as part of a new environment created by hand or using \texttt{tcbbmaketheorem} or using its successor \texttt{newtcbtheorem}.
A style which is used for \texttt{tcbhighmath} and which is predefined as \texttt{notitle,nophantom,\textcolor{red}{colframe=red,\textcolor{yellow}{colback=yellow!25!white}}}. It can be changed with the usual \texttt{pgf} techniques or with \texttt{/tcb/highlight math style}.

\begin{verbatim}
\begin{align*}
\tcbhighmath{1} + 1 &= 2, \\
\tcbset{highlight math/.append style={left=0mm,right=0mm,top=0mm,bottom=0mm}}\tcbhighmath{1} + 1 &= 2.
\end{align*}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{/tcb/highlight math style=⟨style definition⟩} (style, no default)

Changes the definition for \texttt{/tcb/highlight math} to \texttt{notitle,nophantom} plus the given ⟨\texttt{style definition}⟩. See \texttt{tcbhighmath\textsuperscript{P.363}} for another example.

% \texttt{\tcbuselibrary{skins}}
\tcbset{highlight math style={enhanced,%\textsuperscript{\texttt{\textbackslash\texttt{remember as=fx}}}}\tcbhighmath{f(x)}
  &= \int_{1}^{x} \frac{1}{t^2} \, dt \\
  &= \left[ -\frac{1}{t} \right]_{1}^{x} \\
  &= -\frac{1}{x} + \frac{1}{1} \\
  &= \texttt{\tcbhighmath{1-\frac{1}{x}}}.
\end{align*}
\end{verbatim}
\begin{tcolorbox}[math,colback=yellow!10!white,colframe=red!50!black]
\sum\limits_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} = \infty.
\end{tcolorbox}
/tcb/ams align upper

Adds an \texttt{amsmath align} environment to the start and end of the upper part.

/tcb/ams align lower

Adds an \texttt{amsmath align} environment to the start and end of the lower part.

/tcb/ams align

Adds an \texttt{amsmath align} environment to the start and end of the upper and lower part.

\begin{tcolorbox}[ams align,colback=yellow!10!white,colframe=red!50!black]
\begin{align*}
\sum_{n=1}^\infty \frac{1}{n} &= \infty. \\
\int x^2 \, dx &= \frac{1}{3} x^3 + c.
\end{align*}
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/ams align* upper

Adds an \texttt{amsmath align*} environment to the start and end of the upper part.

/tcb/ams align* lower

Adds an \texttt{amsmath align*} environment to the start and end of the lower part.

/tcb/ams align*

Adds an \texttt{amsmath align*} environment to the start and end of the upper and lower part.

\begin{tcolorbox}[ams align*,colback=yellow!10!white,colframe=red!50!black]
\begin{align*}
\sum_{n=1}^\infty \frac{1}{n} &= \infty. \\
\int x^2 \, dx &= \frac{1}{3} x^3 + c.
\end{align*}
\end{tcolorbox}
/tcb/ams gather upper (style, no value)

Adds an \texttt{amsmath gather} environment to the start and end of the upper part.

/tcb/ams gather lower (style, no value)

Adds an \texttt{amsmath gather} environment to the start and end of the lower part.

/tcb/ams gather (style, no value)

Adds an \texttt{amsmath gather} environment to the start and end of the upper and lower part.

\begin{tcolorbox}[ams gather,colback=yellow!10!white,colframe=red!50!black]
\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} = \infty.\quad (18)\\
\int x^2 \, dx = \frac{1}{3} x^3 + c.\quad (19)
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/ams gather* upper (style, no value)

Adds an \texttt{amsmath gather*} environment to the start and end of the upper part.

/tcb/ams gather* lower (style, no value)

Adds an \texttt{amsmath gather*} environment to the start and end of the lower part.

/tcb/ams gather* (style, no value)

Adds an \texttt{amsmath gather*} environment to the start and end of the upper and lower part.

\begin{tcolorbox}[ams gather,colback=yellow!10!white,colframe=red!50!black]
\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} = \infty.\quad (18)\\
\int x^2 \, dx = \frac{1}{3} x^3 + c.\quad (19)
\end{tcolorbox}

376
Neutralizes the `\abovedisplayskip` of a following `align` or `gather` environment for the upper part. Note that the text content has to start with such a formula.

Neutralizes the `\abovedisplayskip` of a following `align` or `gather` environment for the lower part. Note that the text content has to start with such a formula.

Neutralizes the `\abovedisplayskip` of a following `align` or `gather` environment for the upper part and lower part. Note that the text content has to start with such a formula.

\begin{tcolorbox} [ams nodisplayskip,colback=yellow!10!white,colframe=red!50!black]
\begin{align}
\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} &= \infty. \\
\int x^2 \, dx &= \frac{1}{3} x^3 + c.
\end{align}
\end{tcolorbox}

And now for something completely different.

New colored mathematical environments are easily created using `\newtcolorbox`:

\begin{newtcolorbox}[mymath, colback=yellow!10!white,colframe=red!50!black]
\begin{align}
\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} &= \infty. \\
\int x^2 \, dx &= \frac{1}{3} x^3 + c.
\end{align}
\end{newtcolorbox}

All described options like `\tcb/ams gather upper` `\tcb/ams gather lower` `\tcb/ams gather` `\tcb/before upper` `\tcb/after upper` `\tcb/before lower` `\tcb/after lower` are (partially) setting (overwriting) the keys `\tcb/before upper`, `\tcb/after upper`, `\tcb/before lower`, `\tcb/after lower`. Therefore, e.g. `\tcbset{ams gather,before upper={\text{Pythagoras:}}}` produces an invalid result. For this case, you are invited to use `\tcbset{ams gather,before upper app={\text{Pythagoras:}}}`, see `\tcb/before upper app`.
Applies a predefined style \(<name>\) to the theorem environment. Some of the feasible \(<name>\) values resemble style names from the packages \texttt{theorem} and \texttt{ntheorem} to give convenient access to known patterns.

The styles alter \texttt{/tcb/separat}\texttt{}or sign} \(^{P.365}\), \texttt{/tcb/description delimiters} \(^{P.366}\), \texttt{/tcb/terminator sign} \(^{P.367}\), and more. Therefore, one should apply such keys \textit{after} a theorem style.

For the following examples, we use:

\begin{verbatim}
\newtcbtheorem[use counter from=mytheo]{theorem}{Theorem}{
  fonttitle=\bfseries\upshape,fontupper=\itshape,
  colframe=green!50!black,colback=green!10!white,
  colbacktitle=green!20!white,coltitle=blue!75!black}{theo}
\end{verbatim}

The predefined styles are:

- **standard**: This is the initial value.

\begin{verbatim}
\begin{theorem}[theorem style=standard]{standard}{}
  This is my theorem. \begin{equation*} a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \end{equation*}
\end{theorem}
\end{verbatim}

**Theorem 18.25: standard**

\begin{verbatim}
This is my theorem. \begin{equation*} a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \end{equation*}
\end{verbatim}

- **change standard**

\begin{verbatim}
\begin{theorem}[theorem style=change standard]{change standard}{}
  This is my theorem. \begin{equation*} a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \end{equation*}
\end{theorem}
\end{verbatim}

**18.26 Theorem: change standard**

\begin{verbatim}
This is my theorem. \begin{equation*} a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \end{equation*}
\end{verbatim}

- **plain**

\begin{verbatim}
\begin{theorem}[theorem style=plain]{plain}{}
  This is my theorem. \begin{equation*} a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \end{equation*}
\end{theorem}
\end{verbatim}

**Theorem 18.27 (plain):** This is my theorem.

\begin{verbatim}
This is my theorem. \begin{equation*} a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \end{equation*}
\end{verbatim}
• break

\begin{theorem}[theorem style=break]{break}{}
This is my theorem. \begin{equation*} a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \end{equation*} \end{theorem}

Theorem 18.28 (break):
This is my theorem.
\[ a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \]

• plain apart

\begin{theorem}[theorem style=plain apart]{plain apart}{}
This is my theorem. \begin{equation*} a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \end{equation*} \end{theorem}

Theorem 18.29 (plain apart)
This is my theorem.
\[ a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \]

• change

\begin{theorem}[theorem style=change]{change}{}
This is my theorem. \begin{equation*} a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \end{equation*} \end{theorem}

18.30 Theorem (change): This is my theorem.
\[ a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \]

• change break

\begin{theorem}[theorem style=change break]{change break}{}
This is my theorem. \begin{equation*} a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \end{equation*} \end{theorem}

18.31 Theorem (change break):
This is my theorem.
\[ a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \]

• change apart

\begin{theorem}[theorem style=change apart]{change apart}{}
This is my theorem. \begin{equation*} a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \end{equation*} \end{theorem}

18.32 Theorem (change apart)
This is my theorem.
\[ a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \]
• **margin**

\begin{theorem}[theorem style=margin,left=10mm]{margin}
This is my theorem. \begin{equation*} a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \end{equation*} \end{theorem}

\begin{theorem}[theorem style=margin,left=10mm,oversize]{margin}
This is my theorem. \begin{equation*} a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \end{equation*} \end{theorem}

18.33 Theorem (margin): This is my theorem.
\[ a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \]

18.34 Theorem (margin): This is my theorem.
\[ a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \]

• **margin break**

\begin{theorem}[theorem style=margin break,left=10mm]{margin break}
This is my theorem. \begin{equation*} a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \end{equation*} \end{theorem}

\begin{theorem}[theorem style=margin break,left=10mm,oversize]{margin break}
This is my theorem. \begin{equation*} a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \end{equation*} \end{theorem}

18.35 Theorem (margin break):
This is my theorem.
\[ a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \]

18.36 Theorem (margin break):
This is my theorem.
\[ a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \]

• **margin apart**

\begin{theorem}[theorem style=margin apart,left=10mm]{margin apart}
This is my theorem. \begin{equation*} a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \end{equation*} \end{theorem}

\begin{theorem}[theorem style=margin apart,left=10mm,oversize]{margin apart}
This is my theorem. \begin{equation*} a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \end{equation*} \end{theorem}

18.37 Theorem (margin apart)
This is my theorem.
\[ a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \]

18.38 Theorem (margin apart)
This is my theorem.
\[ a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \]
18.3  Examples for Definitions and Theorems

In the following, the application of \texttt{\tcbmaketheorem}\textsuperscript{P.362} to highlight mathematical definitions, theorems, or the like is demonstrated.

At first, additional \texttt{tcb} keys are created for the appearance of the colored boxes. It is assumed that theorems and corollaries should be identically colored. All following environments are numbered with a common counter, but this can be changed easily. Here, the counter output is supplemented by the subsection number. Further, the \texttt{cleveref} package \cite{5} is used for clever references.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\textit{Definition in the preamble:}
\begin{verbatim}
% \usepackage{cleveref}
\tcbset{
defstyle/.style={fonttitle=\bfseries\upshape, fontupper=\slshape, arc=0mm, colback=blue!5!white,colframe=blue!75!black},
\theostyle/.style={fonttitle=\bfseries\upshape, fontupper=\slshape, colback=red!10!white,colframe=red!75!black},}
\newtcbtheorem[number within=subsection,crefname={definition}{definitions}]{Definition}{Definition}{defstyle}{def}
\newtcbtheorem[use counter from=Definition,crefname={theorem}{theorems}]{Theorem}{Theorem}{theostyle}{theo}
\newtcbtheorem[use counter from=Definition,crefname={corollary}{corollaries}]{Corollary}{Corollary}{theostyle}{cor}
\end{verbatim}
\end{tcolorbox}

By \texttt{\newtcbtheorem}\textsuperscript{P.361}, commonly numbered theorem environments are created now. \texttt{defstyle} and \texttt{theostyle} are used for the appearance.

Now, everything is prepared for the following examples.

The following theorem is numbered as \texttt{Cref\{theo:diffbarstetig\}} and referenced with the marker \texttt{theo:diffbarstetig}.\bigskip

\begin{Theorem}{Differenzierbarkeit bedingt Stetigkeit, wobei diese Benennung zu Testzwecken ungewöhnlich lang ist\{diffbarstetig\}}
Eine Funktion $f:I\to \mathbb{R}$ ist in $x_0 \in I$ stetig, wenn $f$ in $x_0$ differenzierbar ist.
\end{Theorem}

The following theorem is numbered as Theorem 18.3.1 and referenced with the marker \texttt{theo:diffbarstetig}.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\textbf{Theorem 18.3.1:} Differenzierbarkeit bedingt Stetigkeit, wobei diese Benennung zu Testzwecken ungewöhnlich lang ist

\textit{Eine Funktion $f : I \to \mathbb{R}$ ist in $x_0 \in I$ stetig, wenn $f$ in $x_0$ differenzierbar ist.}
\end{tcolorbox}

381
The following definition is numbered as \Cref{def:diffbarkeit} and referenced with the marker \texttt{def:diffbarkeit}.

\begin{Definition}{Differenzierbarkeit}{diffbarkeit}
Eine Funktion $f:~I\to\mathbb{R}$ auf einem Intervall $I$ hei\ss{}t in $x_0\in I$ differenzierbar oder linear approximierbar, wenn der Grenzwert
\begin{equation*}
\lim_{x\to x_0}\frac{f(x)-f(x_0)}{x-x_0} = 
\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{f(x_0+h)-f(x_0)}{h}
\end{equation*}
existiert. Bei Existenz hei\ss{}t dieser Grenzwert Ableitung oder Differentialquotient von $f$ in $x_0$ und man schreibt f"{u}r ihn
\begin{equation*}
f'(x_0) \quad \text{oder} \quad \frac{df}{dx}(x_0).
\end{equation*}
\end{Definition}

The following corollary is numbered as \Cref{cor:nullstellen} and referenced with the marker \texttt{cor:nullstellen}.

\begin{Corollary}{Nullstellenexistenz}{nullstellen}
Ist $f: [a,b]\to\mathbb{R}$ stetig und haben $f(a)$ und $f(b)$ entgegengesetzte Vorzeichen, also $f(a)f(b)<0$, so besitzt $f$ eine Nullstelle $x_0\in]a,b[$, also $f(x_0)=0$.
\end{Corollary}

The following corollary is numbered as Corollary 18.3.3 and referenced with the marker cor:nullstellen.

\begin{Corollary}{Nullstellenexistenz}{nullstellen}
Ist $f: [a,b]\to\mathbb{R}$ stetig und haben $f(a)$ und $f(b)$ entgegengesetzte Vorzeichen, also $f(a)f(b)<0$, so besitzt $f$ eine Nullstelle $x_0\in[a,b]$, also $f(x_0) = 0$.
\end{Corollary}
Theorem 18.3.4: Hinreichende Bedingung für Wendepunkte

$f$ sei eine auf einem Intervall $[a,b]$ dreimal stetig differenzierbare Funktion. Ist $f''(x_0) = 0$ in $x_0 \in [a,b]$ und $f'''(x_0) \neq 0$, so ist $(x_0, f(x_0))$ ein Wendepunkt von $f$.

Theorem 18.3.5 (Mittelwertsatz für $n$ Variable)

Es sei $n \in \mathbb{N}$, $D \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$ eine offene Menge und $f \in C^1(D, \mathbb{R})$. Dann gibt es auf jeder Strecke $[x_0, x] \subset D$ einen Punkt $\xi \in [x_0, x]$ so dass gilt

$$f(x) - f(x_0) = \text{grad } f(\xi)^T (x - x_0)$$

Here, \texttt{cleveref} support is used to reference Theorem 18.3.5 on Page 383. This theorem can also be referenced by \texttt{\Vref} resulting in Theorem 18.3.5.

Note that /tcb/label type \texttt{P.104} was used in the example above to feed \texttt{cleveref} [5] with the needed name information.
Here, using \Vref resulting in \Vref{theo:meanvaluetheorem} is more interesting\ldots

Here, using \Vref resulting in Theorem 18.3.5 on the preceding page is more interesting...

\begin{YetAnotherTheorem}{Mittelwertsatz f"{u}r $n$ Variable}{mittelwertsatz_n2}
Es sei $n\in\mathbb{N}$, $D\subseteq\mathbb{R}^n$ eine offene Menge und $f\in C^1(D,\mathbb{R})$. Dann gibt es auf jeder Strecke $[x_0,x]\subset D$ einen Punkt $\xi\in[x_0,x]$, so dass gilt
\begin{equation*}
f(x)-f(x_0) = \operatorname{grad} f(\xi)^\top(x-x_0)
\end{equation*}
\end{YetAnotherTheorem}

\begin{YetAnotherTheorem}{Mittelwertsatz f"{u}r $n$ Variable}{mittelwertsatz_n3}
Es sei $n\in\mathbb{N}$, $D\subseteq\mathbb{R}^n$ eine offene Menge und $f\in C^1(D,\mathbb{R})$. Dann gibt es auf jeder Strecke $[x_0,x]\subset D$ einen Punkt $\xi\in[x_0,x]$, so dass gilt
\begin{equation*}
f(x)-f(x_0) = \operatorname{grad} f(\xi)^\top(x-x_0)
\end{equation*}
\end{YetAnotherTheorem}

**Theorem 18.3.6** (Mittelwertsatz für $n$ Variable)

Es sei $n\in\mathbb{N}$, $D\subseteq\mathbb{R}^n$ eine offene Menge und $f\in C^1(D,\mathbb{R})$. Dann gibt es auf jeder Strecke $[x_0,x] \subset D$ einen Punkt $\xi\in[x_0,x]$, so dass gilt
\[
f(x) - f(x_0) = \operatorname{grad} f(\xi)^\top(x-x_0)
\]
You need more attention for your theorems? Here, you are ...

\begin{Theorem}[enhanced, fuzzy halo=3mm with yellow, fuzzy halo=2mm with red, fuzzy halo=1mm with yellow, watermark color=red!35!white, watermark text={Overacting\Fundamental Theorem}]
{Fundamental Theorem of Theorems}{fundamental}
\lipsum[1-2]
\end{Theorem}

Overacting Fundamental Theorem

Theorem 18.3.8: Fundamental Theorem of Theorems


Let's try a more conservative approach:

\begin{YetAnotherTheorem}[use counter from=Definition]{YetAnotherTheorem}{Theorem}
{theorem style=plain,enhanced,colframe=blue!50!black,colback=yellow!20!white, coltitle=red!50!black,fonttitle=\upshape\bfseries,fontupper=\itshape, drop fuzzy shadow=blue!50!black!50!white,boxrule=0.4pt}{theo}
\begin{YetAnotherTheorem}{Mittelwertsatz f"{u}r $n$ Variable}{mittelwertsatz_n4}
Es sei $n \in \mathbb{N}$, $D \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$ eine offene Menge und $f \in C^1(D,\mathbb{R})$ eine offene Menge und $\$\{x_0,x\}\subset D$ einen Punkt $\$\{x_0,x\}\$, so dass gilt
\begin{equation*}
 f(x)-f(x_0) = \operatorname{grad} f(\xi)^\top(x-x_0)
\end{equation*}
\end{YetAnotherTheorem}

Theorem 18.3.9 (Mittelwertsatz für $n$ Variable): Es sei $n \in \mathbb{N}$, $D \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$ eine offene Menge und $f \in C^1(D,\mathbb{R})$. Dann gibt es auf jeder Strecke $[x_0,x] \subset D$ einen Punkt $\xi \in [x_0,x]$, so dass gilt

$$f(x) - f(x_0) = \operatorname{grad} f(\xi)^\top(x-x_0)$$
18.4 Using other theorem environments with \texttt{tcolorbox}

Instead of creating theorem environments with the methods described before, environments from other packages can be boxed with a \texttt{tcolorbox}.

Environments may be created e.g. by methods from the \texttt{theorem} package or the \texttt{amsthm} package. \texttt{\textbackslash tcolorboxenvironment} \cite{P.17} can be used to put a box around these environments.

\begin{definitioninthe preamble:}
\begin{footnotesize}
\begin{verbatim}
\usepackage{amsthm}
\theoremstyle{plain}% from `amsthm'
\newtheorem{lem}{Lemma}% from `amsthm'
\tcolorboxenvironment{lem}{
  enhanced jigsaw,colframe=cyan,interior hidden,
  breakable,before skip=10pt,after skip=10pt }
\tcolorboxenvironment{proof}{% `proof' from `amsthm'
  blanker,breakable,left=5mm,
  before skip=10pt,after skip=10pt,
  borderline west={1mm}{0pt}{red}}
\end{verbatim}
\end{footnotesize}
\end{definitioninthe preamble:}

\begin{example}
\begin{minipage}{.4\textwidth}
\begin{lem}
\lipsum[2]
\end{lem}
\end{minipage}
\begin{minipage}{.6\textwidth}
\lipsum[3]
\end{minipage}
\begin{proof}
\lipsum*[4]
\end{proof}
\end{example}


\end{example}
The library is loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

\tcbuselibrary{breakable}

This also loads the package pdfcol.

19.1 Technical Overview

The library \texttt{\textbf{breakable}} supports the automatic breaking of a \texttt{tcolorbox}. This feature is enabled by /tcb/breakable \textsuperscript{\textit{P.389}} and disabled by /tcb/unbreakable \textsuperscript{\textit{P.390}}.

If a \texttt{tcolorbox} is set to be /tcb/breakable \textsuperscript{\textit{P.389}}, then the following algorithm is executed:

1. The box content is read to a box register similar but not identical to the unbreakable case.
2. If the total box fits into the current page, it is shipped out visibly unbroken and the algorithm stops.
3. Otherwise, it is checked if at least /tcb/lines before break \textsuperscript{\textit{P.390}} of the upper box can be placed on the current page. If not, a page break is inserted and the algorithm goes back to Step 2.
4. Now, the \textit{break sequence} starts. The upper box part or the lower box part is split such that it fits into the current page. The fitting part is named \textit{first part} of the \textit{break sequence} and shipped out.
5. If the remaining content of the total box fits into the current page, the algorithm continues with Step 7, else with Step 6.
6. The upper box part or the lower box part is split such that it fits into the current page. The fitting part is named \textit{middle part} of the \textit{break sequence} and shipped out. Then, the algorithm goes back to Step 5.
7. The remaining part is named \textit{last part} of the \textit{break sequence} and shipped out. The algorithm stops.

The algorithm takes care that the optional segmentation line never appears at the end of a box. The optional lower box part is also checked to have at least /tcb/lines before break \textsuperscript{\textit{P.390}}.
In principle, all boxes of the break sequence share the same geometric parameters. The differences are:

- The given /tcb/before \textsuperscript{P.81} and /tcb/after \textsuperscript{P.81} values are used only before the first and after the last part of the break sequence.
- A special behavior between the parts of the break sequence can be given by /tcb/toprule at break \textsuperscript{P.394}, /tcb/bottomrule at break \textsuperscript{P.394}, /tcb/enlarge top at break \textsuperscript{P.89}, and /tcb/enlarge bottom at break by \textsuperscript{P.89}.
- The /tcb/skin \textsuperscript{P.141} decides how the first, middle, and last part look like. Actually, every part type has its own skin given by the options /tcb/skin first \textsuperscript{P.141}, /tcb/skin middle \textsuperscript{P.141}, and /tcb/skin last \textsuperscript{P.141}. Typically, these options are set automatically by the main skin, see Subsection 19.8 from page 403.

### 19.2 Limitations and Known Bugs

- The maximal total height of the upper and of the lower part of normal breakable tcolorboxes is about 65536pt (ca. 2300cm) apiece. If such a part gets longer, the output will get buggy without warning. For very oversized boxes which are longer than 65536pt, use the unlimited value for /tcb/breakable \textsuperscript{P.389}. With the unlimited setting, the applied algorithm has (virtually) no height limit for boxes, but very likely the compiler memory will have to be increased for boxes longer than 300 pages (depending on compiler settings and box content). But it is recommended to use unlimited for critical large boxes only.

- You can nest an unbreakable tcolorbox inside another tcolorbox, even inside a breakable one. But you cannot not nest a breakable box inside a breakable box. The /tcb/breakable \textsuperscript{P.389} key for a nested box is ignored automatically\textsuperscript{3}, i.e. inner boxes are always unbreakable.

After all, in the unlikely case you really want to have the nested box to be breakable, use /tcb/enforce breakable \textsuperscript{P.390} for the nested box\textsuperscript{4}. But, a breakable box inside a breakable box will usually give a mess.

- Depending on the \LaTeX{} engine, if your text content contains some text color changing commands, your color may not survive the break to the next box. See the documentation for /tcb/use color stack \textsuperscript{P.392} for more information.

- The perpage option of the footmisc package is deliberately deactivated inside a breakable box since all footnotes are placed at the end of the box (possibly far away from the reference point).

- Making a box /tcb/breakable \textsuperscript{P.389} which actually is not broken creates a box which acts almost like an unbreakable box. Visual differences are kept as indiscernible as possible, but can appear with certain /tcb/before \textsuperscript{P.81} and /tcb/after \textsuperscript{P.81} settings, especially, if there is an automatic page break before the box.

- Lua\TeX{} version 0.95 changes the behavior of the basic \texttt{\textbackslash vsplit} (a bug?) resulting in badly broken boxes. Thanks to Jeremy Engel, the \texttt{breakable} library contains a patch for this which also loads the the ifluatex package.

---

\textsuperscript{3}Until tcolorbox 3.04, the /tcb/breakable \textsuperscript{P.389} key was not ignored for nested boxes.

\textsuperscript{4}/tcb/enforce breakable \textsuperscript{P.390} acts like /tcb/breakable \textsuperscript{P.389} until tcolorbox 3.04.
19.3 Main Option Keys

\_tcb\_breakable=\text{true}|\text{false}|\text{unlimited} \\
(default \text{true}, initially \text{false})

Allows the \text{tcolorbox} to be breakable. If the box is larger than the available space at the current page, the box is automatically broken and continued to the next page. All sorts of \text{tcolorbox} can be made breakable. It depends on the skin how the breaking looks like. If you do not know better, use \_tcb\_enhanced\_P.217 for breaking a box. The parts of the \text{break sequence} are numbered by the counter \text{tcbbreakpart}.

- \text{false}: Sets the \text{tcolorbox} to be unbreakable.
- \text{true}: Breaks the \text{tcolorbox} from one page to another. The maximal total height of the upper and of the lower part is about 65536pt (ca. 2300cm or ca. 90 pages) apiece.
- \text{unlimited}: Experimental code for unlimited total height of breakable boxes. For boxes longer than 300 pages (or even shorter ones) the compiler memory will have to be increased.

\[
\begin{tcolorbox}[breakable,title=My breakable box]
\end{tcolorbox}

\[
\text{My breakable box}
\]


\[
\text{389}
\]


/tcb/unbreakable (no value, initially set)
Sets the tcolorbox to be unbreakable.

/tcb/enforce breakable (no value)
A tcolorbox inside a tcolorbox is automatically set to be unbreakable. Using /tcb/breakable\*P.389 on such an inner box has no effect. If one really wants the inner box to be breakable, use /tcb/enforce breakable. This will usually give a mess of shattered boxes. You are advised to not use this option.

Note that /tcb/enforce breakable has the functionality that /tcb/breakable\*P.389 had until package version 3.04 and exists for backward compatibility.

/tcb/title after break=⟨text⟩ (no default, initially empty)
The /tcb/title \*P.18 is used only for the first part of a break sequence. Use title after break to create a heading line with ⟨text⟩ as content for all following parts. Also see /tcb/extras title after break\*P.397 for formatting the title text.

/tcb/notitle after break (no value, initially set)
Removes the title line or following parts in a break sequence if set before.

/tcb/adjusted title after break=⟨text⟩ (style, no default, initially unset)
Works like /tcb/adjusted title\*P.18 but applied to /tcb/title after break.

/tcb/lines before break=⟨number⟩ (no default, initially 2)
Assures that the given ⟨number⟩ of lines of the upper box part or the lower box part are placed before a break happens.
	\begin{multicol}{3}\footnotesize

Breakable boxes inside a \texttt{\textbackslash multicol}s environment need special attendance. They are broken by default at $\|\text{\textbackslash textheight}\|$. The \texttt{\textbackslash break at} option can be used to insert better break points by hand.

\begin{tcolorbox} [enhanced jigsaw,\texttt{\textbackslash size}=small,\texttt{\textbackslash vfill before first},
  \texttt{\textbackslash colframe}=red,\texttt{\textbackslash colback}=yellow!10!white,\texttt{\textbackslash before title}=$\|\text{\textbackslash raggedright}$,
  title=$\langle$Broken box inside a \texttt{\textbackslash multicol}s environment$\rangle$,\texttt{\textbackslash fonttitle}=$\|\text{\textbackslash bseries}$,
  \texttt{\textbackslash enforce breakable},\% use only breakable in the real world!
  \texttt{\textbackslash pad at break}=1\text{\textbackslash mm},\texttt{\textbackslash break at}=3\text{\textbackslash cm}/6.3\text{\textbackslash cm} ]
\lipsum[1]
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{\textbackslash refKey}{\texttt{\textbackslash tcb/height fixed for}} may also be considered for \texttt{\textbackslash multicol}s environments.
\end{multicol}

/tcb/enlargepage=\langle\texttt{\textbackslash length}\rangle/\langle\texttt{\textbackslash length}\rangle/\ldots/\langle\texttt{\textbackslash length}\rangle

(no default, initially 0pt)

Inserts a \texttt{\textbackslash enlargethispage}{\langle\texttt{\textbackslash length}\rangle} to the pages of the break sequence, i.e. allows one to enlarge (or shrink) partial boxes. The first \langle\texttt{\textbackslash length}\rangle is applied to the first partial box, the second \langle\texttt{\textbackslash length}\rangle is applied to the second partial box, and so on. The last \langle\texttt{\textbackslash length}\rangle value is applied to all following partial boxes if any. Note that floating boxes will not be enlarged.

\begin{tcolorbox}[breakable,\texttt{\textbackslash enlargepage}=0\text{\textbackslash mm}/baselineskip/2\text{\textbackslash baselineskip}/0\text{\textbackslash mm},\ldots\]

The example code enlarged the second partial box by one line, the third partial box by two lines, and all following parts are not enlarged.

If an automated page break occurs before the first partial box, the page enlargement is applied to the page before the first partial box \textit{and} again to the page of the first partial box. Insert a manual break to prevent this.

In general, \texttt{\textbackslash enlargepage} should be used at the final stage of a document for fine-tuning only.
/tcb/enlargepage flexible={length} (no default, initially 0pt)
This allows an automated page enlargement for up to \(\text{length}\). The algorithm can use this to avoid breaking a box, if there is enough room after enlargement. Also, the last partial box of a break sequence may be enlarged to avoid further breaking.
Note that this potential enlargement is additive to settings of /tcb/enlargepage \^P.391. But /tcb/enlargepage flexible overwrites settings of /tcb/pad before break* \^P.394 or /tcb/pad at break* \^P.394.

\begin{quote}
% The following setting hinders orphan lines for the last partial box
\texttt{tcbset\{enlargepage flexible=\baselineskip\}}
\end{quote}

/tcb/compress page=(option) (default all, initially baselineskip)
This option controls the space management on the page which contains the unbroken box or the first part of a break sequence. Feasible \(\text{option}\) values are:
\begin{itemize}
\item all (default value): All shrinkable glue on the page is potentially used for the unbroken box or the first part of a break sequence. Thus, all vertical spaces on the page will potentially be reduced to their minimal values.
\item baselineskip (initial value): Shrinkable glue up to one \texttt{\baselineskip} on the page is potentially used for the unbroken box or the first part of a break sequence.
\item none: The break algorithm respects the target size of the given glue values on the page. This was the initial value before version 3.34.
\end{itemize}

Note that the box content is not influenced by this option.

/tcb/shrink break goal={length} (no default, initially 0pt)
This is an emergency parameter if the break algorithm produces unpleasant breaks. It shrinks the goal height of the current box part by \(\text{length}\) which may result in smaller boxes. Never use negative values. Usually, this option will never be needed at all.

/tcb/use color stack=true|false (default true, initially false)
Depending on the \LaTeX engine and loaded packages, if your text contains some color changing commands, your color may not survive the break to the next box. For some engines, there is support for additional color stacks which allow colors to survive breaks. Such an color stack can be activated by /tcb/use color stack with help of the \texttt{pdfcol} package. This can be done globally or per box.

Note that activating /tcb/use color stack inserts a color command with a \texttt{whatsit} at the begin of the upper part and of the lower part of a \texttt{tcolorbox} \^P.12. This may add additional vertical space, e.g. if your box text starts with a list like \texttt{enumerate}!

\begin{itemize}
\item pdf\TeX: color stacks supported.
\item Lua\TeX: color stacks supported, but you should consider loading the \texttt{luacolor} package \textit{instead} which avoids the spacing problem.
\item Xe\TeX: color stacks not supported (yet?). From hearsay, with the \texttt{fontspec} package, you may use \texttt{\addfontfeatures\{Color=mycolor\}} to add a font color which survives the break.
\end{itemize}

If \texttt{pdfcol} cannot initialize an additional color stack for the used engine, /tcb/use color stack is silently ignored.
Breakable box without color stack.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{itemize}
\item Some blue text.
\end{itemize}
{\color{red}\itshape \lipsum[2]}\par
More blue text.
\end{tcolorbox}
Text after box.

We do again with /tcb/use color stack. Observe the additional spacing at the begin of the box:

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{itemize}
\item Some blue text.
\end{itemize}
\end{tcolorbox}
Text after box.
19.4 Option Keys for the Break Appearance

/tcb/toprule at break=(length) \hspace{1cm} \text{(no default, initially 0.5mm)}

Sets the line width of the top rule to \(\langle\text{length}\rangle\) if the box is \text{/tcb/breakable} \footnote{P.389}. In this case, it is applied to \textit{middle} and \textit{last} parts in a break sequence. Note that \text{/tcb/toprule} \footnote{P.35} overwrites this value if used afterwards.

/tcb/bottomrule at break=(length) \hspace{1cm} \text{(no default, initially 0.5mm)}

Sets the line width of the bottom rule to \(\langle\text{length}\rangle\) if the box is \text{/tcb/breakable} \footnote{P.389}. In this case, it is applied to \textit{first} and \textit{middle} parts in a break sequence. Note that \text{/tcb/bottomrule} \footnote{P.35} overwrites this value if used afterwards.

/tcb/topsep at break=(length) \hspace{1cm} \text{(no default, initially 0mm)}

Additional vertical space of \(\langle\text{length}\rangle\) which is added at the top of \textit{middle} and \textit{last} parts in a break sequence. In general, it is not advisable to change this value if these parts start with a rule or a title.

/tcb/bottomsep at break=(length) \hspace{1cm} \text{(no default, initially 0mm)}

Additional vertical space of \(\langle\text{length}\rangle\) which is added at the bottom of \textit{first} and \textit{middle} parts in a break sequence. In general, it is not advisable to change this value if these parts end with a rule.

/tcb/pad before break=(length) \hspace{1cm} \text{(style, no default, initially 3.5mm)}

Sets the total amount of vertical space after the text content and before the break point to \(\langle\text{length}\rangle\). This style sets \text{/tcb/toprule at break} to 0pt and changes \text{/tcb/topsep at break} as required. In general, it is not advisable to change this value if these parts start with a rule or a title.

/tcb/pad before break*=\text{(length)} \hspace{1cm} \text{(style, no default)}

Sets \text{/tcb/pad before break} to \(\langle\text{length}\rangle\) and \text{/tcb/enlargepage flexible} \footnote{P.392} to an appropriate value such that empty closing frames are avoided.

/tcb/pad after break=(length) \hspace{1cm} \text{(style, no default, initially 3.5mm)}

Sets the total amount of vertical space after the break point and before the text content to \(\langle\text{length}\rangle\). This style sets \text{/tcb/bottomrule at break} to 0pt and changes \text{/tcb/bottomsep at break} as required. In general, it is not advisable to change this value if the \textit{first} and \textit{middle} parts in a break sequence end with a rule.

/tcb/pad at break=(length) \hspace{1cm} \text{(style, no default, initially 3.5mm)}

Abbreviation for setting \(\langle\text{length}\rangle\) to \text{/tcb/pad before break} and \text{/tcb/pad after break}.

/tcb/pad at break*=\text{(length)} \hspace{1cm} \text{(style, no default)}

Sets \text{/tcb/pad at break} to \(\langle\text{length}\rangle\) and \text{/tcb/enlargepage flexible} \footnote{P.392} to an appropriate value such that empty closing frames are avoided.

% \usepackage{lipsum} \% preamble
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced jigsaw,breakable,pad at break*=0mm,
title={For this box, the pad space at the break point is set to 0mm}]
\lipsum[1-2]
\end{tcolorbox}

For this box, the pad space at the break point is set to 0mm


/tcb/pad at break* P.394 or /tcb/pad at break* P.394 should be used as very last option in an option list, because they adapt other settings.

Also see /tcb/enlarge top at break by P.89 and /tcb/enlarge bottom at break by P.89.

/tcb/height fixed for=⟨part⟩ (no default, initially none)
When certain amount of space is available for a partial box of a break sequence, the partial box typically is smaller than this space (depending on the box content). For given ⟨part⟩(s), the height can be set to all available space.
• none: Every partial tcolorbox is set with its natural height.
• first: The first partial box is set to a height which matches the available space.
• middle: All middle partial boxes are set to a height which matches the available space.
• last: The last partial box is set to a height which matches the available space.
• first and middle: The first and all middle partial boxes are set to a height which matches the available space.
• middle and last: All middle partial boxes and the last partial box are set to a height which matches the available space.
• all: All partial boxes are set to a height which matches the available space.

If the box keeps unbroken, this option is not applied. See /tcb/height P.53 for setting a fixed height for unbroken boxes. See /tcb/height fill P.56 for giving unbroken boxes maximum height.

/tcb/vfill before first=true|false (default true, initially false)
Inserts a \vfill at the begin of the first partial box to move this partial box to the end of the current page. This may be used as an alternative to /tcb/height fixed for=first to get justified columns or pages. The \vfill is not inserted, if the box gets not actually broken.

/tcb/segmentation at break=true|false (default true, initially true)
If a breakable box contains an upper part and a lower part and the break happens at the segmentation between both parts, then
• the segmentation line (or similar) is drawn as first element of the partial box containing the lower part, if /tcb/segmentation at break is set to be true.
• the segmentation line (or similar) is not drawn at all, if /tcb/segmentation at break is set to be false. This may be preferable for skins like bicolor P.229, tile P.239, or beamer P.243.
19.5 Extra Options for Partial Boxes

\texttt{/tcb/extras={⟨options⟩}}

(no default, initially unset)

Adds \texttt{tcolorbox} \langle options \rangle to every box of a \texttt{break sequence} after skin settings are done. This is quite late in box processing. Geometry and break settings should \textit{not be used} here, because they will either be ignored or have unexpected negative results. But it is possible to change most colors, skin effects, shadows, borders, frame code, etc. Note that using \texttt{/tcb/extras} for every box is very seldom an advantage over setting the options directly. Usually, \texttt{/tcb/extras} for every box is very seldom an advantage over setting the options directly.

\texttt{/tcb/no extras}

(style, no default, initially set)

Removes all extras if set before.

\texttt{/tcb/extras broken={⟨options⟩}}

(no default, initially unset)

If the box is set to be \texttt{/tcb/breakable} \texttt{\textsuperscript{P.389}} and is broken actually, then the \langle options \rangle are added to every box of the \texttt{break sequence}. \texttt{/tcb/extras} overwrites this key.

\texttt{/tcb/extras unbroken={⟨options⟩}}

(no default, initially unset)

If the box is set to be \texttt{/tcb/breakable} \texttt{\textsuperscript{P.389}} but is \textit{not} broken actually or if the box is set to be \texttt{/tcb/unbreakable} \texttt{\textsuperscript{P.390}}, then the \langle options \rangle are added to the box. \texttt{/tcb/extras} overwrites this key.

\texttt{/tcb/no extras unbroken}

(style, no default, initially set)

Removes the unbroken extras if set before.

\texttt{/tcb/extras first={⟨options⟩}}

(no default, initially unset)

If the box is set to be \texttt{/tcb/breakable} \texttt{\textsuperscript{P.389}} and is broken actually, then the \langle options \rangle are added to the \textit{first} box of the break sequence. \texttt{/tcb/extras} overwrites this key.

\texttt{/tcb/no extras first}

(style, no default, initially set)

Removes the first extras if set before.

\texttt{/tcb/extras middle={⟨options⟩}}

(no default, initially unset)

If the box is set to be \texttt{/tcb/breakable} \texttt{\textsuperscript{P.389}} and is broken actually, then the \langle options \rangle are added to every \textit{middle} box (if any) of the break sequence. \texttt{/tcb/extras} overwrites this key.

\texttt{/tcb/no extras middle}

(style, no default, initially set)

Removes the middle extras if set before.

\texttt{/tcb/extras last={⟨options⟩}}

(no default, initially unset)

If the box is set to be \texttt{/tcb/breakable} \texttt{\textsuperscript{P.389}} and is broken actually, then the \langle options \rangle are added to the \textit{last} box of the break sequence. \texttt{/tcb/extras} overwrites this key.

\texttt{/tcb/no extras last}

(style, no default, initially set)

Removes the last extras if set before.

\texttt{/tcb/extras unbroken and first={⟨options⟩}}

(no default, initially unset)

This is an abbreviation for setting \texttt{/tcb/extras unbroken} and \texttt{/tcb/extras first} together. \texttt{/tcb/extras} overwrites this key.

\texttt{/tcb/extras middle and last={⟨options⟩}}

(no default, initially unset)

This is an abbreviation for setting \texttt{/tcb/extras middle} and \texttt{/tcb/extras last} together. \texttt{/tcb/extras} overwrites this key.

\texttt{/tcb/extras unbroken and last={⟨options⟩}}

(no default, initially unset)

This is an abbreviation for setting \texttt{/tcb/extras unbroken} and \texttt{/tcb/extras last} together. \texttt{/tcb/extras} overwrites this key.
/tcb/extras first and middle=⟨options⟩ (no default, initially unset)

This is an abbreviation for setting /tcb/extras first → P.396 and /tcb/extras middle → P.396 together. /tcb/extras → P.396 overwrites this key.

/tcb/extras title after break=⟨options⟩ (no default, initially unset)

If the box has a /tcb/title after break → P.390, then the ⟨options⟩ are added for all titles after the first break, i.e. all middle and last. The color, font, and alignment of titles after break can be adapted choosing ⟨options⟩, e.g. by /tcb/coltitle → P.28, /tcb/fonttitle → P.29, /tcb/halign title → P.32. Note that /tcb/colbacktitle → P.27 has to be placed into /tcb/extras middle and last → P.396.

/tcb/no extras title after break (style, no default, initially set)

Removes the title after break extras if set before.
My unbroken box


My broken box

19.6 Breakable boxes and the `multicol` package

With version 4.10, the algorithm for detecting the available height for a `tcolorbox` inside a `multicol` environment was improved with help of Frank Mittelbach. This change may impact existing user code which may have to be adapted.

Unbreakable `tcolorbox`es can be used without special care inside a `multicols` environment from the `multicol` package [9]. Since version 3.10, a breakable `tcolorbox` detects, if it is used inside a `multicols` environment. But choosing break points for a breakable box cannot be done by the balancing routine of `multicols`. By default, boxes will break at maximum column height. To get pleasant results, use the `/tcb/break at` and `/tcb/height fixed for` options.

---


---

My breakable box


---


---

This example is already set inside a `multicols` environment. This time, a `middle` part has full column height (here \textit{\texttt{\textbackslash textheight}}). `/tcb/height fixed for-`P.395` is used to spread this box part over the full height to align with neighboring columns.

egin{Verbatim}
\% \usepackage{lipsum,multicol}
\lipsum[1]
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced jigsaw, breakable, size=title, colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, fonttitle=\bfseries, title=My breakable box, pad at break=2mm, break at=-\baselineskip/0pt, height fixed for=middle ]
\lipsum[2-7]
\end{tcolorbox}
\lipsum[8]
\end{Verbatim}


My breakable box


Nulla malesuada porttitor diam. Donec felis erat, congue non, volutpat at, tincidunt tristique, libero. Vivamus viverra fermentum felis.


Suspendisse vel felis. Ut lorem lorem, interdum eu, tincidunt sit amet, luctus eu, ac eros eget. In hac habitasse platea dictumst. Pellentesque non elit. Fusce sed justo eu urna porta tincidunt. Mauris felis odio, sol-
licitudin sed, volutpat a, ornare ac, erat. Morbi quis dolor. Donec pellentesque, erat ac sagittis semper, nunc dui lobortis purus, quis congue purus metus ultricies tellus. Proin et quam. Class aptent taciti sociosqu ad litora torquent per conubia nostra, per inceptos hymenaeos. Praesent sapien turpis, fermentum vel, eleifend faucibus, vehicula eu, lacus.


The following example has a \texttt{tcolorbox} which fills the \texttt{multicol} environment completely. Here, \texttt{\tcb/height fixed for} \texttt{\P.395} is used to give all three columns the full height. Note that the appropriate \texttt{\tcb/break at} \texttt{\P.391} value is not computed automatically but set manually.

\begin{multicols}{3}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced jigsaw,breakable,size=small, colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries, title=My breakable box,pad at break=2mm,drop fuzzy shadow, height fixed for=all, break at=11.4cm ]
\lipsum[1-3]
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{multicols}

My breakable box


19.7 Break Point Insertion

\texttt{\texttt{tcbbreak}}

A \textit{breakable} box is not broken, if there is enough space on the current page or column. Therefore, typical penalty insertion with \texttt{\textbackslash break}, \texttt{\textbackslash pagebreak}, \texttt{\textbackslash columnbreak}, ... may only work as expected, if the box is broken at least into two parts \textit{without} inserting the penalties.

To force a page or column break, \texttt{\textbackslash tcbbreak} starts a new paragraph and inserts an insane tall rule which causes a break and which is immediately discarded. You may ignore this technical information and just use it as you would use \texttt{\textbackslash pagebreak}.

For an \textit{unbreakable box}, \texttt{\textbackslash tcbbreak} is identical to insert \texttt{\textbackslash par}, i.e. it just starts a new paragraph.

Also see \texttt{/tcb/break} at P.391 for defining height dependend breaks.

\begin{tcolorbox}[breakable,enhanced jigsaw,size=small,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,title=Break into parts]
\begin{multicols}{3}
First part \texttt{\textbackslash tcbbreak}
Second part \texttt{\textbackslash tcbbreak}
Third part \texttt{\textbackslash tcbbreak}
\end{multicols}
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced jigsaw,size=small,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,title=You shall not break]
\begin{multicols}{3}
First part \texttt{\textbackslash tcbbreak}
Second part \texttt{\textbackslash tcbbreak}
Third part \texttt{\textbackslash tcbbreak}
\end{multicols}
\end{tcolorbox}
19.8 Break Sequence for the Skins

The following diagrams document the *break sequence* for different skins. Depending on the main skin of a `tcolorbox`, the actual skins of the *break sequence* parts are displayed.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unbroken Box</th>
<th>Broken Boxes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>skin=enhanced</td>
<td>skin=enhancedfirst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=enhancedmiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=enhancedlast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=enhancedfirst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=enhancedmiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=enhancedmiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=enhancedlast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=enhancedmiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=enhancedmiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=enhancedmiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=enhancedlast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unbroken Box</td>
<td>Broken Boxes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skin=enhanced jigsaw</td>
<td>skin=enhancedfirst jigsaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=enhancedmiddle jigsaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=enhancedlast jigsaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unbroken Box</td>
<td>Broken Boxes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skin=enhancedfirst jigsaw</td>
<td>skin=enhancedfirst jigsaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=enhancedmiddle jigsaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=enhancedmiddle jigsaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unbroken Box</td>
<td>Broken Boxes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skin=enhancedmiddle jigsaw</td>
<td>skin=enhancedmiddle jigsaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=enhancedmiddle jigsaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unbroken Box</td>
<td>Broken Boxes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skin=enhancedlast jigsaw</td>
<td>skin=enhancedmiddle jigsaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=enhancedmiddle jigsaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=enhancedlast jigsaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unbroken Box</td>
<td>Broken Boxes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skin=bicolor</td>
<td>skin=bicolorfirst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=bicolormiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=bicolorlast</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unbroken Box</th>
<th>Broken Boxes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>skin=bicolorfirst</td>
<td>skin=bicolorfirst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=bicolormiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=bicolormiddle</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unbroken Box</th>
<th>Broken Boxes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>skin=bicolormiddle</td>
<td>skin=bicolormiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=bicolormiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=bicolormiddle</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unbroken Box</th>
<th>Broken Boxes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>skin=bicolorlast</td>
<td>skin=bicolormiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=bicolormiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=bicolorlast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unbroken Box</td>
<td>Broken Boxes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skin=bicolor jigsaw</td>
<td>skin=bicolorfirst jigsaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skin=bicolormiddle jigsaw</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skin=bicolorlast jigsaw</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skin=bicolorfirst jigsaw</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skin=bicolormiddle jigsaw</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skin=bicolormiddle jigsaw</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skin=bicolorlast jigsaw</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skin=bicolormiddle jigsaw</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skin=bicolormiddle jigsaw</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skin=bicolormiddle jigsaw</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skin=bicolorlast jigsaw</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unbroken Box</td>
<td>Broken Boxes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skin=beamer</td>
<td>skin=beamerfirst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=beamermiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=beamerlast</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unbroken Box</th>
<th>Broken Boxes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>skin=beamerfirst</td>
<td>skin=beamerfirst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=beamermiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=beamermiddle</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unbroken Box</th>
<th>Broken Boxes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>skin=beamermiddle</td>
<td>skin=beamermiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=beamermiddle</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unbroken Box</th>
<th>Broken Boxes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>skin=beamerlast</td>
<td>skin=beamermiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=beamermiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=beamerlast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unbroken Box</td>
<td>skin=freelance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Broken Boxes</td>
<td>skin=freelancefirst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Broken Boxes</td>
<td>skin=freelancemiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Broken Boxes</td>
<td>skin=freelancelast</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Unbroken Box | skin=freelancefirst |
| Broken Boxes | skin=freelancefirst |
| Broken Boxes | skin=freelancemiddle |
| Broken Boxes | skin=freelancemiddle |

| Unbroken Box | skin=freelancemiddle |
| Broken Boxes | skin=freelancemiddle |
| Broken Boxes | skin=freelancemiddle |
| Broken Boxes | skin=freelancemiddle |

| Unbroken Box | skin=freelancelast |
| Broken Boxes | skin=freelancemiddle |
| Broken Boxes | skin=freelancemiddle |
| Broken Boxes | skin=freelancelast |
19.9 Break by Hand (Faked Break)

See Section 19.6 on page 399 for real column breaks.

Since the appearance of broken boxes is done by skins, it is quite easy to ’fake a break’. For this, you actually don’t need the \texttt{breakable} library at all.

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My broken box,skin=enhancedfirst]
This is a box which breaks from one column to another
\end{tcolorbox}
\hfill
\begin{tcolorbox}[skin=enhancedmiddle]
column. I am sorry to say that this is a trick. Nevertheless, you may use this trick for your
\end{tcolorbox}
\hfill
\begin{tcolorbox}[skin=enhancedlast]
own purposes.
\end{tcolorbox}
The main purpose of this library is to store a `tcolorbox` into an array of box registers for later usage.

If the `tcolorbox` is not breakable, there is not much add-on compared to usual \TeX/\LaTeX\ box storage and usage (and you do not really need this library for that use case). For a breakable `tcolorbox`, this library allows to capture all partial boxes into a sequence of registers. The partial boxes can be used anywhere in arbitrary order.

The name of this library indicates `magazine` in the sense of storage, but also in the sense of a journal where an article often is continued on page \textit{x}. An example for this kind of application is given throughout this section starting on the right hand side. The creation of this library was motivated by Ulrike Fischer and Steven B. Segletes.

The library is loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

\begin{quote}
\verb|\tcbuselibrary{magazine}|
\end{quote}

This also loads the library \texttt{breakable}, see Section 19 on page \pageref{section19}.

The box register operations of this library are global. \TeX\ grouping will not clear the registers when leaving the current group. Also be aware that extensive use of large box arrays may eat up \TeX\’s available memory and registers.

### 20.1 Creation and Resetting of Box Arrays

\begin{quote}
\verb|\newboxarray{⟨name⟩}|
\end{quote}

This creates a new box array called \texttt{⟨name⟩}. There already is a box array available with name \texttt{default} which can be used directly. Note that the creation is a global operation.

\begin{quote}
\verb|\newboxarray{myarray}|
\end{quote}

\begin{quote}
\verb|\boxarrayreset{⟨name⟩}|
\end{quote}

Resets the size counter of a box array \texttt{⟨name⟩} to zero. If \texttt{⟨name⟩} is not provided, \texttt{default} is used as name. Use this or \texttt{/tcb/reset box array} before you apply \texttt{/tcb/store to box array}. Otherwise, all boxes would be appended to the already existing boxes. This command does not clear box registers.

\begin{quote}
\verb|\boxarrayreset{myarray} % resets ‘myarray’|
\end{quote}

\begin{quote}
\verb|\tcbset{\reset box array, % resets ‘default’\reset box array=myarray, % resets ‘myarray’}|
\end{quote}

\paragraph*{Example Article}

This is an example for an article which starts right here and is continued to the following pages. The body text for the article is written inside a single `tcolorbox`. This box is split into parts using the tools from this section, — continued on page 417 —
\boxarrayclear[(name)]

Works like \boxarrayreset to reset the size counter of a box array \(\langle name\rangle\) to zero. Additionally, all allocated box registers of the box array are cleared of their content. Note that the allocated box registers stay allocated. So, this may be useful to clear memory, but not to free registers for other applications. If \consumoboxarray or \consumetcboxarray was used to apply the stored boxes, there is no advantage in using \boxarrayclear.

\boxarrayclear % clears 'default'
\boxarrayclear{myarray} % clears 'myarray'

20.2 Storing Content

/tcb/store to box array=(name) (default default, initially unset)

Stores a tcolorbox or all parts of a break sequence of a tcolorbox into a box array \(\langle name\rangle\). If no \(\langle name\rangle\) is given, the already existing default box array is used. Otherwise, the box array has to be created beforehand with \newboxarray. Note that the box has to be \tcb/breakable, if the box shall break into several parts. Typically, manual break points are additionally defined by \tcb/break at. Otherwise, the box parts will have a length of about \textheight. For most use cases, a \tcb/reset box array should be applied to reset the box array counter.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced jigsaw,size=fbox,width=4cm,
    colback=yellow!10,colframe=yellow!10!black,
    enforce breakable,\% use only breakable in the real world!
    break at=7cm/4cm,
    height fixed for=all,
    watermark text=arabic{tcbbreakpart},
    reset box array,
    store to box array
]
\lipsum[1]
\end{tcolorbox}

\useboxarray{1}\hfill
\begin{tabular}{cc}
\multicolumn{2}{c}{\includegraphics[width=7cm]{Basilica_5.png}}
\end{tabular}


Duis nibh mi, congue eu, accumsan, eleifend, sagittis quis, diam. Duis eget orci sit amet orci dignissim rutrum.
If the first box part should fill the rest of the available space of the current page, you can use `\pagegoal-\pagetotal` minus some distance for the first element of `/tcb/break at` P.391. You may want to have some additional distance to the preceding text.

```latex
\begin{tcolorbox}
[enhanced,breakable,
reset box array,
store to box array,
break at=\pagegoal-\pagetotal-5mm/0pt,
height fixed for=first and middle]
\lipsum[1-15]
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
[blanker,width=4cm,
fontupper=\footnotesize,
enforce breakable,\% use only breakable in the real world!
break at=4cm,
height fixed for=all,
watermark text=\arabic{tcbbreakpart},
reset box array,
store to box array]
\includegraphics[width=\linewidth]{Basilica_5.png}\par
\lipsum[1-2]
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcbitemize}
[raster columns=3,raster equal height,
size=small,halign=center,sharp corners,colback=blue!5]
\tcbitem\consumeboxarray{5}
\tcbitem\consumeboxarray{6}
\tcbitem\consumeboxarray{1}
\tcbitem\consumeboxarray{2}
\tcbitem\consumeboxarray{3}
\tcbitem\consumeboxarray{4}
\end{tcbitemize}
```


/tcb/reset and store to box array\(=\langle name\rangle\) (style, default default, initially unset)

Combination of /tcb/reset box array\(^{\text{P.414}}\) and /tcb/store to box array\(^{\text{P.415}}\).

/tcb/do not store to box array (style, no default, initially set)

Disables the /tcb/store to box array\(^{\text{P.415}}\) option, if set before.

\begin{boxarraystore}\langle name\rangle\end{boxarraystore}

Stores the environment content into a box array \(\langle name\rangle\). This corresponds to the standard \LaTeX\ environment \verb|lrbox|, but the storage operation is global. As long as \verb|\boxarrayreset|\(^{\text{P.414}}\) is not used, every new \verb|\boxarraystore| adds a further box to the array.

\begin{verbatim}
\boxarrayreset
\begin{boxarraystore}{default}\fbox{Mary}\end{boxarraystore}
\begin{boxarraystore}{default}\fbox{Had}\end{boxarraystore}
\begin{boxarraystore}{default}\fbox{a}\end{boxarraystore}
\begin{boxarraystore}{default}\fbox{Little}\end{boxarraystore}
\begin{boxarraystore}{default}\fbox{Lamb}\end{boxarraystore}
\useboxarray{5}\useboxarray{4}\useboxarray{3}\useboxarray{2}\useboxarray{1}\hfill
\useboxarray{1}\useboxarray{5}
\end{verbatim}

Lamb Little a Had Mary

20.3 Retrieving Content

\boxarraygetsize[\langle name\rangle]{\langle macro\rangle}

Stores the current size of a box array \(\langle name\rangle\) into a given \(\langle macro\rangle\). If no \(\langle name\rangle\) is given, the already existing default box array is used.

\begin{verbatim}
\boxarraygetsize\langle mysize\rangle
\Current size of the default box array:\n\langle mysize\rangle.
\end{verbatim}

Current size of the default box array: 5.

\useboxarray[\langle name\rangle]{\langle index\rangle}

Typesets the box with the given \(\langle index\rangle\) number from the box array \(\langle name\rangle\). If no \(\langle name\rangle\) is given, the already existing default box array is used. It is considered an error, if a not existing box array \(\langle name\rangle\) is used. It is silently ignored, if the \(\langle index\rangle\) is out of range. Note that \verb|\useboxarray| corresponds to the standard \verb|\usebox| macro, respectively, \verb|\copy|.

\begin{verbatim}
\boxarraygetsize\langle mysize\rangle
\foreach \n in {1,...,\langle mysize\rangle} { \useboxarray\langle n\rangle }
\end{verbatim}

Mary Had a Little Lamb
\usetcbarray[(name)]{(index)}{(options)}

Typesets the box with the given \textit{(index)} number from the box array \textit{(name)} using \useboxarray as content of a \tcbox. If no \textit{(name)} is given, the already existing \textit{default} box array is used. It is considered an error, if a not existing box array \textit{(name)} is used. It is silently ignored, if the \textit{(index)} is out of range. The \tcbox can be customized by \textit{tcolorbox \textit{(options)}}.

\begin{code}
\boxarraygetsize{\mysize}
\foreach \n in {1,...,\mysize} \{ \usetcbarray{\n}{on line,colframe=yellow, colback=yellow!10} \}
\end{code}

\begin{table}
\begin{tabular}{|c|c|c|c|}
\hline
Mary & Had & a & Little & Lamb \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{table}

\consumeboxarray[(name)]{(index)}

Typesets the box with the given \textit{(index)} number from the box array \textit{(name)}. If no \textit{(name)} is given, the already existing \textit{default} box array is used. It is considered an error, if a not existing box array \textit{(name)} is used. It is silently ignored, if the \textit{(index)} is out of range. In contrast to \useboxarray, \consumeboxarray corresponds to the standard \texttt{box} macro, i.e. after typesetting the box register is cleared and cannot be used again.

\begin{code}
\boxarraygetsize{\mysize}
First run: \foreach \n in {1,...,\mysize} \{ \consumeboxarray{\n} \}
\par
Second run: \foreach \n in {1,...,\mysize} \{ \consumeboxarray{\n} \}
\end{code}

\begin{table}
\begin{tabular}{|c|c|c|c|}
\hline
First run: Mary & Had & a & Little & Lamb \\
\hline
Second run:
\end{tabular}
\end{table}

\consumetcboxarray[(name)]{(index)}{(options)}

Typesets the box with the given \textit{(index)} number from the box array \textit{(name)} using \textit{\consumetcboxarray} as content of a \textit{\tcbox}. If no \textit{(name)} is given, the already existing \textit{default} box array is used. It is considered an error, if a not existing box array \textit{(name)} is used. It is silently ignored, if the \textit{(index)} is out of range. The \tcbox can be customized by \textit{\tcolorbox \textit{(options)}}. After typesetting the box register is cleared and cannot be used again.

\begin{code}
— continued from page 417 —

the appropriate places you see. The linking texts like \textit{continued on page x} are created by \textit{/tcb/finish} commands for the embedding \textit{\tcbox}. To label the box parts, \textit{/tcb/phantomlabel} is used.

These quite small partial boxes are

\begin{code}
— continued on page 421 —
\end{code}


\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced jigsaw,size=fbox,width=6cm, colback=yellow!10,colframe=yellow!10!black, enforce breakable,% use only breakable in the real world! break at=5cm, watermark text=\arabic{tcbbreakpart}, reset and store to box array ]
\lipsum[1]
\end{tcolorbox}

\consumeboxarray{2} \hfill \consumeboxarray{1} \hfill \consumeboxarray{1}

\textbf{Boxarraygetbox}\langle\textit{name}\rangle\langle\textit{macro}\rangle\langle\textit{index}\rangle

Assigns the box with the given \langle index\rangle number from the box array \langle name\rangle to a \langle macro\rangle. If no \langle name\rangle is given, the already existing \texttt{default} box array is used. It is considered an error, if a not existing box array \langle name\rangle is used. If the \langle index\rangle is out of range, the \langle macro\rangle will be undefined.

\texttt{tcbox}[size=small,colframe=blue!20,colback=yellow!5,on line, reset and store to box array]{Test}

\textbf{Boxarraygetsize}\langle\textit{mybox}\rangle\langle\textit{mybox}\rangle

Array size: \texttt{\mysize}

Box width: \texttt{30.35799pt} \hspace{1em} \textbf{Test}

\texttt{tcbox}[size=small,colframe=blue!20,colback=yellow!5,on line, reset and store to box array]{Test}

\textbf{Ifboxarrayempty}\langle\textit{name}\rangle\langle\textit{index}\rangle\langle\textit{true}\rangle\langle\textit{false}\rangle

Tests the box with the given \langle index\rangle number from the box array \langle name\rangle for emptiness be empty and executes \langle true\rangle if it is empty, and \langle false\rangle otherwise. If no \langle name\rangle is given, the already existing \texttt{default} box array is used. It is considered an error, if a not existing box array \langle name\rangle is used.

Box 1: \texttt{Test}, no Box 2
20.4 Box Dimensions

\texttt{\textbackslash boxarraygetwidth\{\textit{name}\}\{\textit{macro}\}\{\textit{index}\}}

Assigns the width of the box with the given \textit{index} number from the box array \textit{name} to a \textit{macro}. If no \textit{name} is given, the already existing default box array is used. It is considered an error, if a not existing box array \textit{name} is used. If the \textit{index} is out of range, the \textit{macro} will be set to 0pt.

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbox[size=small,colframe=blue!20,colback=yellow!5,on line, reset and store to box array]{Test}
\begin{tabular}{ll}
\useboxarray{1} & width of box 1: \boxarraygetwidth{\mylen}{1} \mylen\\ 
\useboxarray{2} & width of box 2: \boxarraygetwidth{\mylen}{2} \mylen
\end{tabular}
\end{verbatim}

Test
width of box 1: 30.35799pt
width of box 2: 0pt

\texttt{\textbackslash boxarraygetheight\{\textit{name}\}\{\textit{macro}\}\{\textit{index}\}}

Assigns the height of the box with the given \textit{index} number from the box array \textit{name} to a \textit{macro}. If no \textit{name} is given, the already existing default box array is used. It is considered an error, if a not existing box array \textit{name} is used. If the \textit{index} is out of range, the \textit{macro} will be set to 0pt.

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbox[size=small,colframe=blue!20,colback=yellow!5,on line, reset and store to box array]{Test}
\begin{tabular}{ll}
\useboxarray{1} & height of box 1: \boxarraygetheight{\mylen}{1} \mylen\\ 
\useboxarray{2} & height of box 2: \boxarraygetheight{\mylen}{2} \mylen
\end{tabular}
\end{verbatim}

Test
height of box 1: 9.89883pt
height of box 2: 0pt

\texttt{\textbackslash boxarraygetdepth\{\textit{name}\}\{\textit{macro}\}\{\textit{index}\}}

Assigns the depth of the box with the given \textit{index} number from the box array \textit{name} to a \textit{macro}. If no \textit{name} is given, the already existing default box array is used. It is considered an error, if a not existing box array \textit{name} is used. If the \textit{index} is out of range, the \textit{macro} will be set to 0pt.

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbox[size=small,colframe=blue!20,colback=yellow!5,on line, reset and store to box array]{Test}
\begin{tabular}{ll}
\useboxarray{1} & depth of box 1: \boxarraygetdepth{\mylen}{1} \mylen\ 
\useboxarray{2} & depth of box 2: \boxarraygetdepth{\mylen}{2} \mylen
\end{tabular}
\end{verbatim}

Test
depth of box 1: 3.69884pt
depth of box 2: 0pt

420
Assigns the total height of the box with the given \( index \) number from the box array \( name \) to a \( macro \). If no \( name \) is given, the already existing default box array is used. It is considered an error, if a not existing box array \( name \) is used. If the \( index \) is out of range, the \( macro \) will be set to 0pt.

\begin{tabular}{ll}
\useboxarray{1} & total height of box 1: \boxarraygettotalheight{\mylen}{1} \mylen \\
\useboxarray{2} & total height of box 2: \boxarraygettotalheight{\mylen}{2} \mylen
\end{tabular}

Test  
\begin{tabular}{ll}
total height of box 1: & 13.59767pt \\
total height of box 2: & 0pt
\end{tabular}
20.5 Leaflet Example

The following full application example can be used to create leaflets. Obviously, the code can be adapted and customized in many ways.

\documentclass[a4paper,landscape]{article}
\usepackage[noheadfoot,margin=0pt]{geometry}
\usepackage[skins,raster,magazine]{tcolorbox}
\usepackage{lipsum}
\newenvironment{leaflet}\{\begin{tcolorbox}[nobeforeafter,empty,colback=white,
  sharp corners,size=minimal,left=10mm,right=10mm,top=10mm,bottom=10mm,
  width=\textwidth/3,
  breakable,
  break at=\textwidth,
  height fixed for=all,
  reset box array,
  store to box array,#1}\}{\end{tcolorbox}}
\pagestyle{empty}
\begin{document}
\begin{leaflet}[underlay={\node[above=5mm,font=\footnotesize]
at (frame.south) {- \arabic{tcbbreakpart} -};}]
\includegraphics[width=\linewidth]{Basilica_5.png}
\begin{center}
\bfseries\LARGE Example
\end{center}
\section{Introduction}
\lipsum[1]
\section{Main Part A}
\lipsum[2-8]
\section{Main Part B}
\lipsum[9-15]
\section{Conclusion}
\lipsum[16-18]
\end{leaflet}
\end{document}
curae sodales, augue est sodales sapien, venenatis congue nulls auctor ac. Ut placerat auctor, sed


3 Main Part B

Nullam faucibus, libero rutrum ut, nullam eu, vel. Nullam sed, vulputate ut, libero eu,


3 Main Part B

Nullam faucibus, libero rutrum ut, nullam eu, vel. Nullam sed, vulputate ut, libero eu,


3 Main Part B

Nullam faucibus, libero rutrum ut, nullam eu, vel. Nullam sed, vulputate ut, libero eu,


3 Main Part B

Nullam faucibus, libero rutrum ut, nullam eu, vel. Nullam sed, vulputate ut, libero eu,


3 Main Part B

Nullam faucibus, libero rutrum ut, nullam eu, vel. Nullam sed, vulputate ut, libero eu,


3 Main Part B

Nullam faucibus, libero rutrum ut, nullam eu, vel. Nullam sed, vulputate ut, libero eu,


3 Main Part B

Nullam faucibus, libero rutrum ut, nullam eu, vel. Nullam sed, vulputate ut, libero eu,


3 Main Part B

Nullam faucibus, libero rutrum ut, nullam eu, vel. Nullam sed, vulputate ut, libero eu,


3 Main Part B

Nullam faucibus, libero rutrum ut, nullam eu, vel. Nullam sed, vulputate ut, libero eu,


3 Main Part B

Nullam faucibus, libero rutrum ut, nullam eu, vel. Nullam sed, vulputate ut, libero eu,
21 Library \texttt{poster}

The main purpose of this library is to support creation of single page posters with \texttt{tcolorbox}es.

A \texttt{tcbposter} is a \texttt{tikzpicture} where \texttt{tcolorbox}es can be placed in a column oriented manner using \texttt{\posterbox} commands. This base concept is more or less copied from the great \texttt{baposter} package.

The \texttt{raster} library, see Section 16 on page 297, can produce similar looking results and may be more appropriate depending on the actual project.

- The \texttt{raster} library has a flow oriented concept, just like a conventional text flow. The text flow (box flow) is a merely endless ribbon which gets broken into lines (and paragraphs) and the lines are broken into pages. \texttt{raster} shapes the boxes to convenient sizes to fill lines and pages in a pleasant way.

- The \texttt{tcbposter} library supports a quite free placement of boxes inside a page. Basically, boxes are placed like nodes are placed inside a \texttt{tikzpicture}. In contrast to \texttt{raster}, this is a \texttt{single} page and not a flow of pages. The poster is divided into columns and rows. There is a more or less gentle force to use the columns (or spans of columns) for positioning and sizing while the row placement is completely optional.

The creation of this library was motivated by Ignasi.

Inside a \texttt{tikzpicture} there should be no embedded \texttt{tikzpicture}s. This rule is violated by the \texttt{poster} library. Be aware that there may be some unwanted interactions between the main \texttt{tikzpicture} and the embedded ones inside the \texttt{tcolorbox}es.

The library is loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbuselibrary{poster}
\end{verbatim}

This also loads the libraries \texttt{skins}, see Section 10 on page 156, \texttt{breakable}, see Section 19 on page 387, \texttt{magazine}, see Section 20 on page 414, and \texttt{fitting}, see Section 22 on page 438.

21.1 Overview

Click me to see the tutorial

You get the best overview of the \texttt{poster} library and its facilities, if you look at the \texttt{Poster Tutorial} which is part of the \texttt{tcolorbox} documentation:

tcolorbox-tutorial-poster.pdf


21.2 Main Poster Environment

This creates a TikZpicture environment with suitable additional settings defined by the given (options). Basically, \posterbox\(^{\text{P.430}}\) and posterboxenv\(^{\text{P.430}}\) are used to place tcolorboxes as nodes into the environment, but additional TikZ code can also be used. As (options) all /tcb/posterset/ keys may be applied, namely:

- /tcb/posterset/poster\(^{\text{P.427}}\): poster settings like columns, rows, sizes...
- /tcb/posterset/coverage\(^{\text{P.428}}\) and /tcb/posterset/no coverage\(^{\text{P.428}}\): settings for a surrounding tcolorbox for background and margins.
- /tcb/posterset/boxes\(^{\text{P.429}}\): style of the tcolorboxes used for the poster.
- /tcb/posterset/fontsize\(^{\text{P.429}}\): scaling of used fonts.

\begin{tcbposter}[
  poster = {showframe,height=10cm,spacing=2mm},
  boxes = {beamer,colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!50,colupper=yellow!50},
]
\posterbox{name=A,column=3,row=2}{My first box}
\posterbox[adjusted title=Second box]
{name=B,column=2,span=2,below=A}{My second box}
\posterbox[adjusted title=Third box]
{name=C,column=2,between=B and bottom}{My third box}
\end{tcbposter}
Inside \texttt{tcbposter} \cite[p.~425]{tcbposter}, there are several predefined Ti\kz nodes. These nodes share a common \texttt{/tcb/poster/prefix} \cite[p.~427]{tcbposter} which is \texttt{TCBPOSTER@} by default. This prefix is used to discriminate the poster nodes from local nodes of any embedded \texttt{tikzpicture} environment. You will never need this prefix using \texttt{\posterbox} \cite[p.~430]{tcbposter} and its placement options, but if you want to refer to a predefined node using pure Ti\kz code. The predefined nodes (shown without prefix) are:

- \texttt{poster}: defines the bounding box of the poster (without the coverage).
- \texttt{top}: top position plus row spacing
- \texttt{bottom}: bottom position minus row spacing
- \texttt{middle}: vertical middle position
- \texttt{col1}, \texttt{col2}, \ldots: bounding box of column 1, column 2, \ldots
- \texttt{row1}, \texttt{row2}, \ldots: bounding box of row 1, row 2, \ldots

Further nodes are defined using the \texttt{/tcb/posterloc/name} \cite[p.~431]{tcbposter} option.

\begin{itemize}
\item \texttt{\posterbox}: never use inside \texttt{tcbposter}. But, if you do anyway, use a different \texttt{/tcb/poster/prefix} \cite[p.~427]{tcbposter} for the embedded poster or you surely get a total mess.
\end{itemize}

There are several properties inside a \texttt{tcbposter} \cite[p.~425]{tcbposter} which may be useful for advanced code (skip the following on first reading):

- \texttt{\tcbposterwidth}: Width of the poster (without margins).
- \texttt{\tcbposterheight}: Height of the poster (without margins).
- \texttt{\tcbpostercolspacing}: Column distance.
- \texttt{\tcbposterrowspacing}: Row distance.
- \texttt{\tcbpostercolumns}: Column quantity.
- \texttt{\tcbposterrows}: Row quantity.
- \texttt{\tcbpostercolwidth}: Width of a column.
- \texttt{\tcbposterrowheight}: Height of a row.

\begin{Verbatim}
\texttt{\tcbposterset\{\langle options\rangle\}}
\end{Verbatim}

Sets options for every following \texttt{tcbposter} \cite[p.~425]{tcbposter} inside the current \TeX group. For example, the numbers for rows and columns may be defined for the whole document by this:

\begin{Verbatim}
\texttt{\tcbposterset\{poster=\{columns=2,rows=3\}\}}
\end{Verbatim}

See \texttt{tcbposter} \cite[p.~425]{tcbposter} for all feasible options.
21.3 Poster Settings

This option can be applied inside \texttt{tcbposter}^P.425 and \texttt{tcbposterset}^P.426 to set the given poster \texttt{(option list)}, e.g.

\begin{tcbposter}
  \texttt{poster={width=20cm,height=15cm}}
\end{tcbposter}

For the \texttt{(option list)}, see the following keys.

\begin{itemize}
  \item \texttt{/tcb/poster/columns=\langle number \rangle} \hspace{1cm} \text{(no default, initially 3)}
    \hspace{1cm} Sets the \texttt{(number)} of columns for a \texttt{tcbposter}.
  \item \texttt{/tcb/poster/rows=\langle number \rangle} \hspace{1cm} \text{(no default, initially 4)}
    \hspace{1cm} Sets the \texttt{(number)} of rows for a \texttt{tcbposter}.
  \item \texttt{/tcb/poster/colspacing=\langle length \rangle} \hspace{1cm} \text{(no default, initially 4mm)}
    \hspace{1cm} Sets \texttt{(length)} as distance between columns.
  \item \texttt{/tcb/poster/rowspacing=\langle length \rangle} \hspace{1cm} \text{(no default, initially 4mm)}
    \hspace{1cm} Sets \texttt{(length)} as distance between rows.
  \item \texttt{/tcb/poster/spacing=\langle length \rangle} \hspace{1cm} \text{(style, no default, initially 4mm)}
    \hspace{1cm} Sets \texttt{(length)} as distance between columns and rows.
  \item \texttt{/tcb/poster/showframe=true|false} \hspace{1cm} \text{(default true, initially false)}
    \hspace{1cm} Displays a red auxiliary mesh as optical support during poster creation. Also, every \texttt{/tcb/posterloc/name}^P.431 is displayed.
  \item \texttt{/tcb/poster/width=\langle length \rangle} \hspace{1cm} \text{(no default, initially \texttt{\linewidth})}
    \hspace{1cm} Sets \texttt{(length)} as width of the poster. For a typical poster, this has not to be set manually. Especially, if \texttt{/tcb/posterset/coverage}^P.428 is present, use \texttt{coverage=\langle width=\langle length \rangle \rangle} instead to change the overall width.
  \item \texttt{/tcb/poster/height=\langle length \rangle} \hspace{1cm} \text{(no default, initially unset)}
    \hspace{1cm} Sets \texttt{(length)} as height of the poster. For a typical poster, this has not to be set manually, but is set automatically to an appropriate value. If \texttt{/tcb/posterset/coverage}^P.428 is present, use only one if any option \texttt{coverage=\langle height=\langle length \rangle \rangle} or \texttt{poster=\langle height=\langle length \rangle \rangle}.
  \item \texttt{/tcb/poster/prefix=\langle name \rangle} \hspace{1cm} \text{(no default, initially \texttt{TCBPOSTER@})}
    \hspace{1cm} \texttt{(name)} is set as prefix for any \texttt{TikZ} node which is generated automatically by the \texttt{poster} library. This encompasses predefined nodes like \texttt{top}, \texttt{bottom}, \ldots, and nodes defined by using \texttt{/tcb/posterloc/name}^P.431. Also, see Section 21.2 on page 425. For a typical poster, this value can stay as it is.
\end{itemize}
21.4 Coverage

\[ \text{tcb/posterset/coverage} = \{\text{option list}\} \]  
(style, no default)

This option can be applied inside \texttt{tcbposter} \textsuperscript{P.425} and \texttt{tcbposterset} \textsuperscript{P.426} and it adds an optional coverage for the poster which is a surrounding \texttt{tcolorbox} with the given (\textit{option list}). Here, margins and background settings for the poster can be given. The \textit{coverage} has several default \texttt{tcolorbox} settings suitable for the purpose:

| enhanced, frame hidden, sharp corners, boxsep=0pt, boxrule=0pt,  
| top=4mm, bottom=4mm, left=4mm, right=4mm,  
| toptitle=2mm, bottomtitle=2mm, colback=white |

The (\textit{option list}) can contain any \texttt{tcolorbox} option.

\begin{tcbposter}
\begin{Verbatim}
\begin{tcbposter}
\text{poster} = \{\text{showframe, spacing=1mm},
\text{coverage} = \{\text{height=5cm,}
    \text{interior style} = \{\text{top color=yellow, bottom color=yellow!50!red},
    \text{watermark text} = \{\text{My Poster, watermark color=white},
    \},
\}
\end{tcbposter}
\end{Verbatim}
\end{tcbposter}

\begin{tabular}{ccc}
| col1 | col2 | col3 |
\hline
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>row1</th>
<th>row2</th>
<th>row3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>My Poster</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
\end{tabular}

- For a typical poster, the option \texttt{/tcb/spread} \textsuperscript{P.94} will use the whole page for the poster coverage.
- Poster margins can be adapted by \texttt{/tcb/left} \textsuperscript{P.39}, \texttt{/tcb/right} \textsuperscript{P.40}, \texttt{/tcb/top} \textsuperscript{P.42}, \texttt{/tcb/bottom} \textsuperscript{P.43}.
- Poster background can be changed by \texttt{/tcb/colback} \textsuperscript{P.27}, \texttt{/tcb/interior style} \textsuperscript{P.157}, \texttt{/tcb/interior style image} \textsuperscript{P.158}, etc.
- Do not use \texttt{/tcb/poster/width} \textsuperscript{P.427} and \texttt{/tcb/poster/height} \textsuperscript{P.427} in combination with a \textit{coverage}. Note that you may use \texttt{/tcb/width} \textsuperscript{P.34} and \texttt{/tcb/height} \textsuperscript{P.53} inside the \textit{coverage} (\textit{option list}). Note that this also is not necessary when \texttt{/tcb/spread} \textsuperscript{P.94} is applied.

\[ \text{tcb/posterset/no coverage} \]  
(style, no value, initially set)

Removes the surrounding \texttt{tcolorbox} completely.
21.5 Common Box Settings

\[ \texttt{\texttt{tcb/posterset/boxes}=\langle \text{option list} \rangle} \] (style, no default)

This option can be applied inside \texttt{tcbposter} and \texttt{tcbposterset} and it is used to set up the style of the \texttt{tcolorbox}es inside the poster. The \langle option list \rangle can contain any \texttt{tcolorbox} option, but box size options are not assumed to be useful here, because the size will be determined by the placement options.

\begin{verbatim}
\begin{tcbposter}
    poster = \{spacing=2mm,columns=3,rows=2\},
    coverage = \{height=5cm,
        interior style={top color=yellow,bottom color=yellow!50!red},
    \},
    boxes = \{sharp corners=downhill,arc=3mm,boxrule=1mm,
        colback=white,colframe=cyan,
        title style={left color=black,right color=cyan},
        fonttitle=bfseries\}
\end{tcbposter}
\end{verbatim}

21.6 Font Scaling

\[ \texttt{\texttt{tcb/posterset/fontsize}=\langle \text{length} \rangle} \] (style, no default, initially unset)

This option can be applied inside \texttt{tcbposter} and \texttt{tcbposterset}. It uses \texttt{tcb/fit basedim} and \texttt{tcb/fit fontsize macros} to redefine \texttt{\normalsize} to \langle length \rangle and all other standard font size macros like \texttt{\small} and \texttt{\large} accordingly. This needs a freely scalable font family like lmodern to work. If \texttt{tcb/posterset/fontsize} is not applied, there standard font size macros are not changed in any way.

\begin{verbatim}
\begin{tcbposter}
    poster = \{spacing=2mm,columns=3,rows=2\},
    coverage = \{height=5cm,
        interior style={top color=yellow,bottom color=yellow!50!red},
    \},
    fontsize = 15pt, \% \langle \text{length} \rangle
\end{tcbposter}
\end{verbatim}
21.7 Box Placement

Inside a `tcbposter` environment, this places a `tcolorbox` with additional `tcolorbox ⟨options⟩` and the given ⟨box content⟩ at a place determined by ⟨placement⟩. All ⟨placement⟩ options are described in the following. Note that ⟨box content⟩ cannot contain verbatim material, see posterboxenv.

\begin{tcbposter}
poster = {showframe,height=4cm,spacing=2mm,rows=2},
boxes = {beamer,colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!50,colupper=yellow!50},
\end{tcbposter}

\begin{posterboxenv}
title=My title\{name=A,column=2,row=2\}{My first box}
\end{posterboxenv}

This is the environment version of `\posterbox`, i.e. inside a `tcbposter` environment, this places a `tcolorbox` with additional `tcolorbox ⟨options⟩` and the given ⟨environment content⟩ at a place determined by ⟨placement⟩. In contrast to `\posterbox`, the ⟨environment content⟩ is allowed to contain verbatim material. Note that the implementation of `\posterbox` is more efficient than the implementation of `posterboxenv`.

\begin{tcbposter}
poster = {showframe,height=4cm,spacing=2mm,rows=2},
boxes = {size=small,beamer,
         colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!50,colupper=yellow!50},
\end{tcbposter}

\begin{posterboxenv}[title=My title]{name=A,column=2,between=top and bottom}
My first box.
\begin{tcblisting}[size=small,colback=yellow!10]
My \textbf{first} poster listing.
\end{tcblisting}
\end{posterboxenv}
\end{tcbposter}
Sets \langle name \rangle as reference for the current \posterbox^P.430 or \posterboxenv^P.430. A TikZ shape name is constructed automatically as combination of /tcb/poster/prefix^P.427 and \langle name \rangle.

\begin{tcbposter}
\begin{tabular}{|c|c|}
\hline
\textbf{col1} & \textbf{col2} & \textbf{col3} \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{tcbposter}

\begin{tcbposter}
\begin{tabular}{|c|c|}
\hline
\textbf{row1} & \textbf{row2} \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{tcbposter}

\begin{tcbposter}
\begin{tabular}{|c|c|}
\hline
\textbf{col1} & \textbf{col2} & \textbf{col3} \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{tcbposter}

\begin{tcbposter}
\begin{tabular}{|c|c|}
\hline
\textbf{row1} & \textbf{row2} \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{tcbposter}

\begin{tcbposter}
\begin{tabular}{|c|c|}
\hline
\textbf{col1} & \textbf{col2} & \textbf{col3} \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{tcbposter}

\begin{tcbposter}
\begin{tabular}{|c|c|}
\hline
\textbf{row1} & \textbf{row2} \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{tcbposter}

\begin{tcbposter}
\begin{tabular}{|c|c|}
\hline
\textbf{col1} & \textbf{col2} & \textbf{col3} \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{tcbposter}

\begin{tcbposter}
\begin{tabular}{|c|c|}
\hline
\textbf{row1} & \textbf{row2} \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{tcbposter}

\begin{tcbposter}
\begin{tabular}{|c|c|}
\hline
\textbf{col1} & \textbf{col2} & \textbf{col3} \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{tcbposter}

\begin{tcbposter}
\begin{tabular}{|c|c|}
\hline
\textbf{row1} & \textbf{row2} \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{tcbposter}
\begin{tcbposter}
  \[poster = {showframe,height=2.5cm,spacing=2mm,rows=2},
  \]
  \[boxes = {beamer,colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!50,colupper=yellow!50},\]
  \]
  \[posterbox\{row=1,column=1\}{First box}\]
  \[posterbox\{row=1,column=2,rowspan=2\}{Second box}\]
  \[posterbox\{natural height\}{row=1,column=3\}{Third box}\]
  \end{tcbposter}

\begin{tcbposter}
  \[poster = {showframe,height=2.5cm,spacing=2mm,rows=2},
  \]
  \[boxes = {beamer,colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!50,colupper=yellow!50},\]
  \]
  \[posterbox\{row=1,column=1,rowspan=0.9\}{First box}\]
  \[posterbox\{row=1,column=2,rowspan=1.5\}{Second box}\]
  \[posterbox\{row=1,column=3,rowspan=2\}{Third box}\]
  \end{tcbposter}

\begin{tcbposter}
  \[poster = {showframe,height=2.5cm,spacing=2mm,rows=2},
  \]
  \[boxes = {beamer,colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!50,colupper=yellow!50},\]
  \]
  \[posterbox\{row=1,column=1\}{First box}\]
  \[posterbox\{row=1,column=2\}{Second box}\]
  \[posterbox\{row=1,column=3\}{Third box}\]
  \end{tcbposter}
The box is placed below another box with the given \( \langle \text{name} \rangle \). Also, \( \langle \text{name} \rangle \) can be a predefined node, see Section 21.2 on page 425.

\begin{tcbposter}
\begin{tabular}{c}
poster = \{showframe,height=3cm,spacing=2mm,rows=2\},
boxes = \{beamer,colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!50,colupper=yellow!50\},
\end{tabular}
\end{tcbposter}

\begin{tcbposter}
\begin{tabular}{c}
posterbox \{name=A,column=1,below=top\} \{First box\}
posterbox \{name=B,column=1,below=A\} \{Second box\}
posterbox \{name=C,column=2,below=B\} \{Third box\}
posterbox \{name=D,column=3,below=row1\} \{Fourth box\}
\end{tabular}
\end{tcbposter}

The box is placed above another box with the given \( \langle \text{name} \rangle \). Also, \( \langle \text{name} \rangle \) can be a predefined node, see Section 21.2 on page 425.

\begin{tcbposter}
\begin{tabular}{c}
poster = \{showframe,height=3cm,spacing=2mm,rows=2\},
boxes = \{beamer,colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!50,colupper=yellow!50\},
\end{tabular}
\end{tcbposter}

\begin{tcbposter}
\begin{tabular}{c}
posterbox \{name=A,column=1,above=bottom\} \{First box\}
posterbox \{name=B,column=1,above=A\} \{Second box\}
posterbox \{name=C,column=2,above=B\} \{Third box\}
posterbox \{name=D,column=3,above=row2\} \{Fourth box\}
\end{tabular}
\end{tcbposter}
The box is placed at the position with the given \langle name \rangle. This is quite likely a predefined node, see Section 21.2 on page 425.

\begin{tcbposter}
\begin{Verbatim}
poster = {showframe,height=3cm,spacing=2mm,rows=2},
boxes = {beamer,colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!50,colupper=yellow!50},
\end{Verbatim}
\posterbox{name=A,column=1,at=middle}{First box}
\posterbox{name=B,column=2,at=row1}{Second box}
\end{tcbposter}

The box is placed below a box \langle name1 \rangle and above another box \langle name2 \rangle. Also, \langle name1 \rangle and \langle name2 \rangle can be predefined nodes, see Section 21.2 on page 425.

\begin{tcbposter}
\begin{Verbatim}
poster = {showframe,height=3cm,spacing=2mm,rows=2},
boxes = {beamer,colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!50,colupper=yellow!50},
\end{Verbatim}
\posterbox{name=A,column=1,below=top}{First box}
\posterbox{name=B,column=1,between=A and bottom}{Second box}
\posterbox{name=C,column=2,above=bottom}{Third box}
\posterbox{name=D,column=2,between=top and C,span=2}{Fourth box}
\posterbox{name=E,column=3,between=D and bottom}{Fifth box}
\end{tcbposter}
The box is broken into partial boxes. These partial boxes are placed following the given sequence of placements. The feasible syntax for the sequence is:

\begin{verbatim}
\begin{tcbposter}
    \[ poster = {showframe,height=6cm,spacing=2mm,rows=2},
            boxes = {beamer,colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!50,colupper=yellow!50}, \]
    \posterbox[adjusted title=A]{name=A,column=1,below=top,span=2}{First box}
    \posterbox[name=B,column=2,above=bottom,span=2]{Second box}
    \posterbox[adjusted title=C, sequence=1 between A and bottom then
               2 between A and B then
               3 between top and B
               name=C, ]{\lipsum[2]}{Third box}
\end{tcbposter}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{tikzpicture}
    \node[anchor=south, text width=\textwidth, text height=\textwidth] {
        % Insert content here
    }; % Close the node
\end{tikzpicture}

\begin{table}
\begin{tabular}{|c|c|c|}
\hline
\textbf{column a} & \textbf{name a1} & \textbf{name a2} \\
\hline
\hline
\textbf{column b} & \textbf{name b1} & \textbf{name b2} \\
\hline
\hline
\textbf{column c} & \textbf{name c1} & \textbf{name c2} \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{table}

Obviously, this places the first part box at \textit{column a} between \textit{name a1} and \textit{name a2}. The second box part is placed at \textit{column b} between \textit{name b1} and \textit{name b2}, and so on.
If the box content of a \(\text{tcb/posterloc/sequence}^{\text{P.435}}\) is too short to fill all reserved box parts, the empty boxes are drawn with the \(\text{tcb/placeholder}\) style. This style can be redefined, e.g. to \(\text{tcb/blankest}^{\text{P.292}}\), if nothing should be drawn for empty boxes.

\[
\begin{tcbposter}
\text{poster} = \{\text{showframe}, \text{height}=2.5\text{cm}, \text{spacing}=2\text{mm}, \text{rows}=2\},
\text{boxes} = \{\text{beamer}, \text{colframe}=\text{blue!50!black}, \text{colback}=\text{blue!50}, \text{colupper}=\text{yellow!50}\},
\]
\text{\posterbox}\{\text{name}=A, \text{column}=1, \text{below}=\text{top}, \text{span}=2\}\{\text{First box}\}
\text{\posterbox}\{\text{name}=B, \text{sequence}=1 \text{ between } A \text{ and bottom then 2 \text{ between } A \text{ and bottom then 3 \text{ between top and bottom}}\}
\{\text{Second box followed by placeholder boxes}\}
\end{tcbposter}

\[
\begin{tcbposter}
\text{poster} = \{\text{showframe}, \text{height}=3\text{cm}, \text{spacing}=2\text{mm}, \text{rows}=2\},
\text{boxes} = \{\text{beamer}, \text{colframe}=\text{blue!50!black}, \text{colback}=\text{blue!50}, \text{colupper}=\text{yellow!50}\},
\]
\text{\posterbox}\{\text{name}=A, \text{column}=1, \text{row}=1, \text{xshift}=6\text{mm}\}\{\text{First box}\}
\text{\posterbox}\{\text{name}=B, \text{column}=2, \text{row}=2, \text{xshift}=-6\text{mm}\}\{\text{Second box}\}
\end{tcbposter}

/\text{tcb/placeholder}/ \begin{array}{c}
\text{style, no value}
\end{array}

/\text{tcb/posterloc/xshift}/ \begin{array}{c}
\text{(style, no value)}
\end{array}

\text{Horizontal shift of a box by } \langle \text{length} \rangle. \begin{array}{c}
\text{(no default, initially 0 pt)}
\end{array}
Vertical shift of a box by `(length)`.

\begin{tcbposter}
  \[ poster = \{\text{showframe, height=3cm, spacing=2mm, rows=2}, \]
  \[ \text{boxes = \{beamer, colframe=blue!50!black, colback=blue!50, colupper=yellow!50\}}, \]
  \]
  \posterbox\{name=A, column=1, row=1, yshift=-4mm\}{First box}
  \posterbox\{name=B, column=2, row=2, yshift=4mm\}{Second box}
\end{tcbposter}
The library is loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

\tcbuselibrary\{fitting\}

\section{Macros of the Library}
\subsection{tcbboxfit\{\textit{options}\}\{\textit{box content}\}}

Creates a colored box where the given \textit{box content} is fitted to the width and height of the box. A \texttt{tcbboxfit} has to have a fixed height. If no fixed height is given, a square box is constructed. In principle, most \textit{options} for a \texttt{tcolorbox} \cite{P.12} can be used for a \texttt{tcbboxfit} with some restrictions. A \texttt{tcbboxfit} cannot have a lower part and cannot be broken.

\begin{tcbframeraster}[
 fit algorithm=hybrid*,
 raster equal skip=1mm
]{
\textbf{dignissim rutrum.}
\textit{diam. Duis eget orci sit amet orci dignissim rutrum.}
\texttt{morbi ac orci dignissim rutrum.}
\texttt{Pellentesque cursus luctus mauris.}
\end{tcbframeraster}
\newtcboxfit{\{init options\}}\{\{name\}\{\{number\}\{\{default\}\{\{options\}\}

Creates a new macro \{name\} based on \texttt{tcboxfit}. Basically, \newtcboxfit operates like \texttt{newcommand}. The new macro \{name\} optionally takes \{number\}+1 arguments, where \{default\} is the default value for the optional first argument. The \{options\} are given to the underlying \texttt{tcboxfit}. The \{init options\} allow setting up automatic numbering, see Section 5 from page 114.

\newtcboxfit{\{mybox\}}{colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black,width=4cm, height=1.5cm,halign=center}
\mybox{This is my own box.}\par
\mybox{This is my own box with more text to be written.}

% \usepackage{lipsum}
\newtcboxfit{\{mybox\}}{colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries, boxsep=1mm,left=0mm,right=0mm,top=0mm, bottom=0mm,halign=center,valign=center, nobeforeafter,width=\#1,height=\#2}
\mybox[2.5cm]{1cm}{First box}%
\mybox[2.5cm]{1cm}{Second box with more text}\%
\mybox[5cm]{2cm}{Third box with text}\%
\mybox[5cm]{3cm}{\lipsum[1]}

% \usepackage{lipsum}
\newtcboxfit{\{mybox\}}{\{\{colback\}\{\lipsum\}\}
\mybox[5cm]{\lipsum[2]}

\renewtcboxfit{\{init options\}}\{\{name\}\{\{number\}\{\{default\}\{\{options\}\}

Operates like \newtcboxfit, but based on \texttt{renewcommand} instead of \texttt{newcommand}. An existing macro is redefined.
\texttt{\textbackslash tcbfitdim} \hspace{1cm} (read-only \LaTeX\ length)

This is a \LaTeX\ length adapted automatically by most variants of \texttt{/tcb/fit}\footnote{P.447}. Therefore, it never is to be changed by the user, but may be applied read-only. The \texttt{\textbackslash tcbfitdim} corresponds to the font size and may also be used to calculate box margins or other distances in dependency. The initial and maximum value for \texttt{\textbackslash tcbfitdim} is set by \texttt{/tcb/fit basedim}\footnote{P.442}.

\texttt{\textbackslash tcbfontsize\{\textbackslash factor\}}

Selects a font size inside a tcolorbox which is scaled with the given \langle factor\rangle relative to \texttt{\textbackslash tcbfitdim}. Also see \texttt{/tcb/fit fontsize macros}\footnote{P.443}.

\begin{verbatim}
\begin{tcolorbox}[fit basedim=10pt]
{\tcbfontsize{0.25} Very tiny,}\n{\tcbfontsize{0.5} Small,}\n{\tcbfontsize{1} Normal,}\n{\tcbfontsize{2} Large,}\n{\tcbfontsize{4} Huge.}
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\begin{tcolorbox}[fit basedim=10pt, fit to height=2cm]
{\tcbfontsize{0.25} Very tiny,}\n{\tcbfontsize{0.5} Small,}\n{\tcbfontsize{1} Normal,}\n{\tcbfontsize{2} Large,}\n{\tcbfontsize{4} Huge.}
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}
22.2 Option Keys of the Library

The font size for the content of a box with fixed width and fixed height can be adjusted automatically. This is called the *fitbox capture mode*. Note that the fit control algorithm constructs a series of versions for the box and selects the “best”. Therefore, the compilation time is quite longer than for a normal box. The \texttt{tcbfit}\textsuperscript{P.438} macro uses this algorithm by default.

\begin{tcb}
[fit,height=#2,boxsep=1pt,valign=center,opacityupper=0.5,
top=0.4\texttt{tcbfitdim},bottom=0.4\texttt{tcbfitdim},left=0.75\texttt{tcbfitdim},right=0.75\texttt{tcbfitdim},
enhanced,watermark text={\texttt{tcbfitsteps}},colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,#1]
\end{tcb}

\lipsum[1]

\lipsum[2]

\lipsum[3]

\lipsum

\lipsum

\lipsum

\lipsum

\lipsum
/tcb/fit to=(width) and (height)  
Shortcut for using \texttt{/tcb/fit} \cite{P.441} and setting the \texttt{(width)} and \texttt{(height)} values separately.

\begin{tcolorbox}[fit to=3cm and 2cm]  
This box content is fitted to the given dimensions.  
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[fit to height=2cm]  
This box content is fitted to the given height.  
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/fit basedim=(length)  
Sets the starting font dimension for the font size adjustment algorithm to \texttt{(length)}. The algorithm never enlarges this dimension. Therefore, the final \texttt{/tcbfitdim} \cite{P.440} is identical to or small than \texttt{(length)}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[fit to=4cm and 2cm,  
fit basedim=50pt]  
Enough words for the box.  
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[fit to=4cm and 2cm,  
fit basedim=50pt]  
Too few words for the box.  
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/fit skip=(real value)  
Sets the skip value of the selected font to \texttt{(real value)} times \texttt{/tcbfitdim} \cite{P.440}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[fit to=5cm and 4cm,  
fit skip=1.0 ]  
\lipsum[1]  
\end{tcolorbox}

\lipsum[1]
Redefines the standard \LaTeX{} font size macros \texttt{\tiny}, \texttt{\scriptsize}, \texttt{\footnotesize}, \texttt{\small}, \texttt{\normalsize}, \texttt{\large}, \texttt{\Large}, \texttt{\Huge}, and \texttt{\Huge}, to set font sizes relative to the current \texttt{\tcbfitdim} \cite{p.440}. Note that the display skip values for mathematical formulas are respected by the redefined macros. Also see \texttt{\tcbfontsize} \cite{p.440}.

% \usepackage{lipsum}
\begin{tcolorbox}[fit to height=4cm]
	\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[fit to height=4cm, fit fontsize macros]
{\Large\bfseries This text is adapted:\par}
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}

\tcbset{colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, left=1mm, right=1mm, boxsep=0mm}
\let\realHuge=\Huge
\begin{tcolorbox}[fit basedim=7pt, fit fontsize macros]
The relative relative font size macros are also usable without the \texttt{fit} algorithm.\par
\{\Huge Adapted Huge\} --- \{\realHuge Original Huge\}
\end{tcolorbox}

\tcbset{size=fbox, colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black}
\tcboxfit[height=5cm, fit fontsize macros, fonttitle=\normalsize\bfseries, title=Adapted title]
{\lipsum[2]}
The box is allowed to enlarge the fixed height up to the given \textit{(dimension)}, before a font size fit is applied. An optional /tcb/fit width plus is tried after the height adaption.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[fit]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[fit,fit height plus=1cm]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[fit]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[fit,fit height plus=1cm]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a tcolorbox.
This is a tcolorbox.

The box is allowed to enlarge the fixed width up to the given \textit{(dimension)}, before a font size fit is applied. An optional /tcb/fit height plus is tried after the width adaption.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[fit]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[fit,fit width plus=1cm]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[fit]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[fit,fit width plus=1cm]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a tcolorbox.
This is a tcolorbox.
Typically but not necessarily, the optional title of a \texttt{tcolorbox} is not part of the fit operation. If a \texttt{/tcb/fit width plus} is applied, the title is also adapted to the new width. If counters are increased inside the title text, they may be increased more than one time. To avoid this, you are encouraged to use \texttt{/tcb/phantom} \textsuperscript{P.104} or \texttt{/tcb/step and label} \textsuperscript{P.104} to set counters or use automatic numbering, see Subsection 5.1 from page 114.

\texttt{/tcb/fit width from=⟨min⟩ to ⟨max⟩} \hspace{1cm} (style, no default)

Sets the box width to ⟨min⟩ and allows the width to grow up to ⟨max⟩.

\begin{verbatim}
\% \usepackage{lipsum}
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,left=1mm,top=1mm,bottom=1mm, right=1mm,boxsep=0mm,height=4cm}

\begin{tcolorbox}[fit,width=\linewidth/2]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}\par
\begin{tcolorbox}[fit width from=\linewidth/2 to \linewidth]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}\par
\end{verbatim}
/tcb/fit height from=(min) to (max) (style, no default)

Sets the box height to (min) and allows the height to grow up to (max).

\begin{mybox}
This is a \tcolorbox.
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}
This is a \tcolorbox. This is a \tcolorbox. This is a \tcolorbox.
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}
\lipsum[2]
\end{mybox}

\texttt{/tcb/fit algorithm\textasciitilde(name)} \hspace{1cm} (no default, initially \texttt{fontsize})

Sets the algorithm for the fitting process after optionally width and height are adapted. In the following, adapting the font size means adapting $\texttt{\textbackslash tcbfitdim \textasciitilde P.440}$. Feasible values for \texttt{name} are:

- \texttt{fontsize} (initial): The algorithm is a bisection method that adapts the font size until certain stop conditions are fulfilled. This is the most time-consuming method but it is robust and gives pleasant results.

  ! The used font has to be freely scalable for this method! Other content than text is not scaled down. The aspect ratio is fully guaranteed.

- \texttt{fontsize\textasciitilde}: First, the \texttt{fontsize} algorithm is applied. If the font was scaled down and the resulting height is too small, the box is squeezed to fit the area.

  ! The used font has to be freely scalable for this method! Other content than text may be slightly rescaled. The aspect ratio cannot be fully guaranteed.

- \texttt{areasize}: The algorithm calculates the area size for the text without scaling the font. The text box is shaped for the needed aspect ratio in one or two steps. Finally, it is scaled down with a standard \texttt{\textbackslash \resizebox} macro.

  ! The used font has not to be scalable. Every box content is scaled down. The aspect ratio cannot be fully guaranteed.

- \texttt{areasize\textasciitilde}: The \texttt{areasize} algorithm is applied, but if the content was scaled down and the resulting height is too small, the box is squeezed to fit the area.

  ! The used font has not to be scalable. Every box content is scaled down. The aspect ratio cannot be fully guaranteed.

- \texttt{hybrid}: First, this algorithm estimates the needed font size in one or two steps. Then an \texttt{areasize} fitting as above is applied.

  ! The used font has to be freely scalable for this method! Other content than text may be slightly rescaled. The aspect ratio cannot be fully guaranteed.

- \texttt{hybrid\textasciitilde}: First, this algorithm estimates the needed font size in one or two steps. Then an \texttt{areasize\textasciitilde} fitting as above is applied.

  ! The used font has to be freely scalable for this method! Other content than text may be slightly rescaled. The aspect ratio cannot be fully guaranteed.

- \texttt{squeeze}: The text box is brutally scaled down to fit.

  ! The aspect ratio is very likely to be horrible. You should not use this method for final documents.
Quality \dotfill versus \dotfill Speed

\lipsum[2]
The following options set control parameters for the fit algorithm. Mainly, they apply to the \texttt{fontsize} variant, see \texttt{/tcb/fit algorithm} \cite[p.447]{tcb}. The options should be seen as experimental and are likely to change in future versions, if necessary.

\begin{verbatim}
/tcb/fit maxstep=(number) \hspace{1.5em} (no default, initially 20)
  Sets the maximal step size for the font size adjustment algorithm. In normal situations, the algorithm stops before reaching the initial value of 20 steps. If the box content does not shrink, this value prevents an endless loop.

/tcb/fit maxfontdiff=(dimension) \hspace{1.5em} (no default, initially 0.1pt)
  The algorithm stops, if the font size is determined within a deviation of \textit{\texttt{dimension}}.

/tcb/fit maxfontdiffgap=(dimension) \hspace{1.5em} (no default, initially 1pt)
  The algorithm stops, if the number of lines is determined and the font size is determined within a deviation of \textit{\texttt{dimension}}.

/tcb/fit maxwidthdiff=(dimension) \hspace{1.5em} (no default, initially 1pt)
  The algorithm stops, if the (optionally) flexible box width is determined within a deviation of \textit{\texttt{dimension}}.

/tcb/fit maxwidthdiffgap=(dimension) \hspace{1.5em} (no default, initially 10pt)
  The algorithm stops, if the number of lines is determined and the (optionally) flexible box width is determined within a deviation of \textit{\texttt{dimension}}.

/tcb/fit warning=(value) \hspace{1.5em} (no default, initially \texttt{off})
  Typically, the fit control algorithm constructs several auxiliary boxes to determine the optimal one. If not switched off, the construction of the auxiliary boxes may produce many \texttt{hbox} warnings. This option key changes the \texttt{\hbadness} value.
  \begin{itemize}
    \item \texttt{off}: Most of \texttt{Underfull \hbox} and \texttt{Overfull \hbox} warnings are switched off (including the ones for the finally used box).
    \item \texttt{on}: All warnings for all auxiliary boxes are displayed.
    \item \texttt{final}: Only warnings for the finally used box are displayed. Note that an additional box has to be constructed for theses messages.
  \end{itemize}
\end{verbatim}
The library is loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

\\tcbuselibrary{hooks}

For the skin related options, the library \skins has to be loaded separately.

## 23.1 Concept of Hooks

A hook is a placeholder in some \LaTeX code where additional code can be added. For example, the \LaTeX macro \texttt{\textbackslash AtBeginDocument} adds code to a hook which is placed at the beginning of every document.

Several option keys of \texttt{tcolorbox} allow providing some code which is added to specific places of a colored box. For example, \texttt{/tcb/before upper} \textsuperscript{\textsuperscript{P.65}} places code before the content of the upper part. A following usage of this key overwrites any prior settings.

The library \hooks extends \texttt{/tcb/before upper} \textsuperscript{\textsuperscript{P.65}} and several more existing keys to “hookable” versions, e.g. \texttt{/tcb/before upper app} \textsuperscript{\textsuperscript{P.451}} and \texttt{/tcb/before upper pre} \textsuperscript{\textsuperscript{P.451}}. The “hookable” keys don’t overwrite prior settings but either \texttt{append} or \texttt{prepend} the newly given code to the existing code.

The general naming convention (with some small exceptions) is:

- \texttt{\langle option key \rangle app}: works like \texttt{\langle option key \rangle} but \texttt{appends} its code to the existing code.
- \texttt{\langle option key \rangle pre}: works like \texttt{\langle option key \rangle} but \texttt{prepends} its code to the existing code.

If the original \texttt{\langle option key \rangle} is used (again), all code will be overwritten. Therefore, the order of the option key usage is crucial.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{tabular}{|c||c|c|c|c|c|}
\hline
\textbf{Group} & \textbf{One} & \textbf{Two} & \textbf{Three} & \textbf{Four} & \textbf{Sum} \\
\hline
Red & 1000.00 & 2000.00 & 3000.00 & 4000.00 & 10000.00 \\
\hline
Green & 2000.00 & 3000.00 & 4000.00 & 5000.00 & 14000.00 \\
\hline
Blue & 3000.00 & 4000.00 & 5000.00 & 6000.00 & 18000.00 \\
\hline
Sum & 6000.00 & 9000.00 & 12000.00 & 15000.00 & 42000.00 \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{tcolorbox}
23.2 Box Content Additions

The following option keys extend the options given in Subsection 4.11 from page 64.

/tcb/before title app\(=\langle code\rangle\) (no default)

Appends the given \langle code\rangle to /tcb/before title\(^ \ast \)P.64 after the color and font settings and before the content of the title.

/tcb/before title pre\(=\langle code\rangle\) (no default)

Prepends the given \langle code\rangle to /tcb/before title\(^ \ast \)P.64 after the color and font settings and before the content of the title.

/tcb/after title app\(=\langle code\rangle\) (no default)

Appends the given \langle code\rangle to /tcb/after title\(^ \ast \)P.64 after the content of the title.

/tcb/after title pre\(=\langle code\rangle\) (no default)

Prepends the given \langle code\rangle to /tcb/after title\(^ \ast \)P.64 after the content of the title.

/tcb/before upper app\(=\langle code\rangle\) (no default)

Appends the given \langle code\rangle to /tcb/before upper\(^ \ast \)P.65 or /tcb/before upper\(^ \ast \)P.65 after the color and font settings and before the content of the upper part.

/tcb/before upper pre\(=\langle code\rangle\) (no default)

Prepends the given \langle code\rangle to /tcb/before upper\(^ \ast \)P.65 or /tcb/before upper\(^ \ast \)P.65 after the color and font settings and before the content of the upper part.

/tcb/after upper app\(=\langle code\rangle\) (no default)

Appends the given \langle code\rangle to /tcb/after upper\(^ \ast \)P.66 or /tcb/after upper\(^ \ast \)P.66 after the content of the upper part.

/tcb/after upper pre\(=\langle code\rangle\) (no default)

Prepends the given \langle code\rangle to /tcb/after upper\(^ \ast \)P.66 or /tcb/after upper\(^ \ast \)P.66 after the content of the upper part.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\[\begin{align*}
\frac{2}{\sqrt{2}} &= \sqrt{2}. \\
\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} &= \infty.
\end{align*}\]
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{align*}
\frac{\sin \left(\frac{\pi}{2}\right)}{\sqrt{2}} &= \sqrt{2}.
\end{align*}

\begin{align*}
\int x^2 \, dx &= \frac{1}{3} x^3 + c.
\end{align*}

\begin{align*}
\sin \left(\frac{\pi}{2}\right) &= 1.
\end{align*}
Appends the given \langle code \rangle to /tcb/before lower\textsuperscript{−}\textsuperscript{P.67} or /tcb/before lower\textsuperscript{*}\textsuperscript{−}\textsuperscript{P.67} after the color and font settings and \textit{before} the content of the lower part.

Prepends the given \langle code \rangle to /tcb/before lower\textsuperscript{−}\textsuperscript{P.67} or /tcb/before lower\textsuperscript{*}\textsuperscript{−}\textsuperscript{P.67} after the color and font settings and \textit{before} the content of the lower part.

Appends the given \langle code \rangle to /tcb/after lower\textsuperscript{−}\textsuperscript{P.68} or /tcb/after lower\textsuperscript{*}\textsuperscript{−}\textsuperscript{P.68} \textit{after} the content of the lower part.

Prepends the given \langle code \rangle to /tcb/after lower\textsuperscript{−}\textsuperscript{P.68} or /tcb/after lower\textsuperscript{*}\textsuperscript{−}\textsuperscript{P.68} \textit{after} the content of the lower part.

### 23.3 Embedding into the Surroundings

The following option keys extend the options given in Subsection 4.14 from page 81.

The “hookable” versions are usable inside the document. In the preamble, they can only be used after explicit setting of /tcb/before\textsuperscript{−}\textsuperscript{P.81} and /tcb/after\textsuperscript{−}\textsuperscript{P.81} or by e.g. /tcb/parskip\textsuperscript{−}\textsuperscript{P.85}.

Appends the given \langle code \rangle to /tcb/before\textsuperscript{−}\textsuperscript{P.81} before the colored box.

Prepends the given \langle code \rangle to /tcb/before\textsuperscript{−}\textsuperscript{P.81} before the colored box.

Appends the given \langle code \rangle to /tcb/after\textsuperscript{−}\textsuperscript{P.81} \textit{after} the colored box.

Prepends the given \langle code \rangle to /tcb/after\textsuperscript{−}\textsuperscript{P.81} \textit{after} the colored box.

\section*{My title}

This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.

This is the end.
23.4 Overlays

The following option keys extend the options given in Subsection 4.12 from page 74.

/tcb/overlay app=(graphical code) (no default)

Appends the given (graphical code) to /tcb/overlay *P.74.

/tcb/overlay pre=(graphical code) (no default)

Prepends the given (graphical code) to /tcb/overlay *P.74.

/tcb/overlay unbroken app=(graphical code) (no default)

Appends the given (graphical code) to /tcb/overlay unbroken *P.75.

/tcb/overlay unbroken pre=(graphical code) (no default)

Prepends the given (graphical code) to /tcb/overlay unbroken *P.75.

/tcb/overlay first app=(graphical code) (no default)

Appends the given (graphical code) to /tcb/overlay first *P.75.

/tcb/overlay first pre=(graphical code) (no default)

Prepends the given (graphical code) to /tcb/overlay first *P.75.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>/tcb/overlay middle app</code></td>
<td>Appends the given <code>graphical code</code> to <code>/tcb/overlay middle</code> P.75.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>/tcb/overlay middle pre</code></td>
<td>Prepends the given <code>graphical code</code> to <code>/tcb/overlay middle</code> P.75.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>/tcb/overlay last app</code></td>
<td>Appends the given <code>graphical code</code> to <code>/tcb/overlay last</code> P.75.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>/tcb/overlay last pre</code></td>
<td>Prepends the given <code>graphical code</code> to <code>/tcb/overlay last</code> P.75.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>/tcb/overlay broken app</code></td>
<td>Appends the given <code>graphical code</code> to <code>/tcb/overlay broken</code> P.75.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>/tcb/overlay broken pre</code></td>
<td>Prepends the given <code>graphical code</code> to <code>/tcb/overlay broken</code> P.75.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>/tcb/overlay unbroken and first app</code></td>
<td>Appends the given <code>graphical code</code> to <code>/tcb/overlay unbroken and first</code> P.75.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>/tcb/overlay unbroken and first pre</code></td>
<td>Prepends the given <code>graphical code</code> to <code>/tcb/overlay unbroken and first</code> P.75.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>/tcb/overlay middle and last app</code></td>
<td>Appends the given <code>graphical code</code> to <code>/tcb/overlay middle and last</code> P.75.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>/tcb/overlay middle and last pre</code></td>
<td>Prepends the given <code>graphical code</code> to <code>/tcb/overlay middle and last</code> P.75.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>/tcb/overlay unbroken and last app</code></td>
<td>Appends the given <code>graphical code</code> to <code>/tcb/overlay unbroken and last</code> P.75.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>/tcb/overlay unbroken and last pre</code></td>
<td>Prepends the given <code>graphical code</code> to <code>/tcb/overlay unbroken and last</code> P.75.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>/tcb/overlay first and middle app</code></td>
<td>Appends the given <code>graphical code</code> to <code>/tcb/overlay first and middle</code> P.75.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>/tcb/overlay first and middle pre</code></td>
<td>Prepends the given <code>graphical code</code> to <code>/tcb/overlay first and middle</code> P.75.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
23.5 Watermarks

The following option keys extend the options given in Subsection 10.3 from page 173.

Watermarks are special overlays. The \texttt{hooks} library allows the combination of several watermarks and overlays.

\begin{itemize}
  \item \texttt{/tcb/watermark text app=\langle text\rangle} \quad \textup{(no default)}
  \begin{itemize}
    \item Appends a \texttt{/tcb/watermark text} \upshape{\textsuperscript{P.173}} to the colored box.
  \end{itemize}
  \item \texttt{/tcb/watermark text pre=\langle text\rangle} \quad \textup{(no default)}
  \begin{itemize}
    \item Prepends a \texttt{/tcb/watermark text} \upshape{\textsuperscript{P.173}} to the colored box.
  \end{itemize}
  \item \texttt{/tcb/watermark text app on=\langle part\rangle is \langle text\rangle} \quad \textup{(no default)}
  \begin{itemize}
    \item Appends a \texttt{/tcb/watermark text on} \upshape{\textsuperscript{P.173}} the named \langle part\rangle of a break sequence.
  \end{itemize}
  \item \texttt{/tcb/watermark text pre on=\langle part\rangle is \langle text\rangle} \quad \textup{(no default)}
  \begin{itemize}
    \item Prepends a \texttt{/tcb/watermark text on} \upshape{\textsuperscript{P.173}} the named \langle part\rangle of a break sequence.
  \end{itemize}
\end{itemize}
/tcb/watermark graphics app={\(file\ name\)} (no default)

Appends a /tcb/watermark graphics\textsuperscript{\(P.174\)} referenced by \(file\ name\) to the colored box.

/tcb/watermark graphics pre={\(file\ name\)} (no default)

Prepends a /tcb/watermark graphics\textsuperscript{\(P.174\)} referenced by \(file\ name\) to the colored box.

/tcb/watermark graphics app on=(\textit{part}) is \(file\ name\) (no default)

Appends a /tcb/watermark graphics on\textsuperscript{\(P.174\)} the named \textit{part} of a break sequence. The picture is referenced by \(file\ name\).

/tcb/watermark graphics pre on=(\textit{part}) is \(file\ name\) (no default)

Prepends a /tcb/watermark graphics on\textsuperscript{\(P.174\)} the named \textit{part} of a break sequence. The picture is referenced by \(file\ name\).

/tcb/watermark tikz app={\texttt{graphical code}} (no default)

Appends a /tcb/watermark tikz\textsuperscript{\(P.175\)} with the given tikz \texttt{graphical code} to the colored box.

/tcb/watermark tikz pre={\texttt{graphical code}} (no default)

Prepends a /tcb/watermark tikz\textsuperscript{\(P.175\)} with the given tikz \texttt{graphical code} to the colored box.

% \usepackage{tikz}
\tcbset{colback={red!15!white,colframe={red!75!black},fonttitle={\bfseries, watermark color={Navy},watermark opacity=0.25, smiley/.style={watermark tikz pre=\%
\path[fill=yellow,draw=yellow!75!red] (0,0) circle (1cm);
\fill[red] (45:5mm) circle (1mm);
\fill[red] (135:5mm) circle (1mm);
\draw[line width=1mm,red] (215:5mm) arc (215:325:5mm);}}}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title, watermark text=Watermark, smiley]
\lipsum[1-2]
\end{tcolorbox}

My title


/tcb/watermark tikz app on=(\textit{part}) is \texttt{graphical code} (no default)

Appends a /tcb/watermark tikz\textsuperscript{\(P.175\)} the named \textit{part} of a break sequence.

/tcb/watermark tikz pre on=(\textit{part}) is \texttt{graphical code} (no default)

Prepends a /tcb/watermark tikz\textsuperscript{\(P.175\)} the named \textit{part} of a break sequence.
23.6 Underlays

The following option keys extend the options given in Section 10.8 on page 203. There are no app type keys since underlays are stackable by default.

\[ /tcb/underlay\ pre=\langle\text{graphical code}\rangle \]

Prepends the given \langle\text{graphical code}\rangle to /tcb/underlay \( ^\rightarrow \text{P.203} \).

\[ /tcb/underlay\ unbroken\ pre=\langle\text{graphical code}\rangle \]

Prepends the given \langle\text{graphical code}\rangle to /tcb/underlay unbroken \( ^\rightarrow \text{P.204} \).

\[ /tcb/underlay\ first\ pre=\langle\text{graphical code}\rangle \]

Prepends the given \langle\text{graphical code}\rangle to /tcb/underlay first \( ^\rightarrow \text{P.204} \).

\[ /tcb/underlay\ middle\ pre=\langle\text{graphical code}\rangle \]

Prepends the given \langle\text{graphical code}\rangle to /tcb/underlay middle \( ^\rightarrow \text{P.204} \).

\[ /tcb/underlay\ last\ pre=\langle\text{graphical code}\rangle \]

Prepends the given \langle\text{graphical code}\rangle to /tcb/underlay last \( ^\rightarrow \text{P.204} \).

\[ /tcb/underlay\ boxed\ title\ pre=\langle\text{graphical code}\rangle \]

Prepends the given \langle\text{graphical code}\rangle to /tcb/underlay boxed title \( ^\rightarrow \text{P.204} \).

\[ /tcb/underlay\ broken\ pre=\langle\text{graphical code}\rangle \]

Prepends the given \langle\text{graphical code}\rangle to /tcb/underlay broken \( ^\rightarrow \text{P.204} \).

\[ /tcb/underlay\ unbroken\ and\ first\ pre=\langle\text{graphical code}\rangle \]

Prepends the given \langle\text{graphical code}\rangle to /tcb/underlay unbroken and first \( ^\rightarrow \text{P.204} \).

\[ /tcb/underlay\ middle\ and\ last\ pre=\langle\text{graphical code}\rangle \]

Prepends the given \langle\text{graphical code}\rangle to /tcb/underlay middle and last \( ^\rightarrow \text{P.204} \).

\[ /tcb/underlay\ unbroken\ and\ last\ pre=\langle\text{graphical code}\rangle \]

Prepends the given \langle\text{graphical code}\rangle to /tcb/underlay unbroken and last \( ^\rightarrow \text{P.204} \).

\[ /tcb/underlay\ first\ and\ middle\ pre=\langle\text{graphical code}\rangle \]

Prepends the given \langle\text{graphical code}\rangle to /tcb/underlay first and middle \( ^\rightarrow \text{P.204} \).
23.7 Finishes

The following option keys extend the options given in Section 10.9 on page 205. There are no app type keys since finishes are stackable by default.

\[\text{/tcb/finish pre=}(\text{graphical code})\]

Prepends the given (graphical code) to /tcb/finish \textsuperscript{P.205}.

\[\text{/tcb/finish unbroken pre=}(\text{graphical code})\]

Prepends the given (graphical code) to /tcb/finish unbroken \textsuperscript{P.206}.

\[\text{/tcb/finish first pre=}(\text{graphical code})\]

Prepends the given (graphical code) to /tcb/finish first \textsuperscript{P.206}.

\[\text{/tcb/finish middle pre=}(\text{graphical code})\]

Prepends the given (graphical code) to /tcb/finish middle \textsuperscript{P.206}.

\[\text{/tcb/finish last pre=}(\text{graphical code})\]

Prepends the given (graphical code) to /tcb/finish last \textsuperscript{P.206}.

\[\text{/tcb/finish broken pre=}(\text{graphical code})\]

Prepends the given (graphical code) to /tcb/finish broken \textsuperscript{P.206}.

\[\text{/tcb/finish unbroken and first pre=}(\text{graphical code})\]

Prepends the given (graphical code) to /tcb/finish unbroken and first \textsuperscript{P.206}.

\[\text{/tcb/finish middle and last pre=}(\text{graphical code})\]

Prepends the given (graphical code) to /tcb/finish middle and last \textsuperscript{P.206}.

\[\text{/tcb/finish unbroken and last pre=}(\text{graphical code})\]

Prepends the given (graphical code) to /tcb/finish unbroken and last \textsuperscript{P.206}.

\[\text{/tcb/finish first and middle pre=}(\text{graphical code})\]

Prepends the given (graphical code) to /tcb/finish first and middle \textsuperscript{P.206}.

23.8 Skin Code

The following option keys extend the options given in Subsection 9.2 from page 145.

\[\text{/tcb/frame code app=}(\text{graphical code})\]

Appends the given (graphical code) to /tcb/frame code \textsuperscript{P.145}.

\[\text{/tcb/frame code pre=}(\text{graphical code})\]

Prepends the given (graphical code) to /tcb/frame code \textsuperscript{P.145}.

\[\text{/tcb/interior titled code app=}(\text{graphical code})\]

Appends the given (graphical code) to /tcb/interior titled code \textsuperscript{P.145}. 

458
23.9 Extras

The following option keys extend the options given in Section 19.5 on page 396. There are no app type keys since extras are stackable by default.

\[\text{N } 2015-07-16 /tcb/extras \text{ pre}\{\langle \text{options} \rangle \} \quad \text{(no default)}\]

Prepends the given \( \langle \text{options} \rangle \) to /tcb/extras \( \text{P.396} \).

\[\text{N } 2015-07-16 /tcb/extras \text{ unbroken pre}\{\langle \text{options} \rangle \} \quad \text{(no default)}\]

Prepends the given \( \langle \text{options} \rangle \) to /tcb/extras unbroken \( \text{P.396} \).

\[\text{N } 2015-07-16 /tcb/extras \text{ first pre}\{\langle \text{options} \rangle \} \quad \text{(no default)}\]

Prepends the given \( \langle \text{options} \rangle \) to /tcb/extras first \( \text{P.396} \).

\[\text{N } 2015-07-16 /tcb/extras \text{ middle pre}\{\langle \text{options} \rangle \} \quad \text{(no default)}\]

Prepends the given \( \langle \text{options} \rangle \) to /tcb/extras middle \( \text{P.396} \).

\[\text{N } 2015-07-16 /tcb/extras \text{ last pre}\{\langle \text{options} \rangle \} \quad \text{(no default)}\]

Prepends the given \( \langle \text{options} \rangle \) to /tcb/extras last \( \text{P.396} \).

\[\text{N } 2015-07-16 /tcb/extras \text{ broken pre}\{\langle \text{options} \rangle \} \quad \text{(no default)}\]

Prepends the given \( \langle \text{options} \rangle \) to /tcb/extras broken \( \text{P.396} \).

\[\text{N } 2015-07-16 /tcb/extras \text{ unbroken and first pre}\{\langle \text{options} \rangle \} \quad \text{(no default)}\]

Prepends the given \( \langle \text{options} \rangle \) to /tcb/extras unbroken and first \( \text{P.396} \).

\[\text{N } 2015-07-16 /tcb/extras \text{ middle and last pre}\{\langle \text{options} \rangle \} \quad \text{(no default)}\]

Prepends the given \( \langle \text{options} \rangle \) to /tcb/extras middle and last \( \text{P.396} \).

\[\text{N } 2015-07-16 /tcb/extras \text{ unbroken and last pre}\{\langle \text{options} \rangle \} \quad \text{(no default)}\]

Prepends the given \( \langle \text{options} \rangle \) to /tcb/extras unbroken and last \( \text{P.396} \).

\[\text{N } 2015-07-16 /tcb/extras \text{ first and middle pre}\{\langle \text{options} \rangle \} \quad \text{(no default)}\]

Prepends the given \( \langle \text{options} \rangle \) to /tcb/extras first and middle \( \text{P.397} \).

23.10 Listings

The following option keys extend the options given in Section 17 from page 319.

\[\text{N } 2019-07-11 /tcb/listing \text{ options app}\{\langle \text{options} \rangle \} \quad \text{(no default)}\]

Appends the given \( \langle \text{options} \rangle \) to /tcb/listing options \( \text{P.326} \).

\[\text{N } 2019-07-11 /tcb/listing \text{ options pre}\{\langle \text{options} \rangle \} \quad \text{(no default)}\]

Prepends the given \( \langle \text{options} \rangle \) to /tcb/listing options \( \text{P.326} \).

\[\text{N } 2019-07-11 /tcb/minted \text{ options app}\{\langle \text{options} \rangle \} \quad \text{(no default)}\]

Appends the given \( \langle \text{options} \rangle \) to /tcb/minted options \( \text{P.329} \).

\[\text{N } 2019-07-11 /tcb/minted \text{ options pre}\{\langle \text{options} \rangle \} \quad \text{(no default)}\]

Prepends the given \( \langle \text{options} \rangle \) to /tcb/minted options \( \text{P.329} \).
The library is loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

\tcbuselibrary{xparse}

This also loads the package `xparse` [13].

The purpose of this library is to give comfortable access to the powerful document command production with `xparse` for `tcolorbox`. See the `xparse` package documentation [13] for details about the argument (specification) used in this section.

### 24.1 Option Keys

**/tcb/verbatim** *(style, no value)*

Sets options for a `verbatim` style \tcbox\textcolor{red}{.P.14}. Since the indented boxes may contain only very few words, the dimensions are made smaller and `/tcb/nobeforeafter` \textcolor{red}{.P.81} and `/tcb/tcbox raise base` \textcolor{red}{.P.102} are set.

\[
\DeclareTotalTCBox{\myverb}{ v }{verbatim, colframe=red!75!black,colupper=blue}{#1}
\]

\myverb\textbf is a `\LaTeX` command.

\[
\textbf
\]

\textbf is a `\LaTeX` command.

\[\textbf\]

\myverb\textbf is a `\LaTeX` command.

\[
\textbf
\]

\textbf is a `\LaTeX` command.

\[\textbf\]

\myverb\textbf is a `\LaTeX` command.

\[
\textbf
\]

\textbf is a `\LaTeX` command.

\[\textbf\]

\myverb\textbf is a `\LaTeX` command.

\[
\textbf
\]

\textbf is a `\LaTeX` command.

\[\textbf\]

\myverb\textbf is a `\LaTeX` command.

\[
\textbf
\]

\textbf is a `\LaTeX` command.

\[\textbf\]

\myverb\textbf is a `\LaTeX` command.

\[
\textbf
\]

\textbf is a `\LaTeX` command.

\[\textbf\]

\myverb\textbf is a `\LaTeX` command.

\[
\textbf
\]

\textbf is a `\LaTeX` command.

\[\textbf\]

\myverb\textbf is a `\LaTeX` command.

\[
\textbf
\]

\textbf is a `\LaTeX` command.

\[\textbf\]

\myverb\textbf is a `\LaTeX` command.

\[
\textbf
\]

\textbf is a `\LaTeX` command.

\[\textbf\]

\myverb\textbf is a `\LaTeX` command.

\[
\textbf
\]

\textbf is a `\LaTeX` command.

\[\textbf\]

\myverb\textbf is a `\LaTeX` command.

\[
\textbf
\]

\textbf is a `\LaTeX` command.

\[\textbf\]

\myverb\textbf is a `\LaTeX` command.

\[
\textbf
\]

\textbf is a `\LaTeX` command.

\[\textbf\]

\myverb\textbf is a `\LaTeX` command.

\[
\textbf
\]

\textbf is a `\LaTeX` command.

\[\textbf\]

\myverb\textbf is a `\LaTeX` command.

\[
\textbf
\]

\textbf is a `\LaTeX` command.

\[\textbf\]

\myverb\textbf is a `\LaTeX` command.

\[
\textbf
\]

\textbf is a `\LaTeX` command.

\[\textbf\]

\myverb\textbf is a `\LaTeX` command.

\[
\textbf
\]

\textbf is a `\LaTeX` command.

\[\textbf\]

\myverb\textbf is a `\LaTeX` command.

\[
\textbf
\]

\textbf is a `\LaTeX` command.

\[\textbf\]

\myverb\textbf is a `\LaTeX` command.

\[
\textbf
\]

\textbf is a `\LaTeX` command.

\[\textbf\]

\myverb\textbf is a `\LaTeX` command.

\[
\textbf
\]

\textbf is a `\LaTeX` command.

\[\textbf\]

\myverb\textbf is a `\LaTeX` command.

\[
\textbf
\]

\textbf is a `\LaTeX` command.

\[\textbf\]

\myverb\textbf is a `\LaTeX` command.

\[
\textbf
\]

\textbf is a `\LaTeX` command.

\[\textbf\]

\myverb\textbf is a `\LaTeX` command.
Wraps the `\IfValueTF` command(s) of `xparse` for option setting. If the `<argument>` has a value, the `<true options>` are set. Otherwise, the `<false options>` are set.

```latex
\DeclareTColorBox{mybox}{ o }{colframe=red!75!black,colback=red!5!white, \IfValueT={#1}{title={\texttt{#1}},fonttitle=\bfseries}}
\begin{mybox}
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{mybox}
```

This is a tcolorbox.

This is a tcolorbox.

Wraps the `\IfBooleanTF` command(s) of `xparse` for option setting. If the `<argument>` is `\BooleanTrue`, the `<true options>` are set. If the `<argument>` is `\BooleanFalse`, the `<false options>` are set.

```latex
\DeclareTColorBox{mybox}{ s }{colframe=red!75!black, \IfBooleanTF={#1}{colback=yellow!50!red,colback=red!5!white}}
```

This is a tcolorbox.

This is a tcolorbox.

This is a tcolorbox.

This is a tcolorbox.
24.2 Producing \texttt{tcolorbox} Environments and Commands

\begin{Verbatim}
\DeclareTColorBox[⟨init options⟩]{⟨name⟩}{⟨specification⟩}{⟨options⟩}
\end{Verbatim}

Creates a new environment \texttt{⟨name⟩} based on \texttt{tcolorbox}. Basically, \texttt{\DeclareTColorBox} operates like \texttt{\DeclareDocumentEnvironment}. This means, the new environment \texttt{⟨name⟩} is constructed with the given argument \texttt{⟨specification⟩}. The \texttt{⟨options⟩} are given to the underlying \texttt{tcolorbox}.

Note that \texttt{/tcb/savedelimiter} is set to the given \texttt{⟨name⟩} automatically.

The \texttt{⟨init options⟩} allow setting up automatic numbering, see Section 5 from page 114. The new environment is always created, irrespective of an already existing environment with the same name.

% counter from previous example
\begin{Verbatim}
\ DeclareTColorBox[use counter from=pabox]{{mybox}}\{ O{red} m d"" !O{} \}
\{enhanced, colframe=#1!75!black, colback=#1!15!white, fonttitle=\textbf, title={\thetcbcounter-#2}, IfValueT={#3}{watermark text={#3}},#4\}
\end{Verbatim}

\begin{minipage}{\textwidth}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{mybox}{My title}
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}{blue}{My title}
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}{green}{My title}{My Watermark}
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}{yellow}{My title}{colbacktitle=yellow!50!white, coltitle=black}
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}{purple}{My title}{All together}{coltitle=yellow}
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{mybox}
\end{verbatim}
\end{minipage}
\NewTColorBox{\textit{init options}}{(\textit{name})}{\{\textit{specification}\}}{(\textit{options})}

Operates like \DeclareTColorBox \textsuperscript{P.463}, but based on \NewDocumentEnvironment instead of \DeclareDocumentEnvironment. An error is issued if \textit{name} has already been defined.

\RenewTColorBox{\textit{init options}}{(\textit{name})}{\{\textit{specification}\}}{(\textit{options})}

Operates like \DeclareTColorBox \textsuperscript{P.463}, but based on \RenewDocumentEnvironment instead of \DeclareDocumentEnvironment. An existing environment is redefined.

\ProvideTColorBox{\textit{init options}}{(\textit{name})}{\{\textit{specification}\}}{(\textit{options})}

Operates like \DeclareTColorBox \textsuperscript{P.463}, but based on \ProvideDocumentEnvironment instead of \DeclareDocumentEnvironment. The environment \textit{name} is only created if it is not already defined.
\DeclareTotalTColorBox[(init options)]{\langle name\rangle}{(specification)}{(options)}{(content)}

Creates a new command \langle name\rangle based on tcolorbox^{P.12}. In contrast to \DeclareTColorBox^{P.463}, also the \langle content\rangle of the tcolorbox is specified. Basically, \DeclareTotalTColorBox operates like \DeclareDocumentCommand. This means, the new command \langle name\rangle is constructed with the given argument \langle specification\rangle. The \langle options\rangle are given to the underlying tcolorbox^{P.12} which is filled with the specified \langle content\rangle.

Note that /tcb/savedelimiter^{P.26} is set to the given \langle name\rangle automatically. The \langle init options\rangle allow setting up automatic numbering, see Section 5 from page 114. The new command is always created, irrespective of an already existing command with the same name.

\DeclareTotalTColorBox{\diabox}{ 0\{} v \ m \}
{ bicolor,nobeforeafter,equal height group=\diabox,width=5.7cm,
  fonttitle=\bfseries\ttfamily,adjusted title=\#2,center title,
  colframe=blue!20!black,leftupper=0mm,rightupper=0mm,colback=black!75!white,#1}
{ \tikz\path[fill zoom image=\#2] (0,0) rectangle (\linewidth,4cm);%
  \tcblower
\#3}

\diabox{blueshade.png}{Created with |GIMP|.\
\url{http://www.gimp.org}}
\diabox{goldshade.png}{Created with |GIMP|.\
\url{http://www.gimp.org}}

\NewTotalTColorBox[(init options)]{\langle name\rangle}{(specification)}{(options)}{(content)}

Operates like \DeclareTotalTColorBox, but based on \NewDocumentCommand instead of \DeclareDocumentCommand. An error is issued if \langle name\rangle has already been defined.

\RenewTotalTColorBox[(init options)]{\langle name\rangle}{(specification)}{(options)}{(content)}

Operates like \DeclareTotalTColorBox, but based on \RenewDocumentCommand instead of \DeclareDocumentCommand. An existing command is redefined.

\ProvideTotalTColorBox[(init options)]{\langle name\rangle}{(specification)}{(options)}{(content)}

Operates like \DeclareTotalTColorBox, but based on \ProvideDocumentCommand instead of \DeclareDocumentCommand. The command \langle name\rangle is only created if it is not already defined.
24.3 Producing \texttt{tcbox} Commands

\texttt{\textbackslash DeclareTCBox[\langle init options\rangle] \{\langle name\rangle\}\{\langle specification\rangle\}\{\langle options\rangle\}}

Creates a new command \langle name\rangle based on \texttt{tcbox}^{*P.14}. Basically, \texttt{\textbackslash DeclareTCBox} operates like \texttt{\textbackslash DeclareDocumentCommand}. This means, the new command \langle name\rangle is constructed with the given argument \langle specification\rangle. The \langle options\rangle are given to the underlying \texttt{tcbox}^{*P.14}.

Note that \texttt{/tcb/savedelimiter}^{*P.26} is set to the given \langle name\rangle automatically.

The \langle init options\rangle allow setting up automatic numbering, see Section 5 from page 114. The new command is always created, irrespective of an already existing command with the same name.

\begin{verbatim}
% counter from previous example
\DeclareTCBox[use counter from=pabox]{\mybox}{ s m s }
{ nobeforeafter, colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, title={#2 (Box \thetcbcounter)}, fonttitle=\bfseries, IfBooleanT={#1}{enhanced, drop shadow}, IfBooleanT={#3}{colbacktitle=red!50!white} }
\mybox{Bird}{This is my first box.}
\hfill\mybox*{Tree}{This is my second box.}
\par\bigskip\mybox{Bike}*{This is my third box.}
\hfill\mybox*{City}*{This is my fourth box.}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{itemize}
\item Bird (Box 24.6)
  \begin{itemize}
  \item This is my first box.
  \end{itemize}
\item Tree (Box 24.7)
  \begin{itemize}
  \item This is my second box.
  \end{itemize}
\item Bike (Box 24.8)
  \begin{itemize}
  \item This is my third box.
  \end{itemize}
\item City (Box 24.9)
  \begin{itemize}
  \item This is my fourth box.
  \end{itemize}
\end{itemize}

\texttt{\textbackslash NewTCBox[\langle init options\rangle] \{\langle name\rangle\}\{\langle specification\rangle\}\{\langle options\rangle\}}

Operates like \texttt{\textbackslash DeclareTCBox}, but based on \texttt{\textbackslash NewDocumentCommand} instead of \texttt{\textbackslash DeclareDocumentCommand}. An error is issued if \langle name\rangle has already been defined.

\texttt{\textbackslash RenewTCBox[\langle init options\rangle] \{\langle name\rangle\}\{\langle specification\rangle\}\{\langle options\rangle\}}

Operates like \texttt{\textbackslash DeclareTCBox}, but based on \texttt{\textbackslash RenewDocumentCommand} instead of \texttt{\textbackslash DeclareDocumentCommand}. An existing command is redefined.

\texttt{\textbackslash ProvideTCBox[\langle init options\rangle] \{\langle name\rangle\}\{\langle specification\rangle\}\{\langle options\rangle\}}

Operates like \texttt{\textbackslash DeclareTCBox}, but based on \texttt{\textbackslash ProvideDocumentCommand} instead of \texttt{\textbackslash DeclareDocumentCommand}. The command \langle name\rangle is only created if it is not already defined.
\DeclareTotalTCBox\[init options\]{⟨name⟩}{⟨specification⟩}{⟨options⟩}{⟨content⟩}

Creates a new command \(⟨name⟩\) based on \tcbox\[P.14\]. In contrast to \DeclareTCBox\[P.466\], also the \(⟨content⟩\) of the \tcbox\ is specified.

Basically, \DeclareTotalTCBox\ operates like \DeclareDocumentCommand\. This means, the new command \(⟨name⟩\) is constructed with the given argument \(⟨specification⟩\). The \(⟨options⟩\) are given to the underlying \tcbox\[P.14\] which is filled with the specified \(⟨content⟩\).

Note that /tcb/savedelimiter\[P.26\] is set to the given \(⟨name⟩\) automatically.

The \(⟨init options⟩\) allow setting up automatic numbering, see Section 5 from page 114.

The new command is always created, irrespective of an already existing command with the same name.

\[
\begin{align*}
\DeclareTotalTCBox\{\myverb\}{O{red} v !O{}} \\
\{ fontupper=\ttfamily, nobeforeafter, tcbox raise base, arc=0pt, outer arc=0pt, \\
top=0pt, bottom=0pt, left=0mm, right=0mm, \\
lefterule=0pt, rightrule=0pt, toprule=0.3mm, bottomrule=0.3mm, boxsep=0.5mm, \\
colback=#1!10!white, colframe=#1!50!black, \#3\}{\#2}
\end{align*}
\]

To set a word \textbf{bold} in \LaTeX, use \myverb[green]{\textbf{bold}}. Alternatively, write \myverb[yellow]{\{\bfseries bold\}}.

In \myverb[blue]{\LaTeX}\{enhanced,fuzzy halo\}, other font settings are done in the same way, e.g. \myverb[\textit]{\textit}, \myverb[\itshape]\ or \myverb[\ttfamily]{\texttt}, \myverb[\ttfamily]{\ttfamily}.

The next example uses \lstinline\ from the listings package to typeset the verbatim content.

\[
% \usepackage{listings} or \tcbuselibrary{listings} \\
\DeclareTotalTCBox\{\commandbox\}{s v} \\
\{verbatim, colupper=white, colback=black!75!white, colframe=black\} \\
\{\IfBooleanT{#1}{\textcolor{red}{\ttfamily\bfseries > \}}\} \\
\\lstinline\[language=command.com, keywordstyle=\color{blue!35!white}\bfseries\]^#2^\% \\
\commandbox*{cd \"My Documents\"} changes to directory \commandbox{My Documents}. \\
\commandbox*{dir /A} lists the directory content. \\
\commandbox*{copy example.txt d:\target} copies \commandbox{example.txt} to \commandbox{d:\target}.
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\texttt{\% cd \"My Documents\"} & \text{ changes to directory } \texttt{My Documents} \\
\texttt{\% dir /A} & \text{ lists the directory content.} \\
\texttt{\% copy example.txt d:\target} & \text{ copies example.txt to } d:\target
\end{align*}
\]

467
\texttt{\NewTotalTCBox[\textit{init options}]{\texttt{name}}{\texttt{specification}}{\texttt{options}}{\texttt{content}}}  \\
Operates like \texttt{\DeclareTotalTCBox}^{P.467}, but based on \texttt{\NewDocumentCommand} instead of \texttt{\DeclareDocumentCommand}. An error is issued if \texttt{\texttt{name}} has already been defined.

\texttt{\RenewTotalTCBox[\textit{init options}]{\texttt{name}}{\texttt{specification}}{\texttt{options}}{\texttt{content}}}  \\
Operates like \texttt{\DeclareTotalTCBox}^{P.467}, but based on \texttt{\RenewDocumentCommand} instead of \texttt{\DeclareDocumentCommand}. An existing command is redefined.

\texttt{\ProvideTotalTCBox[\textit{init options}]{\texttt{name}}{\texttt{specification}}{\texttt{options}}{\texttt{content}}}  \\
Operates like \texttt{\DeclareTotalTCBox}^{P.467}, but based on \texttt{\ProvideDocumentCommand} instead of \texttt{\DeclareDocumentCommand}. The command \texttt{\texttt{name}} is only created if it is not already defined.

\texttt{\tcboxverb[\textit{options}]{\texttt{verbatim box content}}}  \\
Creates a colored box based on \texttt{\tcbox}^{P.14} which is fitted to the width of the given \texttt{\texttt{verbatim box content}}. The underlying \texttt{\tcbox}^{P.14} is styled with \texttt{/tcb/verbatim}^{P.461} plus the given \texttt{\texttt{options}}. The difference to \texttt{\tcbox}^{P.14} is that the \texttt{\texttt{verbatim box content}} is interpreted \textit{verbatim}. Therefore, \texttt{\tcboxverb} acts similar to \texttt{\verb}.

\begin{verbatim}
\tcboxverb{\LaTeX}, \tcboxverb[colback=blue!10!white,colupper=blue]{\LaTeX},
\tcboxverb[blank,fuzzy halo]{\LaTeX}, \tcboxverb[beamer]{\LaTeX},
\tcboxverb[enhanced,skin=enhancedmiddle_jigsaw,colframe=red]{\LaTeX}.
\end{verbatim}
24.4 Producing tcblisting Environments

Besides \texttt{xparse}, the following commands also need the \texttt{listings} library to be included.

\begin{verbatim}
\DeclareTCBListing{[\textit{init options}]\{\textit{name}\}\{\textit{specification}\}\{\textit{options}\}}
\end{verbatim}

Creates a new environment \textit{name} based on \texttt{tcblisting} \textsuperscript{-P.320}.

Basically, \texttt{\DeclareTCBListing} operates like \texttt{\DeclareDocumentEnvironment}. This
means, the new environment \textit{name} is constructed with the given argument \textit{specification}.
The \textit{options} are given to the underlying \texttt{tcblisting} \textsuperscript{-P.320}.

Note that \texttt{/tcb/savedelimiter} \textsuperscript{-P.26} is set to the given \textit{name} automatically.
The \textit{init options} allow setting up automatic numbering, see Section 5 from page 114.

The new environment is always created, irrespective of an already existing environment
with the same name.

\begin{verbatim}
\DeclareTCBListing{mybox}{ s O{} m }{%
colback=red!5!white,
colframe=red!75!black,
fonttitle=\textbf,
IfBooleanTF={#1}{
{\textit{listing side text}}
{text side listing},
title={#3},#2}\\
\begin{mybox}{Listing Box}
This is my \LaTeX{} box.\caption{My box.}
\end{mybox}
\bigskip
\begin{mybox}{Listing Box}
This is my \LaTeX{} box.\caption{My box.}
\end{mybox}
\bigskip
\begin{mybox}{Listing Box}
This is my \LaTeX{} box.\caption{My box.}
\end{mybox}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\NewTCBListing{[\textit{init options}]\{\textit{name}\}\{\textit{specification}\}\{\textit{options}\}}
\end{verbatim}

Operates like \texttt{\DeclareTCBListing}, but based on \texttt{\NewDocumentEnvironment} instead of
\texttt{\Declareshape{DocumentEnvironment}. An error is issued if \textit{name} has already been defined.

\begin{verbatim}
\RenewTCBListing{[\textit{init options}]\{\textit{name}\}\{\textit{specification}\}\{\textit{options}\}}
\end{verbatim}

Operates like \texttt{\DeclareTCBListing}, but based on \texttt{\RenewDocumentEnvironment} instead of
\texttt{\Declareshape{DocumentEnvironment}. An existing environment is redefined.

\begin{verbatim}
\ProvideTCBListing{[\textit{init options}]\{\textit{name}\}\{\textit{specification}\}\{\textit{options}\}}
\end{verbatim}

Operates like \texttt{\DeclareTCBListing}, but based on \texttt{\ProvideDocumentEnvironment} instead of
\texttt{\Declareshape{DocumentEnvironment}. The environment \textit{name} is only created if it is not
already defined.
With date of 2018-05-12, the `xparse` package changed the argument collection process. Now, spaces are ignored which leads to a serious change for listing environments ending with an optional argument like `O{}`. The former behavior of respecting spaces can be preserved by adding a «!». Note that the following code uses `!O{}` now.

- For older `xparse` versions, the following code is correct when using `O{}`.
- For `xparse` of 2018-05-12, only the first two examples of the following code using `O{}` are really «good» – all others do not work.
- For `xparse` of 2018-05-12 and later, the following code is correct when using `!O{}`.

Caveats of using an environment ending with an optional argument

```latex
\DeclareTCBListing{mybox}{ !O{} }{listing only,#1}
\begin{mybox}[colframe=red]
good
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}[colframe=red]\good\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}
good
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox} \good\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox} \bad!\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox} \[\good\]\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox} \[\bad!\]\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox} \end{mybox}
```
24.5 Producing \texttt{tcbinputlisting} Commands

The following commands need the \texttt{listings} library to be included.

\begin{quote}
\texttt{\textbackslash DeclareTCBInputListing}\{\textbackslash \textit{init options}\}\textbackslash \{\textbackslash \textit{name}\}\textbackslash \{\textbackslash \textit{specification}\}\textbackslash \{\textbackslash \textit{options}\}
\end{quote}

Creates a new command \texttt{\textbackslash \textit{name}} based on \texttt{\textbackslash tcbinputlisting}, \textsuperscript{P.322}. Basically, \texttt{\textbackslash DeclareTCBInputListing} operates like \texttt{\textbackslash DeclareDocumentCommand}. This means, the new command \texttt{\textbackslash \textit{name}} is constructed with the given argument \texttt{\textbackslash \textit{specification}}. The \texttt{\textbackslash \textit{options}} are given to the underlying \texttt{\textbackslash tcbinputlisting}, \textsuperscript{P.322}. The \texttt{\textbackslash \textit{init options}} allow setting up automatic numbering, see Section 5 from page 114. The new command is always created, irrespective of an already existing command with the same name.

\begin{verbatim}
\% counter from previous example
\texttt{\textbackslash DeclareTCBInputListing}[\texttt{use counter from=pabox}]{\texttt{\textbackslash mylisting}}{0}{0\texttt{(red)} m}{\%
listing file={\texttt{#3}},title=Listing-\texttt{\textbackslash thetcbcounter},
colback=#2!5!white,colframe=#2!50!black,colbacktitle=#2!75!black,
fonttitle=\texttt{\textbackslash bseries},listing only,#1}
\texttt{\textbackslash mylisting}[before upper=\texttt{\textbackslash textit}{This is the included file content:}] [blue]{\texttt{\textbackslash jobname.tcbtemp}}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{flushleft}
\textbf{Listing 24.10}
\end{flushleft}

This is the included file content:

\begin{verbatim}
\texttt{\textbackslash DeclareTCBInputListing}[\texttt{use counter from=pabox}]{\texttt{\textbackslash mylisting}}{0}{0\texttt{(red)} m}{\%
listing file={\texttt{#3}},title=Listing-\texttt{\textbackslash thetcbcounter},
colback=#2!5!white,colframe=#2!50!black,colbacktitle=#2!75!black,
fonttitle=\texttt{\textbackslash bseries},listing only,#1}
\texttt{\textbackslash mylisting}[before upper=\texttt{\textbackslash textit}{This is the included file content:}] [blue]{\texttt{\textbackslash jobname.tcbtemp}}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{quote}
\texttt{\textbackslash NewTCBInputListing}\{\textbackslash \textit{init options}\}\textbackslash \{\textbackslash \textit{name}\}\textbackslash \{\textbackslash \textit{specification}\}\textbackslash \{\textbackslash \textit{options}\}
\end{quote}

Operates like \texttt{\textbackslash DeclareTCBInputListing}, but based on \texttt{\textbackslash NewDocumentCommand} instead of \texttt{\textbackslash DeclareDocumentCommand}. An error is issued if \texttt{\textbackslash \textit{name}} has already been defined.

\begin{quote}
\texttt{\textbackslash RenewTCBInputListing}\{\textbackslash \textit{init options}\}\textbackslash \{\textbackslash \textit{name}\}\textbackslash \{\textbackslash \textit{specification}\}\textbackslash \{\textbackslash \textit{options}\}
\end{quote}

Operates like \texttt{\textbackslash DeclareTCBInputListing}, but based on \texttt{\textbackslash RenewDocumentCommand} instead of \texttt{\textbackslash DeclareDocumentCommand}. An existing command is redefined.

\begin{quote}
\texttt{\textbackslash ProvideTCBInputListing}\{\textbackslash \textit{init options}\}\textbackslash \{\textbackslash \textit{name}\}\textbackslash \{\textbackslash \textit{specification}\}\textbackslash \{\textbackslash \textit{options}\}
\end{quote}

Operates like \texttt{\textbackslash DeclareTCBInputListing}, but based on \texttt{\textbackslash ProvideDocumentCommand} instead of \texttt{\textbackslash DeclareDocumentCommand}. The command \texttt{\textbackslash \textit{name}} is only created if it is not already defined.
24.6 Producing \texttt{tboxfit} Commands

The following commands need the \texttt{fitting} library to be included.

\begin{verbatim}
\DeclareTCBoxFit[(init options)]%(name)%{(specification)}{(options)}
\end{verbatim}

Creates a new command \texttt{$\backslash$(name)} based on \texttt{tcboxfit} \textsuperscript{P.438}. Basically, \texttt{\DeclareTCBoxFit} operates like \texttt{\DeclareDocumentCommand}. This means, the new command \texttt{$\backslash$(name)} is constructed with the given argument \texttt{(specification)}. The \texttt{(options)} are given to the underlying \texttt{tcboxfit} \textsuperscript{P.438}.

Note that \texttt{/tcb/savedelimiter} \textsuperscript{P.26} is set to the given \texttt{(name)} automatically. The \texttt{(init options)} allow setting up automatic numbering, see Section 5 from page 114. The new command is always created, irrespective of an already existing command with the same name.

\begin{verbatim}
\% \usepackage{lipsum}
\DeclareTCBoxFit{\mybox}{ O{} m !o }
{colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, width=#2,height=#2/3*2, IfValueT={#3}{height=#3}, #1}
\mybox[colback=yellow]{5cm} %
{\lipsum[2]}
\mybox[colback=yellow]{5cm}[4cm]{\lipsum[2]}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\NewTCBoxFit[(init options)]%(name)%{(specification)}{(options)}
\end{verbatim}

Operates like \texttt{\DeclareTCBoxFit}, but based on \texttt{\NewDocumentCommand} instead of \texttt{\DeclareDocumentCommand}. An error is issued if \texttt{$\backslash$(name)} has already been defined.

\begin{verbatim}
\RenewTCBoxFit[(init options)]%(name)%{(specification)}{(options)}
\end{verbatim}

Operates like \texttt{\DeclareTCBoxFit}, but based on \texttt{\RenewDocumentCommand} instead of \texttt{\DeclareDocumentCommand}. An existing command is redefined.

\begin{verbatim}
\ProvideTCBoxFit[(init options)]%(name)%{(specification)}{(options)}
\end{verbatim}

Operates like \texttt{\DeclareTCBoxFit}, but based on \texttt{\ProvideDocumentCommand} instead of \texttt{\DeclareDocumentCommand}. The command \texttt{$\backslash$(name)} is only created if it is not already defined.
\DeclareTotalTCBoxFit\newcommand{\multibox}{\{\name\}}{\{\specification\}}{\{\options\}}{\{\content\}}

Creates a new command \name based on \tcboxfit\newcommand{\tcboxfit}. In contrast to \DeclareTCBoxFit\newcommand{\tcboxfit}, also the \content of the \tcboxfit is specified.

Basically, \DeclareTotalTCBoxFit operates like \DeclareDocumentCommand. This means, the new command \name is constructed with the given argument \specification. The \options are given to the underlying \tcboxfit\newcommand{\tcboxfit} which is filled with the specified \content.

Note that /tcb/savedelimiter\newcommand{\tcboxfit} is set to the given \name automatically. The \init options allow setting up automatic numbering, see Section 5 from page 114. The new command is always created, irrespective of an already existing command with the same name.

\begin{verbatim}
\% \usepackage{lipsum}
\DeclareTotalTCBoxFit{\multibox}{ 0\}{ 0\{10\} m \}
{\nobeforeafter, colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, width=#2, height=#2/3*2, valign=center, #1}
{\foreach \n in \{1,...,#3\} \{ #4 \}}
\multibox[5cm]{I shall not repeat.}{\multibox[5cm]{I shall not repeat.}\multibox[5cm]{I shall not repeat.}}{\multibox[5cm]{I shall not repeat.}{\multibox[5cm]{I shall not repeat.}{\multibox[5cm]{I shall not repeat.}{\multibox[5cm]{I shall not repeat.}{\multibox[5cm]{I shall not repeat.}{\multibox[5cm]{I shall not repeat.}{\multibox[5cm]{I shall not repeat.} }}}}}}\end{verbatim}

\NewTotalTCBoxFit\newcommand{\NewTotalTCBoxFit}{\newcommand{\NewTotalTCBoxFit}}{\newcommand{\NewTotalTCBoxFit}}{\newcommand{\NewTotalTCBoxFit}}{\newcommand{\NewTotalTCBoxFit}}

Operates like \DeclareTotalTCBoxFit, but based on \NewDocumentCommand instead of \DeclareDocumentCommand. An error is issued if \name has already been defined.

\RenewTotalTCBoxFit\newcommand{\RenewTotalTCBoxFit}{\newcommand{\RenewTotalTCBoxFit}}{\newcommand{\RenewTotalTCBoxFit}}{\newcommand{\RenewTotalTCBoxFit}}{\newcommand{\RenewTotalTCBoxFit}}

Operates like \DeclareTotalTCBoxFit, but based on \RenewDocumentCommand instead of \DeclareDocumentCommand. An existing command is redefined.

\ProvideTotalTCBoxFit\newcommand{\ProvideTotalTCBoxFit}{\newcommand{\ProvideTotalTCBoxFit}}{\newcommand{\ProvideTotalTCBoxFit}}{\newcommand{\ProvideTotalTCBoxFit}}{\newcommand{\ProvideTotalTCBoxFit}}

Operates like \DeclareTotalTCBoxFit, but based on \ProvideDocumentCommand instead of \DeclareDocumentCommand. The command \name is only created if it is not already defined.
The library is loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

\tcbuselibrary{external}

The purpose of this library is to support externalization of document snippets like graphics or boxes which can be compiled stand-alone. These snippets are written to external files, compiled and the resulting pdf files are included to the main document as images. The whole procedure saves compilation time, if such a snippet is costly to compile but needs to compile just once or very seldom.

There are very good alternatives to this library. One should consider the standalone package or the TikZ externalization library instead. The \texttt{external} library is something in between and can be seen as poor man variant of the TikZ externalization library.

The main differences between TikZ externalization and \texttt{external} are:

- TikZ \texttt{external} compiles the whole original document in a sophisticated way while \texttt{external} uses only the preamble or a part of the preamble of the original document.

- TikZ \texttt{external} can automatically externalize all \texttt{tikzpicture} environments while \texttt{external} externalizes marked snippets only.

- Code snippets to be externalized by \texttt{external} are not restricted to \texttt{tikzpicture} environments. But these snippets have to be stand-alone without dependencies to the rest of the document.

Why should somebody use \texttt{external} instead of the more powerful TikZ \texttt{external}? One reason could be compilation speed, but the main reason for creating the library at all was that TikZ \texttt{external} tends to choke on complicated documents where the sophisticated mechanism stumbles. Since \texttt{external} does not use the original document body for compilation, this cannot happen.

Source snippets are compiled, if their md5 checksum has changed. They are not compiled automatically, if option settings are changed or anything outside the snippet is changed. Use \texttt{/tcb/external/force remake} to force compilation in this case or simply delete the externalized pdf oder md5 files.

To use the externalization options, the compiler has to be called with the \texttt{-shell-escape} permission to authorize potentially dangerous system calls. Be warned that this is a security risk.
25.1 Preparation of a Document for Externalization

The preamble of the main document has to contain the \texttt{EXTERNALIZE} command. Without this command, no externalization operation will be executed.

\texttt{EXTERNALIZE}

It is mandatory for externalization that this command is used once in the preamble of the main document. Every setting before \texttt{EXTERNALIZE} will also be used for compiling an external snippet. Every setting after \texttt{EXTERNALIZE} will be ignored for compiling an external snippet. Place this command right before \texttt{begin\{document\}}, if you are not absolutely sure about another place.

The main document has to look like the following:

\begin{verbatim}
\documentclass[a4paper]{book}% for example
\usepackage{...}% anything
% ...
% Tpically, all or the very most settings for the document.
\texttt{EXTERNALIZE}% Typically, just before \texttt{begin\{document\}}
% Additional settings which are ABSOLUTELY irrelevant for the
% stand-alone snippets.
% \begin{document}
% \% The document.
% \% This also contains the marked snippets for externalization.
\end{document}
\end{verbatim}

During compilation, a /tcb/external/runner file is dynamically created (several times). This is the actual main file for compiling an externalized snippet.

\texttt{EXTERNALIZE}

\texttt{EXTERNALIZE}=(\textit{file name}) \hspace{1cm} (no default, initially $\jobname$\_run.tex)

Sets the (\textit{file name}) for dynamically created runner file. This is the actual main file for a document snippet. Typically, the initial setting is not needed to be changed.

\texttt{EXTERNALIZE}

\texttt{EXTERNALIZE}=\texttt{true}|\texttt{false} \hspace{1cm} (default \texttt{true}, initially \texttt{true})

If set to \texttt{true}, the marked snippets are compiled if necessary. If set to \texttt{false}, the marked snippets are not compiled but included as text. \texttt{EXTERNALIZE} can only be used after \texttt{EXTERNALIZE}.

\texttt{EXTERNALIZE}

\texttt{EXTERNALIZE}=\texttt{true}|\texttt{false} \hspace{1cm} (default \texttt{true}, initially \texttt{false})

If set to \texttt{true}, the marked snippets are always compiled. If set to \texttt{true}, the marked snippets are compiled only if necessary. The necessity is given, if a compiled pdf file is missing or the md5 checksum of the source snippet has changed.

\texttt{EXTERNALIZE}

\texttt{EXTERNALIZE}=\texttt{true}|\texttt{false} \hspace{1cm} (default \texttt{true}, initially \texttt{true})

If set to \texttt{true}, the marked snippets are always compiled. If set to \texttt{true}, the marked snippets are compiled only if necessary. The necessity is given, if a compiled pdf file is missing or the md5 checksum of the source snippet has changed.

\texttt{EXTERNALIZE}

\texttt{EXTERNALIZE}=\texttt{true}|\texttt{false} \hspace{1cm} (default \texttt{true}, initially \texttt{false})

If set to \texttt{true}, the marked snippets are always compiled. If set to \texttt{true}, the marked snippets are compiled only if necessary. The necessity is given, if a compiled pdf file is missing or the md5 checksum of the source snippet has changed.

\texttt{EXTERNALIZE}

\texttt{EXTERNALIZE}=\texttt{true}|\texttt{false} \hspace{1cm} (default \texttt{true}, initially \texttt{false})

If set to \texttt{true}, the marked snippets are always compiled. If set to \texttt{true}, the marked snippets are compiled only if necessary. The necessity is given, if a compiled pdf file is missing or the md5 checksum of the source snippet has changed.

\texttt{EXTERNALIZE}

\texttt{EXTERNALIZE}=\texttt{true}|\texttt{false} \hspace{1cm} (default \texttt{true}, initially \texttt{false})

If set to \texttt{true}, the marked snippets are always compiled. If set to \texttt{true}, the marked snippets are compiled only if necessary. The necessity is given, if a compiled pdf file is missing or the md5 checksum of the source snippet has changed.

\texttt{EXTERNALIZE}

\texttt{EXTERNALIZE}=\texttt{true}|\texttt{false} \hspace{1cm} (default \texttt{true}, initially \texttt{false})

If set to \texttt{true}, the marked snippets are always compiled. If set to \texttt{true}, the marked snippets are compiled only if necessary. The necessity is given, if a compiled pdf file is missing or the md5 checksum of the source snippet has changed.

\texttt{EXTERNALIZE}

\texttt{EXTERNALIZE}=\texttt{true}|\texttt{false} \hspace{1cm} (default \texttt{true}, initially \texttt{false})

If set to \texttt{true}, the marked snippets are always compiled. If set to \texttt{true}, the marked snippets are compiled only if necessary. The necessity is given, if a compiled pdf file is missing or the md5 checksum of the source snippet has changed.

\texttt{EXTERNALIZE}

\texttt{EXTERNALIZE}=\texttt{true}|\texttt{false} \hspace{1cm} (default \texttt{true}, initially \texttt{false})

If set to \texttt{true}, the marked snippets are always compiled. If set to \texttt{true}, the marked snippets are compiled only if necessary. The necessity is given, if a compiled pdf file is missing or the md5 checksum of the source snippet has changed.

\texttt{EXTERNALIZE}

\texttt{EXTERNALIZE}=\texttt{true}|\texttt{false} \hspace{1cm} (default \texttt{true}, initially \texttt{false})

If set to \texttt{true}, the marked snippets are always compiled. If set to \texttt{true}, the marked snippets are compiled only if necessary. The necessity is given, if a compiled pdf file is missing or the md5 checksum of the source snippet has changed.

\texttt{EXTERNALIZE}

\texttt{EXTERNALIZE}=\texttt{true}|\texttt{false} \hspace{1cm} (default \texttt{true}, initially \texttt{false})

If set to \texttt{true}, the marked snippets are always compiled. If set to \texttt{true}, the marked snippets are compiled only if necessary. The necessity is given, if a compiled pdf file is missing or the md5 checksum of the source snippet has changed.

\texttt{EXTERNALIZE}

\texttt{EXTERNALIZE}=\texttt{true}|\texttt{false} \hspace{1cm} (default \texttt{true}, initially \texttt{false})

If set to \texttt{true}, the marked snippets are always compiled. If set to \texttt{true}, the marked snippets are compiled only if necessary. The necessity is given, if a compiled pdf file is missing or the md5 checksum of the source snippet has changed.
25.2 Marking Externalization Snippets

\begin{tcbexternal}[(options)]{⟨name⟩}
⟨environment content⟩
\end{tcbexternal}

Marks the environment content as a snippet for externalization. Typically, the content is a `tikzpicture` or something similar. It is important to note that the snippet should not have any dependencies with the rest of the document, e.g. referencing counters or setting counters is not possible. The ⟨name⟩ is automatically prefixed with `/tcb/external/prefix` \textsuperscript{P.475}. In combination, this has to be a unique file name. It is advised to not use spaces or umlauts for the name. The ⟨options⟩ are keys from the `/tcb/external/` key tree.

\begin{tcbexternal}{example_tikzpicture}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[fill=yellow!50!white] (0,0) circle (11mm);
\path[fill=white] (0,0) circle (9mm);
\foreach \w/\c in {90/red,210/green,330/blue}
{\path[shading=ball,ball color=\c] (\w:1cm) circle (7mm);}\end{tikzpicture}
\end{tcbexternal}

If a `tcolorbox` \textsuperscript{P.12} is externalized, one should use `/tcb/nobeforeafter` \textsuperscript{P.81} for the box. Indention and distances to the text before and after have to be given separately outside the `tcbexternal` environment.

\begin{tcbexternal}[minipage]{example_tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[nobeforeafter,enhanced, fonttitle=\bfseries,title=Externalized Box, colframe=red!50!black,drop fuzzy shadow, interior style={fill overzoom image=goldshade.png}]
This complete tcolorbox is externalized. One cannot use numbered boxes here. Note the \texttt{minipage} option which tells the current line width to the external snippet.\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcbexternal}

\noindent
\begin{tcbexternal}[minipage]{example_tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[nobeforeafter,enhanced, fonttitle=\bfseries,title=Externalized Box, colframe=red!50!black,drop fuzzy shadow, interior style={fill overzoom image=goldshade.png}]
This complete tcolorbox is externalized. One cannot use numbered boxes here. Note the \texttt{minipage} option which tells the current line width to the external snippet.\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcbexternal}

Externalized Box

This complete tcolorbox is externalized. One cannot use numbered boxes here. Note the \texttt{minipage} option which tells the current line width to the external snippet.
The interior of the tcolorbox is externalized. One can use numbered boxes without problems. Note that the text color has to be set for the text manually since it is converted into an image.

\begin{tcbexternal}[minipage]{example_tabularx}
\newcolumntype{Y}{>{\raggedleft\arraybackslash}X}
\begin{tabularx}{\linewidth}{|l||Y|Y|Y|Y||Y|}
\hline
Group & One & Two & Three & Four & Sum \\
\hline\hline
Red & 1000.00 & 2000.00 & 3000.00 & 4000.00 & 10000.00 \\
\hline
Green & 2000.00 & 3000.00 & 4000.00 & 5000.00 & 14000.00 \\
\hline
Blue & 3000.00 & 4000.00 & 5000.00 & 6000.00 & 18000.00 \\
\hline\hline
Sum & 6000.00 & 9000.00 & 12000.00 & 15000.00 & 42000.00 \\
\hline
\end{tabularx}
\end{tcbexternal}

\begin{tclorbox}[nobeforeafter,enhanced, fonttitle=\bfseries,title=Externalized Box, colframe=blue!50!black, interior style={fill overzoom image=blueshade.png}]
\begin{tcbexternal}[minipage]{example_tcolorbox2}
\color{white}%
\begin{minipage}{example_tcolorbox2}
\color{white}
\% The interior of the tcolorbox is externalized.
One can use numbered boxes without problems.
Note that the text color has to be set for the text manually since it is converted into an image.
\end{minipage}
\end{tcbexternal}
\end{tclorbox}

The ⟨name⟩ is automatically prefixed with /tcb/external/prefix\footnote{P.475}. In combination, this has to be a unique file name for externalization. Typically, this key is not used directly but is set indirectly as mandatory parameter, see tcbexternal\footnote{P.476}.
This is an externalized version of \texttt{tcolorbox}\textsuperscript{\ref{P.12}} created using \texttt{\newtcbexternalizetcolorbox}\textsuperscript{\ref{P.483}}:

\begin{extcolorbox}[minipage]{example_extcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[colframe=blue,colback=blue!5,before skip=6pt]
Inner box.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{extcolorbox}

My external box

This box is completely externalized.

\begin{tcolorbox}[colframe=blue,colback=blue!5,before skip=6pt]
Inner box.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{itemize}
\item \textbf{Never} externalize numbered boxes.
\item \textbf{Never} externalize boxes which contain references to other things, e.g. using \texttt{\ref} or \texttt{\cite}.
\item \textbf{Never} externalize breakable boxes.
\end{itemize}
This is an externalized version of `tikzpicture` created using \newtcbexternalizeenvironment \[P.483\\]
\newtcbexternalizeenvironment{extikzpicture}{tikzpicture}{}{}{}
\langle options \rangle and \langle name \rangle are given to the underlying `tcbexternal` \[P.476\] environment, while \langle tikz options \rangle are given to `tikzpicture`.

\begin{center}
\begin{extikzpicture}
\begin{example_pgfplots}
\pgfplotsset{width=12cm}
\begin{axis}[3d box=background,grid=major, xlabel=$x$, ylabel=$y$, zlabel=$z$, view/h=40, mesh/interior colormap name=hot, colormap/blackwhite, z buffer=sort, domain=0:90, y domain=0:60, zmin=0, zmax=2, z post scale=1.2, ]
\addplot3[surf, mesh/interior colormap name=blackwhite, colormap/hot,] ( {cos(x)},{sin(x)}, {2*sin(y)} );
\addplot3[surf] ( {2*cos(x)*cos(y)},{2*sin(x)*cos(y)}, {2*sin(y)} );
\end{axis}
\end{example_pgfplots}
\end{extikzpicture}
\end{center}
The text content of a `tcblisting` is externalized with the given \(\textit{name}\). Note that the listing part is not externalized.

\begin{tcblisting}{externalize listing=example_listing, bistyle, colback=yellow!10, colframe=yellow!50!black, colbacklower=white, center lower}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[fill=yellow!50!white] (0,0) circle (11mm);
\path[fill=white] (0,0) circle (9mm);
\foreach \w/\c in {90/red,210/green,330/blue}
{\path[shading=ball, ball color=\c] (\w:1cm) circle (7mm);}
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{tcblisting}

\begin{dispExample*}{sidebyside, externalize example=example_example}
\tikz\path[shading=ball, ball color=red] circle (7mm);
\end{dispExample*}

Combination of `tcb/externalize listing` and `tcb/external/force remake`.

The text content of a `dispExample*` is externalized with the given \(\textit{name}\). Note that the listing part is not externalized.

\begin{dispExample*}{sidebyside, externalize example=example_example}
\tikz\path[shading=ball, ball color=red] circle (7mm);
\end{dispExample*}

Combination of `tcb/externalize example` and `tcb/external/force remake`.
25.3 Customization

\begin{tcbexternal}[minipage,runs=2]{example_raster}
\begin{tcbitemize}[raster equal height,
size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]
\tcbitem One
\tcbitem\Huge Two
\tcbitem Three
\tcbitem Four
\end{tcbitemize}
\end{tcbexternal}

One          Two          Three          Four

\begin{tcbexternal}[input source on error=true]{example_raster}
\begin{tcbitemize}[raster equal height,
size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]
\tcbitem One
\tcbitem\Huge Two
\tcbitem Three
\tcbitem Four
\end{tcbitemize}
\end{tcbexternal}

\begin{tcbexternal}[compiler=text]{example_raster}
\begin{tcbitemize}[raster equal height,
size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]
\tcbitem One
\tcbitem\Huge Two
\tcbitem Three
\tcbitem Four
\end{tcbitemize}
\end{tcbexternal}
The given ⟨code⟩ is added before the snippet document. Typically, this means before \documentclass. This is not used for compilation of the main document.

The given ⟨options⟩ are passed to the given ⟨package⟩ for the snippet document. This is a shortcut for using /tcb/external/preclass with \PassOptionsToPackage. This not used for compilation of the main document.

The given ⟨options⟩ are passed to the given ⟨class⟩ for the snippet document. This is a shortcut for using /tcb/external/preclass with \PassOptionsToClass. This not used for compilation of the main document.

Removes all additional /tcb/external/preclass settings.

The given ⟨code⟩ is added to the preamble of the snippet document. This is not used for compilation of the main document.

The given ⟨options⟩ are added as parameter for \tcbset to the preamble of the snippet document. This are not used for compilation of the main document.

Removes all additional /tcb/external/preamble settings.

Expands to ⟨true⟩, if executed during snippet compilation, and to ⟨false⟩, if executed during main document compilation. This can be used before \tcbEXTERNALIZE to give different setting to snippet and main document.

\tcbifexternal{\usepackage{onlyforexternal}}
{\usepackage{onlyformain}
\newtcbexternalizeenvironment{(newenv)\{\(\langle\text{env}\rangle\}\{\langle\text{options}\rangle\}\{\langle\text{begin}\rangle\}\{\langle\text{end}\rangle\}}

Creates a new environment \langle newenv \rangle which is based on \texttt{tcbexternal} \textsuperscript{\texttt{P.476}}. This environment takes \textit{at least} one optional parameter and one mandatory parameter. These two parameters are passed to \texttt{tcbexternal} \textsuperscript{\texttt{P.476}}. Further, the given \langle options \rangle are always added to the option list of \texttt{tcbexternal} \textsuperscript{\texttt{P.476}}.

The environment content is externalized and the external snippet is surrounded by an environment \langle env \rangle. All further parameters of \langle newenv \rangle are given to \langle env \rangle as parameters. The included image is prepended by \langle begin \rangle and appended by \langle end \rangle.

\texttt{extikzpicture} \textsuperscript{\texttt{P.479}} is an example application for \texttt{\newtcbexternalizeenvironment}.

\newtcbexternalizeenvironment\{\texttt{extabular}\}{\texttt{tabular}}{\{\texttt{\par\centering}\}\texttt{\par}}

\begin{\texttt{extabular}}\{\texttt{\par\centering}\}\texttt{\par}
\begin{\texttt{\par\centering}}\texttt{\begin{tabular}{|l|p{6cm}|r|}}\hline
A & B & C \\
\hline
a & This table is externalized as snippet. Obviously, this only makes sense for highly complex tables. \\
& & b \\
\hline
\texttt{\end{tabular}}\end{\texttt{\par\centering}}
\end{\texttt{extabular}}

\renewtcbexternalizeenvironment{(newenv)\{\(\langle\text{env}\rangle\}\{\langle\text{options}\rangle\}\{\langle\text{begin}\rangle\}\{\langle\text{end}\rangle\}}

Identical to \texttt{\newtcbexternalizeenvironment}, but the environment \langle newenv \rangle is created by \texttt{\renewenvironment} instead of \texttt{\newenvironment}.

\newtcbexternalizetcolorbox{(newenv)\{\(\langle\text{env}\rangle\}\{\langle\text{options}\rangle\}\{\langle\text{begin end options}\rangle\}\{\langle\text{begin end options}\rangle\}}

Creates a new environment \langle newenv \rangle which is based on \texttt{tcbexternal} \textsuperscript{\texttt{P.476}}. This environment takes \textit{at least} one optional parameter and one mandatory parameter. These two parameters are passed to \texttt{tcbexternal} \textsuperscript{\texttt{P.476}}. Further, the given \langle options \rangle are always added to the option list of \texttt{tcbexternal} \textsuperscript{\texttt{P.476}}.

The environment content is externalized and the external snippet is surrounded by an environment \langle env \rangle. All further parameters of \langle newenv \rangle are given to \langle env \rangle as parameters. \textbf{In contrast to \texttt{\newtcbexternalizeenvironment}, the environment \langle env \rangle is intended to be based on \texttt{tcolorbox} \textsuperscript{\texttt{P.12}} or \texttt{tcblisting} \textsuperscript{\texttt{P.320}}.}

The \langle begin end options \rangle are options for settings the space before and after the included image using \texttt{/tcb/before} \textsuperscript{\texttt{P.81}}, \texttt{/tcb/before skip} \textsuperscript{\texttt{P.83}}, \texttt{/tcb/after} \textsuperscript{\texttt{P.81}}, or \texttt{/tcb/after skip} \textsuperscript{\texttt{P.83}}.

\texttt{extcolorbox} \textsuperscript{\texttt{P.478}} is an example application for \texttt{\newtcbexternalizetcolorbox}.

\begin{quote}
\textbullet Use the exact identical values for \texttt{/tcb/before} \textsuperscript{\texttt{P.81}} and \texttt{/tcb/after} \textsuperscript{\texttt{P.81}} inside \langle begin end options \rangle as they where used for definition of \langle env \rangle! Otherwise, externalized and non-externalized version will have different spacings.
\end{quote}

483
\newtcblisting{myownlisting}\[2\][\]{{enhanced,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,}
{colbacktitle=red!50!yellow,before skip=6pt,after skip=6pt,}
{title={#2},#1}}
\newtcbexternalizetcolorbox{exmyownlisting}{myownlisting}\%
{minipage,environment with percent=false}\%
{before skip=6pt,after skip=6pt}\% same values as for mylisting
\begin{exmyownlisting}{example_mylisting}\%
{My externalized example box}\%
This is my \LaTeX\ box.
\end{exmyownlisting}

This is my \LaTeX\ box.

This is my \LaTeX\ box.

\texttt{\renewtcbexternalizetcolorbox{(newenv)\{env\}\{options\}\{begin end options\}}}

Identical to \texttt{\renewtcbexternalizetcolorbox *P.483}, but the environment \texttt{\langle newenv\rangle} is created by \texttt{\renewenvironment} instead of \texttt{\newenvironment}.

\texttt{\tcbiffileprocess{(condition)\{source\}\{md5-file\}\{target\}\{true\}\{false\}}}

This is a low-level macro which is internally used. The MD5 digest of a \texttt{\langle source\rangle} file is compared with a stored MD5 digest from an auxiliary \texttt{\langle md5-file\rangle}. If they are not equal, the auxiliary \texttt{\langle md5-file\rangle} is updated to store the current MD5 digest. Further,

- if \texttt{\langle condition\rangle} equals 0, \texttt{\langle true\rangle} is executed.
- if \texttt{\langle condition\rangle} equals 1:
  - If the current and stored MD5 digests were different, \texttt{\langle true\rangle} is executed.
  - Otherwise, if the \texttt{\langle target\rangle} file is not existing, \texttt{\langle true\rangle} is executed.
  - Otherwise, if the \texttt{\langle target\rangle} file is older than the \texttt{\langle md5-file\rangle}, \texttt{\langle true\rangle} is executed.
  - Otherwise, \texttt{\langle false\rangle} is executed.
- if \texttt{\langle condition\rangle} equals 2, \texttt{\langle false\rangle} is executed.

The intended processing purpose of the \texttt{\langle true\rangle} code is to produce a \texttt{\langle target\rangle} file from the given \texttt{\langle source\rangle} file.
25.4 Troubleshooting and FAQ

- I use the default settings, but the external subdirectory is not created.
  Depending on operating system and compiler, an external subdirectory is automatically created or not. If not, create such a directory manually or add the following to your document:\footnote{The \texttt{shellesc} package is loaded automatically by the library.}:

\ShellEscape{mkdir external}

or

\ShellEscape{mkdir -p external}

If the combination of /tcb/external/prefix\footnote{P.475} and chosen snippet name points to another subdirectory than external, this has to be adapted.

- I use the \texttt{minted} package and I get a cache directory for every externalized snippet.
  To avoid this problem, there are several ways.
  - If you do not need \texttt{minted} inside the snippet code, you may use \texttt{\usepackage{minted}} after \texttt{\tcbEXTERNALIZE}\footnote{P.475} or use \texttt{\tcbifexternal}\footnote{P.482} to switch \texttt{minted} off for the external code. If \texttt{minted} is already included by another package, add the following to your preamble:

\tcbset{external/PassOptionsToPackage={draft}{minted}}

  - If \texttt{minted} is needed for the snippet code, caching can be switched off by adding the following to your preamble:

\tcbset{external/PassOptionsToPackage={cache=false}{minted}}

Alternatively, the \texttt{cachedir} option of \texttt{minted} may be used to redirect the cache.
This library has the single purpose to support \LaTeX package documentations like this one. Actually, the visual nature follows the approach from Till Tantau’s pgf [22] documentation. Typically, this library is assumed to be used in conjunction with the class \texttt{ltxdoc} or alike. Denis Bitouzé, Muzimuzhi, and many others provided very valuable input for this library.

The library is loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

\begin{quote}
\verb|\tcbuselibrary{documentation}|\end{quote}

This also loads the library \texttt{skins}, see Section 10 on page 156, the library \texttt{raster}, see Section 16 on page 297, the library \texttt{listings}, see Section 17 on page 319, the library \texttt{xparse}, see Section 24 on page 461, and a bunch of packages, namely \texttt{pifont}, \texttt{marvosym}, \texttt{makeidx}, \texttt{marginnote}, \texttt{refcount}, and \texttt{hyperref}.

The package \texttt{makeidx} is loaded only, if \texttt{\printindex} is \textit{not} already defined. Therefore, one can include an alternative to \texttt{makeidx} like \texttt{imakeidx} \textit{before} the library \texttt{documentation} is used.

The package \texttt{marginnote} is loaded only, if \texttt{\marginnote} is \textit{not} already defined.

In contrast to other \texttt{tcolorbox} options, the option settings for \texttt{documentation} are typically not getting reset by \texttt{/tcb/reset} \textsuperscript{P.\ref{tcb.reset}}, i.e. they keep their values for embedded boxes.

In combination with DocStrip, \texttt{/tcb/verbatim ignore percent} \textsuperscript{P.\ref{tcbverbatimignorepercent}} may be helpful.

For UTF-8 support load (ignore this when using \texttt{XeLaTeX}):

\begin{quote}
\verb|\tcbuselibrary{listingsutf8,documentation}|\end{quote}

For \texttt{minted} \textsuperscript{[12]} support, load:

\begin{quote}
\verb|\tcbuselibrary{documentation,minted}|\\
\verb|\tcbset{listing engine=minted}|\end{quote}

\subsection{Macros of the Library}

\texttt{\begin{docCommand}{(options)}{(name)}{(parameters)}{(command description)}\end{docCommand}}

Documents a \LaTeX macro with given \texttt{(name)} where \texttt{(name)} is written without backslash. The given \texttt{(options)} are set with \texttt{\tcbset} \textsuperscript{P.\ref{tcbset}}. This macro takes mandatory or optional \texttt{(parameters)}. It is automatically indexed and can be referenced with \texttt{\refCom} \textsuperscript{P.\ref{refCom}}{(name)}. 

486
Creating a new environment \texttt{⟨name⟩} based on \texttt{⟨key path⟩} for the documentation of keys with the given \texttt{⟨key path⟩}.

Creating a new environment \texttt{⟨name⟩} based on \texttt{docKey} for the documentation of keys with the given \texttt{⟨key path⟩}.

Identical to \texttt{docCommand} \textsuperscript{P.486}, but without index entry.

Documents several (similar) \LaTeX{} macro variants simultaneously. The given \texttt{⟨options⟩} are set with \texttt{\tcbset} \textsuperscript{P.13} and are valid for all variants and the documentation text. Every variant is described by an option set \texttt{⟨variant1⟩}, \texttt{⟨variant2⟩}, and so on. The most crucial options are \texttt{/tcb/doc name} \textsuperscript{P.500} and \texttt{/tcb/doc parameter} \textsuperscript{P.500}.

\begin{docCommand\*}\[\texttt{⟨options⟩} \langle \texttt{⟨name⟩} \rangle \langle \texttt{⟨parameters⟩} \rangle\]\end{docCommand\*}

\begin{docCommands}\[\texttt{⟨options⟩} \{ \langle \texttt{⟨variant1⟩} \rangle, \langle \texttt{⟨variant2⟩} \rangle, \ldots \}\]\end{docCommands}

\begin{docCommands}\{ % no index entries for this example \texttt{doc no index, } \texttt{% no index entries for this example} \texttt{doc name } \texttt{= newtheorem,} \texttt{doc parameter } \texttt{=}\texttt{\marg{envname},} \} \{ \}, \{ \texttt{doc parameter } \texttt{= } \texttt{\marg{envname}\oarg{numbered within}} \}, \{ \texttt{doc parameter } \texttt{= } \texttt{\oarg{numbered like}\marg{envname}} \}, \{ \texttt{doc name } \texttt{= newtheorem\* } \}, \} \texttt{example}\end{docCommands}

\begin{docCommands}\{ % no index entries for this example \texttt{doc name } \texttt{= newtheorem,} \texttt{doc parameter } \texttt{=}\texttt{\marg{envname},} \} \{ \}, \{ \texttt{doc parameter } \texttt{= } \texttt{\marg{envname}\oarg{numbered within}} \}, \{ \texttt{doc parameter } \texttt{= } \texttt{\oarg{numbered like}\marg{envname}} \}, \{ \texttt{doc name } \texttt{= newtheorem\* } \}, \} \texttt{example}\end{docCommands}
\begin{docEnvironment}[(options)]\{name\}\{parameters\}
\langle environment description \rangle
\end{docEnvironment}

Documents a \LaTeX\ environment with given \langle name \rangle. The given \langle options \rangle are set with \texttt{\textbackslash tcbset}\texttt{\textasciitilde P.13}. This environment takes mandatory or optional \langle parameters \rangle. It is automatically indexed and can be referenced with \texttt{\textbackslash refEnv}\texttt{\textasciitilde P.497}\{name\}.

\begin{docEnvironment}{foocolorbox}\{\oarg{options}\}
This is the main environment to create an accentuated colored text box with rounded corners and, optionally, two parts.
\end{docEnvironment}

\begin{foocolorbox}[(options)]
\langle environment description \rangle
\end{foocolorbox}

This is the main environment to create an accentuated colored text box with rounded corners and, optionally, two parts.

\begin{docEnvironment}\%
\[doclang/environment content=My content text\%\]
\{foocolorbox\*\{\oarg{options}\}\%
This is the main environment to create an accentuated colored text box with rounded corners and, optionally, two parts.
\end{docEnvironment}

\begin{foocolorbox*}[(options)]
\langle My content text \rangle
\end{foocolorbox*}

This is the main environment to create an accentuated colored text box with rounded corners and, optionally, two parts.

\begin{docEnvironment*}[(options)]\{name\}\{parameters\}\%
\langle environment description \rangle
\end{docEnvironment*}

Identical to \texttt{docEnvironment}, but without index entry.
Documents several (similar) \LaTeX environment variants simultaneously. The given \texttt{(options)} are set with \texttt{\texttt{tcbset}}, and are valid for all variants and the documentation text. Every variant is described by an option set \texttt{(variant1)}, \texttt{(variant2)}, and so on. The most crucial options are /\texttt{tcb/doc name} and /\texttt{tcb/doc parameter}.

\begin{docEnvironments}
\begin{options}
\begin{example}
\begin{redbox}[\{options\}]{\{title\}}
\{box content\}
\end{redbox}
\end{example}
\begin{greenbox}[\{options\}]{\{title\}}
\{box content\}
\end{greenbox}
\begin{bluebox}[\{options\}]{\{title\}}
\{box content\}
\end{bluebox}
\begin{custombox}[\{options\}]{\{color\} {\{title\}}}
\{box content\}
\end{custombox}
\end{example}
\end{docEnvironments}
Documents a key with given \texttt{\langle name\rangle} and an optional \texttt{\langle key path\rangle}. The given \texttt{\langle options\rangle} are set with \texttt{\verb!\tcbset!}. This key takes mandatory or optional \texttt{\langle parameters\rangle} as value with a short \texttt{\langle description\rangle}. It is automatically indexed and can be referenced with \texttt{\verb!\refKey!}.

\begin{docKey}[foo]{\texttt{\langle meta\rangle\texttt{\langle text\rangle}}}{\texttt{\langle name\rangle}}{\texttt{\langle parameters\rangle}}{\texttt{\langle description\rangle}}
\end{docKey}

Creates a heading line with \texttt{\langle meta\rangle\texttt{\langle text\rangle}} as content.

\begin{docKeys}

doc no index, \% no index entries for this example

doc keypath = mykeyroot,
doc parameter = {\texttt{\langle meta\rangle\texttt{\langle length\rangle}}},

\{\texttt{\langle doc name \rangle = width,}
\texttt{\langle doc description \rangle = initially \texttt{10cm}},
\},

\{\texttt{\langle doc name \rangle = height,}
\texttt{\langle doc description \rangle = initially \texttt{7cm}},
\},
\}
\end{docKeys}

\begin{docKeys}
/mykeyroot/width=\langle length\rangle \quad \text{(initially 10cm)}
/mykeyroot/height=\langle length\rangle \quad \text{(initially 7cm)}
\end{docKeys}
Documents a TikZ path operation with given \textit{name}. The given \textit{options} are set with \texttt{"tcbset"}. This TikZ path operation takes mandatory or optional \textit{parameters}. It is automatically indexed and can be referenced with \texttt{"refPathOperation"}.  

\begin{docPathOperation}{fooop}{{{\oarg{opt}}}{{{\colOpt{at}}}{{{\meta{coord}}}}}}} \text{Imaginary path operation for illustration.} \end{docPathOperation}

\begin{docPathOperations} \begin{docPathOperations} \{ \{\text{doc name} = \text{rectangle}, \text{doc parameter} = \texttt{\meta{corner or cycle}}, \}, \{\text{doc name} = \text{circle}, \text{doc parameter} = \texttt{\oarg{options}}, \}, \{\text{doc name} = \text{ellipse}, \text{doc parameter} = \texttt{\oarg{options}}, \} \end{docPathOperations} \end{docPathOperations}

\begin{docPathOperations}{doc no index, \% no index entries for this example} \begin{docPathOperations} \{ \{\text{doc name} = \text{rectangle}, \text{doc parameter} = \texttt{\meta{corner or cycle}}, \}, \{\text{doc name} = \text{circle}, \text{doc parameter} = \texttt{\oarg{options}}, \}, \{\text{doc name} = \text{ellipse}, \text{doc parameter} = \texttt{\oarg{options}}, \} \end{docPathOperations} \end{docPathOperations}

\begin{docPathOperations}\begin{docPathOperations}{\text{rectangle}{\texttt{\meta{corner or cycle}}} \ldots;}{\text{rectangle} \ldots;}{\text{circle}{\texttt{\oarg{options}}} \ldots;}{\text{circle} \ldots;}{\text{ellipse}{\texttt{\oarg{options}}} \ldots;}{\text{ellipse} \ldots;}{example}\end{docPathOperations}\end{docPathOperations}
\textbf{\texttt{docValue}}[(\textit{options})] \{\textit{name}\}
\textbf{\texttt{docValue*}}[(\textit{options})] \{\textit{name}\}

Documents a value with given \textit{name}. Typically, this is a value for a key. The given \textit{options} are set with \texttt{tcbset}\textsuperscript{*P.13}. This value is automatically indexed for \texttt{docValue} and has no index entry for \texttt{docValue*}.

A feasible value for \texttt{refKey}/foo/footitle is \texttt{docValue*foovalue}.

A feasible value for /foo/footitle\textsuperscript{*P.490} is \texttt{foovalue}.

\textbf{\texttt{docAuxCommand}}[(\textit{options})] \{\textit{name}\}
\textbf{\texttt{docAuxCommand*}}[(\textit{options})] \{\textit{name}\}

Documents an auxiliary or minor \LaTeX{} macro with given \textit{name} where \textit{name} is written without backslash. The given \textit{options} are set with \texttt{tcbset}\textsuperscript{*P.13}. This macro is automatically indexed for \texttt{docAuxCommand} and has no index entry for \texttt{docAuxCommand*}.

The macro \texttt{docAuxCommandfooaux} holds some interesting data.

The macro \texttt{fooaux} holds some interesting data.

\textbf{\texttt{docAuxEnvironment}}[(\textit{options})] \{\textit{name}\}
\textbf{\texttt{docAuxEnvironment*}}[(\textit{options})] \{\textit{name}\}

Documents an auxiliary or minor \LaTeX{} environment with given \textit{name}. The given \textit{options} are set with \texttt{tcbset}\textsuperscript{*P.13}. This macro is automatically indexed indexed for \texttt{docAuxEnvironment} and has no index entry for \texttt{docAuxEnvironment*}.

The environment \texttt{docAuxEnvironmentfooauxenv} holds some interesting data.

The environment \texttt{fooauxenv} holds some interesting data.

\textbf{\texttt{docAuxKey}}[(\textit{key path})] [(\textit{options})] \{\textit{name}\}
\textbf{\texttt{docAuxKey*}}[(\textit{key path})] [(\textit{options})] \{\textit{name}\}

Documents an auxiliary key with given \textit{name} and an optional \textit{key path}. The given \textit{options} are set with \texttt{tcbset}\textsuperscript{*P.13}. It is automatically indexed for \texttt{docAuxKey} and has no index entry for \texttt{docAuxKey*}.

The key \texttt{docAuxKey[foo]fooaux} holds some interesting data.

The key \texttt{/foo/fooaux} holds some interesting data.

\textbf{\texttt{docCounter}}[(\textit{options})] \{\textit{name}\}
\textbf{\texttt{docCounter*}}[(\textit{options})] \{\textit{name}\}

Documents a counter with given \textit{name}. The given \textit{options} are set with \texttt{tcbset}\textsuperscript{*P.13}. The counter is automatically indexed for \texttt{docCounter} and has no index entry for \texttt{docCounter*}.

The counter \texttt{docCounterfoocounter} can be used for computation.

The counter \texttt{foocounter} can be used for computation.
\texttt{\textbackslash docLength}\{\langle\textit{name}\rangle\}
\texttt{\textbackslash docLength*}\{\langle\textit{name}\rangle\}

Documents a length with given \langle\textit{name}\rangle. The given \langle\textit{options}\rangle are set with \texttt{\textbackslash tcbset} \textsuperscript{P.13}. The length is automatically indexed for \texttt{\textbackslash docLength} and has no index entry for \texttt{\textbackslash docLength*}.

The length \texttt{\textbackslash docLength\{foolength\}} can be used for computation.

The length \texttt{\textbackslash foolength} can be used for computation.

\texttt{\textbackslash docColor}\{\langle\textit{name}\rangle\}
\texttt{\textbackslash docColor*}\{\langle\textit{name}\rangle\}

Documents a color with given \langle\textit{name}\rangle. The given \langle\textit{options}\rangle are set with \texttt{\textbackslash tcbset} \textsuperscript{P.13}. The color is automatically indexed for \texttt{\textbackslash docColor} and has no index entry for \texttt{\textbackslash docColor*}.

The color \texttt{\textbackslash docColor\{foocolor\}} is available.

The color \texttt{\textbackslash foocolor} is available.

\texttt{\textbackslash cs}\{\langle\textit{name}\rangle\}

Macro from \texttt{\textbackslash ltxdoc} \textsuperscript{[3]} to typeset a command word \langle\textit{name}\rangle where the backslash is prefixed. The library overwrites the original macro.

This is a \texttt{\cs\{foocommand\}}.

This is a \texttt{\foocommand}.

\texttt{\textbackslash meta}\{\langle\textit{text}\rangle\}

Macro from \texttt{\textbackslash doc} \textsuperscript{[8]} to typeset a meta \langle\textit{text}\rangle. The library overwrites the original macro.

This is a \texttt{\meta\{text\}}.

This is a \langle\textit{text}\rangle.

\texttt{\textbackslash marg}\{\langle\textit{text}\rangle\}

Macro from \texttt{\textbackslash ltxdoc} \textsuperscript{[3]} to typeset a \langle\textit{text}\rangle with curly brackets as a mandatory argument. The library overwrites the original macro.

This is a mandatory \texttt{\marg\{argument\}}.

This is a mandatory \langle\textit{argument}\rangle.

\texttt{\textbackslash oarg}\{\langle\textit{text}\rangle\}

Macro from \texttt{\textbackslash ltxdoc} \textsuperscript{[3]} to typeset a \langle\textit{text}\rangle with square brackets as an optional argument. The library overwrites the original macro.

This is an optional \texttt{\oarg\{argument\}}.

This is an optional \langle\textit{argument}\rangle.
\texttt{\textbackslash brackets\{\textit{text}\}}

Sets the given \textit{text} with curly brackets.

| Here we use \texttt{\textbackslash brackets\{some text\}}. |
| Here we use \{some text\}. |

\texttt{\textbackslash begin\{\texttt{dispExample}\}}
\texttt{\textbackslash \{environment content\}}
\texttt{\textbackslash end\{\texttt{dispExample}\}}

Creates a colored box based on a \texttt{tcolorbox}\textsuperscript{P.12}. It displays the environment content as source code in the upper part and as compiled text in the lower part of the box. The appearance is controlled by \texttt{/tcb/documentation listing style}\textsuperscript{P.508} and the style \texttt{/tcb/docexample}\textsuperscript{P.508}. It may be changed by redefining this style.

\begin{dispExample}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{dispExample}

This is a \LaTeX\ example.

This is a \LaTeX\ example.

\begin{dispExample*}\{\texttt{sidebyside}\}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{dispExample*}

The starred version of \texttt{dispExample} takes \texttt{tcolorbox}\textsuperscript{P.12} \texttt{\{options\}} as parameter. These \texttt{\{options\}} are executed after \texttt{/tcb/docexample}\textsuperscript{P.508}.

\begin{dispExample*}\{\texttt{sidebyside}\}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{dispExample*}

This is a \LaTeX\ example. This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\begin{dispListing}
\begin{environment content}
\end{environment content}
\end{dispListing}

Creates a colored box based on a \texttt{tcolorbox}\textsuperscript{P.12}. It displays the environment content as source code. The appearance is controlled by \texttt{/tcb/documentation listing style}\textsuperscript{P.508} and the style \texttt{/tcb/docexample}\textsuperscript{P.508}. It may be changed by redefining this style.

\begin{dispListing}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{dispListing}

\begin{dispListing*}{title=My listing}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{dispListing*}

\begin{absquote}
\begin{environment content}
\end{environment content}
\end{absquote}

Used to typeset an abstract as quoted and small text.

\begin{absquote}
|tcolorbox| provides an environment for colored and framed text boxes with a heading line. Optionally, such a box can be split in an upper and a lower part.
\end{absquote}

\texttt{tcolorbox} provides an environment for colored and framed text boxes with a heading line. Optionally, such a box can be split in an upper and a lower part.
\texttt{tcbmakedocSubKey\{\langle name\rangle\}\{\langle key\ path\rangle\}}

Creates a new environment \(<\textit{name}>\) based on \texttt{docKey} \(^{P.490}\) for the documentation of keys with the given \(<\textit{key}\ path>\) as root. The new environment \(<\textit{name}>\) takes the same parameters as \texttt{docKey} \(^{P.490}\) itself. A second starred environment \(<\textit{name}>\) is also created, which is identical to \(<\textit{name}>\) but without index entry.

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbmakedocSubKey{docFooKey}{foo}
\begin{docFooKey}{foodummy}{\texttt{=\{\texttt{nothing}\}}}{\texttt{no default, initially empty}}
Some key.
\end{docFooKey}
\begin{docFooKey*}{foo another dummy}{\texttt{=\{\texttt{nothing}\}}}{\texttt{no default, initially empty}}
Some key (not indexed).
\end{docFooKey*}

/\texttt{foo/foodummy} = \texttt{\{\texttt{nothing}\}}
Some key (no default, initially empty)
/\texttt{foo/foo another dummy} = \texttt{\{\texttt{nothing}\}}
Some key (not indexed).
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{tcbmakedocSubKeys\{\langle name\rangle\}\{\langle key\ path\rangle\}}

Creates a new environment \(<\textit{name}>\) based on \texttt{docKeys} \(^{P.490}\) for the documentation of keys with the given \(<\textit{key}\ path>\) as root. The new environment \(<\textit{name}>\) takes the same parameters as \texttt{docKeys} \(^{P.490}\) itself.

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbmakedocSubKeys{docFooKeys}{foo}
\begin{docFooKeys}
\texttt{doc parameter = \{\texttt{\{\texttt{nothing}\}}\}},
\texttt{doc description = \{\texttt{no default, initially empty}\}},
\}
\texttt{doc name = foodummy 2},
\texttt{doc no index},
\}
\texttt{doc name = foo another dummy 2},
\texttt{doc no index},
\}
Some description.
\end{docFooKeys}

/\texttt{foo/foodummy 2} = \texttt{\{\texttt{nothing}\}}
Some key (no default, initially empty)
/\texttt{foo/foo another dummy 2} = \texttt{\{\texttt{nothing}\}}
Some description.
\end{verbatim}
\refCom\{\langle name\rangle\}  
References a documented \LaTeX{} macro with given \langle name\rangle where \langle name\rangle is written without backslash. The page reference is suppressed if it links to the same page.

\begin{verbatim}
We have created \refCom\{foomakedocSubKey\} as an example.
We have created \foomakedocSubKey\textsuperscript{P. 487} as an example.
\end{verbatim}

\refCom\{\langle name\rangle\}  
References a documented \LaTeX{} macro with given \langle name\rangle where \langle name\rangle is written without backslash. There is no page reference.

\begin{verbatim}
We have created \refCom\{foomakedocSubKey\} as an example.
We have created \foomakedocSubKey as an example.
\end{verbatim}

\refEnv\{\langle name\rangle\}  
References a documented \LaTeX{} environment with given \langle name\rangle. The page reference is suppressed if it links to the same page.

\begin{verbatim}
We have created \refEnv\{foocolorbox\} as an example.
We have created foocolorbox\textsuperscript{P. 488} as an example.
\end{verbatim}

\refEnv\{\langle name\rangle\}  
References a documented \LaTeX{} environment with given \langle name\rangle. There is no page reference.

\begin{verbatim}
We have created \refEnv\{foocolorbox\} as an example.
We have created foocolorbox as an example.
\end{verbatim}

\refKey\{\langle name\rangle\}  
References a documented key with given \langle name\rangle where \langle name\rangle is the full path name of the key. The page reference is suppressed if it links to the same page.

\begin{verbatim}
We have created \refKey\{/foo/footitle\} as an example.
We have created /foo/footitle\textsuperscript{P. 490} as an example.
\end{verbatim}

\refKey\{\langle name\rangle\}  
References a documented key with given \langle name\rangle where \langle name\rangle is the full path name of the key. There is no page reference.

\begin{verbatim}
We have created \refKey\{/foo/footitle\} as an example.
We have created /foo/footitle as an example.
\end{verbatim}
\refPathOperation{⟨name⟩}
References a documented TikZ path operation with given ⟨name⟩. The page reference is suppressed if it links to the same page.

We have created \refPathOperation{fooop} as an example.

We have created fooop \textsuperscript{−P.491} as an example.

\refPathOperation*{⟨name⟩}
References a documented TikZ path operation with given ⟨name⟩. There is no page reference.

We have created \refPathOperation*{fooop} as an example.

We have created fooop as an example.

\refAux{⟨name⟩}
References some auxiliary environment, key, value, or color. The ⟨name⟩ is colored according to /tcb/color hyperlink \textsuperscript{−P.510}, if hyperref colorlinks are set, but there is no real link.

Some pages back, one can see \refAux{/foo/footitle} as an example.

Some pages back, one can see /foo/footitle as an example.

\refAuxcs{⟨name⟩}
References some auxiliary macro ⟨name⟩ where ⟨name⟩ is written without backslash. The ⟨name⟩ is colored according to /tcb/color hyperlink \textsuperscript{−P.510}, if hyperref colorlinks are set, but there is no real link.

Some pages back, one can see \refAuxcs{fooaux} as an example.

Some pages back, one can see /fooaux as an example.

\colDef{⟨text⟩}
Sets ⟨text⟩ with the command color, see /tcb/color command \textsuperscript{−P.510}.

This is my \colDef{text}.

This is my text.

\colOpt{⟨text⟩}
Sets ⟨text⟩ with the option color, see /tcb/color option \textsuperscript{−P.510}.

This is my \colOpt{text}.

This is my text.
\textbf{\texttt{\textbackslash{colFade}\{text\}}}   

Sets \textit{(text)} with the fade color, see \texttt{/tcb/color fade}\textsuperscript{P.510}.

\begin{quote}
This is my \texttt{\textbackslash{colFade}text}.
\end{quote}

\textbf{\texttt{\textbackslash{tcbdocmarginnote}\{(options)\}\{text\}}}   

Creates a \texttt{tcolorbox} note with the given \textit{(text)} inside the margin using the \texttt{marginnote} package. The style of the \texttt{tcolorbox} is predefined and can be altered by \texttt{/tcb/doc marginnote}\textsuperscript{P.502} and the given \textit{(options)}.

\begin{quote}
Some text \texttt{\textbackslash{tcbdocmarginnote}Note A} which is commented by a note inside the margin. Alternatively to \texttt{\textbackslash{tcbdocmarginnote}}, you can always use \texttt{\textbackslash{marginnote}} with a \texttt{tcolorbox} directly.\texttt{\par}
This is further text\% 
\texttt{\textbackslash{tcbdocmarginnote}[colframe=blue!50!white,colback=blue!5!white]Note B} with another note.
\end{quote}

\begin{quote}
Some text which is commented by a note inside the margin. Alternatively to \texttt{\textbackslash{tcbdocmarginnote}}, you can always use \texttt{\textbackslash{marginnote}} with a \texttt{tcolorbox} directly. This is further text with another note.
\end{quote}

\textbf{\texttt{\textbackslash{tcbdocnew}\{date\}}}   

Auxiliary macro which typesets the \texttt{/tcb/doclang/new}\textsuperscript{P.511} text with the given \textit{(date)}. It may be redefined for customization.

\begin{quote}
\end{quote}

\begin{quote}
% Next one is displayed in the margin: \texttt{\textbackslash{tcbdocmarginnote}\{\textbackslash{tcbdocnew}\{1978-02-09\}\}}
\end{quote}

\textbf{\texttt{\textbackslash{tcbdocupdated}\{date\}}}   

Auxiliary macro which typesets the \texttt{/tcb/doclang/updated}\textsuperscript{P.511} text with the given \textit{(date)}. It may be redefined for customization.

\begin{quote}
\end{quote}
26.2  Entry Content Option Keys

\begin{docCommands}[doc no index, \% no index entries for this example
  doc name = bfseries,]
  \end{docCommands}

\textbf{\langle text \rangle}

Sets the \langle name \rangle of the entry to document, i.e. the \langle name \rangle of the command, environment, key, etc. For \texttt{docCommand}\textsuperscript{\textit{P.486}}, \texttt{docEnvironment}\textsuperscript{\textit{P.488}}, etc. the \langle name \rangle is set by a mandatory parameter, but can also be set by \texttt{/tcb/doc name}. \texttt{/tcb/doc name} also sets \langle name \rangle to \texttt{/tcb/doc label}\textsuperscript{\textit{P.501}}, \texttt{/tcb/doc index}\textsuperscript{\textit{P.501}}, and \texttt{/tcb/doc sort index}\textsuperscript{\textit{P.501}}.

\begin{docCommands}[doc no index, \% no index entries for this example
  doc name = textbf, doc parameter = \marg{\text},]
  \end{docCommands}

\textbf{\langle text \rangle}

Sets \langle parameters \rangle of the entry to document, i.e. the \langle parameters \rangle of the command, environment, key, etc. For \texttt{docCommand}\textsuperscript{\textit{P.486}}, \texttt{docEnvironment}\textsuperscript{\textit{P.488}}, etc. the \langle parameters \rangle is set by a mandatory option, but can also be set by \texttt{/tcb/doc parameter}.

\begin{docKeys}[doc keypath = tikz, doc name = fill,]
  \end{docKeys}

/tikz/fill=\langle color \rangle (default is scope's color setting)

Sets the \langle key path \rangle of the key to document. For \texttt{docKey}\textsuperscript{\textit{P.490}} and \texttt{docKey*}\textsuperscript{\textit{P.490}} the \langle key path \rangle is set by a specialized option, but can also be set by \texttt{/tcb/doc keypath}.
Sets a (short!) additional \textit{description} for \texttt{docCommand} \cite{P.486}, \texttt{docEnvironment} \cite{P.488}, or \texttt{docPathOperation} \cite{P.491}. Such a description is mandatory for \texttt{docKey} \cite{P.490}.

\begin{docCommand*}[doc description=my description]{myCommandF}{\marg{argument}}
This is the documentation of \texttt{\refCom{myCommandF}} which takes one \texttt{\meta{argument}}. \texttt{\refCom{myCommandF}} does some funny things with its \texttt{\meta{argument}}.
\end{docCommand*}

\texttt{myCommandF}{\langle argument \rangle} (my description)
This is the documentation of \texttt{myCommandF} which takes one \langle argument \rangle. \texttt{myCommandF} does some funny things with its \langle argument \rangle.

Note that the description \langle text \rangle may overlap with the text on the left hand side if too long. Linebreaks can be used inside the \langle text \rangle.

\begin{docPathOperation*}[doc label=pathline]{-{}-}{\meta{coordinate or cycle}}
This is the documentation of \texttt{\refPathOperation{pathline}}.
\end{docPathOperation*}

\texttt{-|}{\langle coordinate or cycle \rangle} ...;
This is the documentation of -|.

\begin{docCommands}
\begin{verbatim}
doc name = l_tcobox_example_tl,
doc sort index = example_tl, % sorted unter e like example
\end{verbatim}
\end{docCommands}
/tcb/doc into index = true|false

(default true, initially true)

If set to false, no index entries are written for the main documentation environments. The same effect is achieved by using e.g. `docCommand*` instead of `docCommand*`.

N 2020-04-22 /tcb/doc no index

(style, initially unset)

If set, no index entries are written for the main documentation environments. This is a shortcut for using `/tcb/doc into index=false`.

N 2014-09-19 /tcb/doc marginnote = ⟨options⟩

(no default, initially empty)

Sets style ⟨options⟩ for the displayed box of the `tcbdocmarginnote` command.

\begin{docCommand}{doc marginnote={colframe=blue!50!white,colback=blue!5!white}}%
This is some text\tcbdocmarginnote{Note A} which is commented by a note inside the margin.
\end{docCommand}

\begin{quote}
Note A
\end{quote}

This is some text which is commented by a note inside the margin.

N 2014-09-19 /tcb/doc new = ⟨date⟩

(style, no default)

Adds a marginnote with a “New: ⟨date⟩” message at the beginning of the upper box part. The intended use is inside the option list of `docCommand*`, `docEnvironment*`, etc.

\begin{docCommand}{doc new=2000-01-01}{foosomething}{\marg{text}}
Some command for something.
\end{docCommand}

\begin{quote}
New:
2000-01-01
\end{quote}

\begin{docCommand}{foosomething}{⟨text⟩}
Some command for something.
\end{docCommand}

N 2014-09-19 /tcb/doc updated = ⟨date⟩

(style, no default)

Adds a marginnote with a “Updated: ⟨date⟩” message at the beginning of the upper box part.

N 2014-09-19 /tcb/doc new and updated = ⟨new date⟩{⟨update date⟩}

(style, no default)

Adds a marginnote with “New: ⟨new date⟩” and “Updated: ⟨update date⟩” messages at the beginning of the upper box part. See `/tcb/doc new`.

502
26.3 Entry Customization Option Keys

/tcb/doc left=⟨length⟩ (no default, initially 2em)
Sets the left hand offset of the documentation texts from \texttt{docCommand} \textsuperscript{P.486}, \texttt{docEnvironment} \textsuperscript{P.488}, \texttt{docKey} \textsuperscript{P.490}, etc, to \langle length \rangle.

\begin{docCommand*}{myCommandA}\{⟨argument⟩\}
This is the documentation of \texttt{myCommandA} which takes one \langle argument \rangle. \texttt{myCommandA} does some funny things with its \langle argument \rangle.
\end{docCommand*}

/tcb/doc right=⟨length⟩ (no default, initially 0em)
Sets the right hand offset of the documentation texts from \texttt{docCommand} \textsuperscript{P.486}, \texttt{docEnvironment} \textsuperscript{P.488}, \texttt{docKey} \textsuperscript{P.490}, etc, to \langle length \rangle.

\begin{docCommand*}{myCommandB}\{⟨argument⟩\}
This is the documentation of \texttt{myCommandB} which takes one \langle argument \rangle. \texttt{myCommandB} does some funny things with its \langle argument \rangle.
\end{docCommand*}

/tcb/doc left indent=⟨length⟩ (no default, initially -2em)
Sets the left hand indent of documentation heads from \texttt{docCommand} \textsuperscript{P.486}, \texttt{docEnvironment} \textsuperscript{P.488}, \texttt{docKey} \textsuperscript{P.490}, etc, to \langle length \rangle.

\begin{docCommand*}{myCommandC}\{⟨argument⟩\}
This is the documentation of \texttt{myCommandC} which takes one \langle argument \rangle. \texttt{myCommandC} does some funny things with its \langle argument \rangle.
\end{docCommand*}

/tcb/doc right indent=⟨length⟩ (no default, initially 0pt)
Sets the right hand indent of documentation heads from \texttt{docCommand} \textsuperscript{P.486}, \texttt{docEnvironment} \textsuperscript{P.488}, \texttt{docKey} \textsuperscript{P.490}, etc, to \langle length \rangle.

\begin{docCommand*}{myCommandD}\{⟨argument⟩\}
This is the documentation of \texttt{myCommandD} which takes one \langle argument \rangle. \texttt{myCommandD} does some funny things with its \langle argument \rangle.
\end{docCommand*}
The head lines of the main documentation environments `docCommand`\textsuperscript{P.486}, `docEnvironment`\textsuperscript{P.488}, `docKey`\textsuperscript{P.490}, etc, are `tcolorboxes` inside a `tcbraster`\textsuperscript{P.299}. Options to the surrounding `tcbrasters` and the embedded `tcolorboxes` can be given using the following keys.

\begin{tcblist}{doc raster command=⟨options⟩}
\setsendskip{}\setskip{}\setskipskip{}
\begin{docCommand*}{myCommandI}{⟨argument⟩}
\begin{document}
\section*{myCommandI}⟨argument⟩\end{document}
\end{docCommand*}\end{tcblist}

\begin{tcblist}{doc raster environment=⟨options⟩}
\setsendskip{}\setskip{}\setskipskip{}
\begin{docEnvironment*}{myCommandI}{⟨argument⟩}
\begin{document}
\section*{myCommandI}⟨argument⟩\end{document}
\end{docEnvironment*}\end{tcblist}

\begin{tcblist}{doc raster key=⟨options⟩}
\setsendskip{}\setskip{}\setskipskip{}
\begin{docKey*}{myCommandI}{⟨argument⟩}
\begin{document}
\section*{myCommandI}⟨argument⟩\end{document}
\end{docKey*}\end{tcblist}

\begin{tcblist}{doc raster path=⟨options⟩}
\setsendskip{}\setskip{}\setskipskip{}
\begin{docPathOperation*}{myCommandI}{⟨argument⟩}
\begin{document}
\section*{myCommandI}⟨argument⟩\end{document}
\end{docPathOperation*}\end{tcblist}

\begin{tcblist}{doc raster}\setsendskip{}\setskip{}\setskipskip{}
\begin{docCommands}{⟨options⟩}
\setsendskip{}\setskip{}\setskipskip{}
\begin{docCommand}{myCommandI}{⟨argument⟩}
\begin{document}
\section*{myCommandI}⟨argument⟩\end{document}
\end{docCommand}\end{docCommands}\end{tcblist}
Sets \langle \textit{options} \rangle for the head line of \texttt{docEnvironment} \footnote{P.488}, \texttt{docEnvironment*} \footnote{P.488}, and \texttt{docEnvironments} \footnote{P.489}.

```latex
\tcbset{doc head environment={beamer,boxsep=2pt,arc=2pt,colback=green!20!white}}
```

This is the documentation of \texttt{\refEnv{myEnvironment}} which takes one \texttt{\meta{argument}}.

```latex
\begin{docEnvironment*}{myEnvironment}{\meta{argument}}
\begin{arg}{argument}
\end{arg}
\end{docEnvironment*}
```

This is the documentation of \texttt{myEnvironment} which takes one \texttt{\langle \textit{argument} \rangle}.

Sets \langle \textit{options} \rangle for the head line of \texttt{docKey} \footnote{P.490}, \texttt{docKey*} \footnote{P.490}, and \texttt{docKeys} \footnote{P.490}.

```latex
\tcbset{doc head key={boxsep=4pt,arc=4pt,boxrule=0.6pt,frame style=fill,interior style=fill,colframe=green!50!black}}
```

This is the documentation of \texttt{\refKey{/foo/myKey}}.

```latex
\begin{docKey}{/foo/myKey}{}{no value}
\end{docKey}
```

This is the documentation of \texttt{/foo/myKey}.

Sets \langle \textit{options} \rangle for the head line of \texttt{docPathOperation} \footnote{P.491}, \texttt{docPathOperation*} \footnote{P.491}, \texttt{docPathOperations} \footnote{P.491}.

```latex
\tcbset{doc head command={interior style={fill,left color=red!7!white,right color=blue!7!white}}}
```

This is the documentation of \texttt{\refPathOperation{-{}-}}.

```latex
\begin{docPathOperation*}{-{}-}{\meta{coordinate or cycle}}
\begin{arg}{coordinate or cycle}
\end{arg}
\end{docPathOperation*}
```

This is the documentation of \texttt{-{}-}.

Shortcut for setting the same \langle \textit{options} \rangle for \texttt{/tcb/doc head command} \footnote{P.504}, \texttt{/tcb/doc head environment}, \texttt{/tcb/doc head key}, and \texttt{/tcb/doc head path}.

```latex
\texttt{/tcb/doc head=\langle \textit{options} \rangle}
```

(no default, initially empty)
The description texts of the main documentation environments `docCommand`\textsuperscript{p.486}, `docEnvironment`\textsuperscript{p.488}, `docKey`\textsuperscript{p.490}, etc, are set in a compact form without indentation and `parskip=0pt`. This settings can overruled by using the following keys to insert code before (or after) the description texts.

N 2015-10-09 \texttt{/tcb/before doc body command}=\langle code\rangle \quad \text{(no default, initially empty)}\]

Executes \langle code\rangle before the description texts of `docCommand`\textsuperscript{p.486} and `docCommand*`\textsuperscript{p.487}.

```latex
\begin{docCommand*}{myCommandG}{\marg{argument}}
This is the documentation of \refCom{myCommandG} which takes one \meta{argument}. \refCom{myCommandG} does some funny things with its \meta{argument}.
\end{docCommand*}
\myCommandG{\langle argument\rangle}

This is the documentation of \myCommandG which takes one \langle argument\rangle. \myCommandG does some funny things with its \langle argument\rangle.
```

N 2015-10-09 \texttt{/tcb/after doc body command}=\langle code\rangle \quad \text{(no default, initially empty)}\]

Executes \langle code\rangle after the description texts of `docCommand`\textsuperscript{p.486} and `docCommand*`\textsuperscript{p.487}.

```latex
\begin{docCommand*}{myCommandH}{\marg{argument}}
This is the documentation of \refCom{myCommandH} which takes one \meta{argument}. \refCom{myCommandH} does some funny things with its \meta{argument}.
\end{docCommand*}
\myCommandH{\langle argument\rangle}

This is the documentation of \myCommandH which takes one \langle argument\rangle. \myCommandH does some funny things with its \langle argument\rangle. ♦
```

N 2015-10-09 \texttt{/tcb/before doc body environment}=\langle code\rangle \quad \text{(no default, initially empty)}\]

Executes \langle code\rangle before the description texts of `docEnvironment`\textsuperscript{p.488} and `docEnvironment*`\textsuperscript{p.488}.

N 2015-10-09 \texttt{/tcb/after doc body environment}=\langle code\rangle \quad \text{(no default, initially empty)}\]

Executes \langle code\rangle after the description texts of `docEnvironment`\textsuperscript{p.488} and `docEnvironment*`\textsuperscript{p.488}.

N 2015-10-09 \texttt{/tcb/before doc body key}=\langle code\rangle \quad \text{(no default, initially empty)}\]

Executes \langle code\rangle before the description texts of `docKey`\textsuperscript{p.490} and `docKey*`\textsuperscript{p.490}.

N 2015-10-09 \texttt{/tcb/after doc body key}=\langle code\rangle \quad \text{(no default, initially empty)}\]

Executes \langle code\rangle after the description texts of `docKey`\textsuperscript{p.490} and `docKey*`\textsuperscript{p.490}. 

506
Executes \( \langle \text{code} \rangle \) before the description texts of \texttt{docPathOperation} \( \rightarrow \text{P.491} \) and \texttt{docPathOperation*} \( \rightarrow \text{P.491} \). 

Executes \( \langle \text{code} \rangle \) after the description texts of \texttt{docPathOperation} \( \rightarrow \text{P.491} \) and \texttt{docPathOperation*} \( \rightarrow \text{P.491} \). 

Shortcut for setting the same \( \langle \text{options} \rangle \) for \texttt{tcb/before doc body command} \( \rightarrow \text{P.506} \), \texttt{tcb/before doc body environment} \( \rightarrow \text{P.506} \), \texttt{tcb/before doc body key} \( \rightarrow \text{P.506} \), \texttt{tcb/before doc body} \( \rightarrow \text{P.507} \). 

Shortcut for setting the same \( \langle \text{options} \rangle \) for \texttt{tcb/after doc body command} \( \rightarrow \text{P.506} \), \texttt{tcb/after doc body environment} \( \rightarrow \text{P.506} \), \texttt{tcb/after doc body key} \( \rightarrow \text{P.506} \), and \texttt{tcb/after doc body}. 

507
26.4 General Customization Option Keys

/tcb/docexample

Sets the style for \texttt{dispExample} and \texttt{dispListing} with the colors \texttt{ExampleBack} and \texttt{ExampleFrame}. To change the appearance of the examples, this style can be redefined.

\begin{verbatim}
% Predefined style:
\tcbsset{
  docexample/.style={colframe=ExampleFrame,colback=ExampleBack,
  before skip=\medskipamount,after skip=\medskipamount,
  fontlower=\footnotesize}
}
\end{verbatim}

/tcb/documentation listing options=\langle key list \rangle

Sets the options from the package \texttt{listings} [6]. They are used inside \texttt{dispExample} and \texttt{dispListing} which is used for “normal” listings. Used for \texttt{/tcb/listing engine\texttt{=listings}} only.

/tcb/documentation listing style=\langle listing style \rangle

Abbreviation for \texttt{documentation listing options=\{style=\ldots\}}. This key sets a \texttt{\langle style \rangle} for the \texttt{listings} package, see [6]. Note that this is not identical to the key \texttt{/tcb/listing style} which is used for “normal” listings. Used for \texttt{/tcb/listing engine\texttt{=listings}} only.

/tcb/documentation minted options=\langle minted style \rangle

Sets the options from the package \texttt{minted} which are used during typesetting of the listing, if used. Note that this is not identical to the key \texttt{/tcb/minted options} which is used for “normal” listings. Used for \texttt{/tcb/listing engine\texttt{=minted}} only.

/tcb/documentation minted style=\langle key list \rangle

Sets a \texttt{\langle style \rangle} known to \texttt{Pygments} [14] for the package \texttt{minted}, if used. Note that this is not identical to the key \texttt{/tcb/minted style} which is used for “normal” listings. Used for \texttt{/tcb/listing engine\texttt{=minted}} only.

/tcb/documentation minted language=\langle programming language \rangle

Sets a \texttt{\langle programming language \rangle} known to \texttt{Pygments} for the package \texttt{minted}, if used. Note that this is not identical to the key \texttt{/tcb/minted language} which is used for “normal” listings. Used for \texttt{/tcb/listing engine\texttt{=minted}} only.

The following two keys are deprecated and without function (v3.50 and above). Use \texttt{/tcb/before} and \texttt{/tcb/after} with appropriate values instead. Also see \texttt{/tcb/docexample}.

/tcb/before example=\langle macros \rangle

Sets the \texttt{\langle macros \rangle} which are executed before \texttt{dispExample} and \texttt{dispListing} additional to \texttt{/tcb/before}.

/tcb/after example=\langle macros \rangle

Sets the \texttt{\langle macros \rangle} which are executed after \texttt{dispExample} and \texttt{dispListing} additional to \texttt{/tcb/after}. 

508
Keyword used in \texttt{docEnvironment} \textsuperscript{P.488}, \texttt{docCommand} \textsuperscript{P.486}, etc. are printed boldface (or not). Since the typewriter font is used, the effect may be invisible with Computer Modern fonts or similar which do not have a bold variant. Note that references to keywords are not printed boldface at all.

\begin{verbatim}
\LARGE
\docAuxCommand{fooaux}, \refCom{tcbset}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{\textbackslash{fooaux}, \textbackslash{tcbset}\textsuperscript{P.13}}

\texttt{\textbackslash{fooaux}, \textbackslash{tcbset}\textsuperscript{P.13}}

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset\{keywords bold=false\}
\docAuxCommand{fooaux}, \refCom{tcbset}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{\textbackslash{fooaux}, \textbackslash{tcbset}\textsuperscript{P.13}}

\texttt{\textbackslash{fooaux}, \textbackslash{tcbset}\textsuperscript{P.13}}

\begin{verbatim}
\docAuxCommand{fooaux}, \refCom{tcbset}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{\textbackslash{fooaux}, \textbackslash{tcbset}\textsuperscript{P.13}}

\texttt{\textbackslash{fooaux}, \textbackslash{tcbset}\textsuperscript{P.13}}

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset\{index command=\myindexcommand\}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset\{index command name=mydoc\}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset\{index format=\texttt{off}\}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset\{index actual={=}, index quote={!}, index level={>}\}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{\textbackslash{tcbset}\{index actual={=}, index quote={!}, index level={>}\}}

509
\texttt{/tcb/index annotate=true|false} \hspace{1em} (default \textit{true}, initially \textit{true})

If set to \textit{true}, the index entries are annotated with short descriptions given by \texttt{/tcb/doclang/environment} \textsuperscript{\textit{P.511}}, \texttt{/tcb/doclang/key} \textsuperscript{\textit{P.511}}, and others.

\texttt{/tcb/index colorize=true|false} \hspace{1em} (default \textit{true}, initially \textit{false})

If set to \textit{true}, the index entries colorized according to the color settings given by \texttt{/tcb/color environment}, \texttt{/tcb/color key}, and others.

\texttt{/tcb/color command=(color)} \hspace{1em} (no default, initially \textit{Definition})

Sets the highlight color used by macro definitions.

\texttt{/tcb/color environment=(color)} \hspace{1em} (no default, initially \textit{Definition})

Sets the highlight color used by environment definitions.

\texttt{/tcb/color key=(color)} \hspace{1em} (no default, initially \textit{Definition})

Sets the highlight color used by key definitions.

\texttt{/tcb/color path=(color)} \hspace{1em} (no default, initially \textit{Definition})

Sets the highlight color used by TikZ path operation definitions.

\texttt{/tcb/color value=(color)} \hspace{1em} (no default, initially \textit{Definition})

Sets the highlight color used by value definitions.

\texttt{/tcb/color counter=(color)} \hspace{1em} (no default, initially \textit{Definition})

Sets the highlight color used by counter definitions.

\texttt{/tcb/color length=(color)} \hspace{1em} (no default, initially \textit{Definition})

Sets the highlight color used by length definitions.

\texttt{/tcb/color color=(color)} \hspace{1em} (no default, initially \textit{Definition})

Sets the highlight color used by color definitions.

\texttt{/tcb/color definition=(color)} \hspace{1em} (no default, initially \textit{Definition})

Sets the highlight color for \texttt{/tcb/color command}, \texttt{/tcb/color environment}, \texttt{/tcb/color key}, \texttt{/tcb/color path}, \texttt{/tcb/color value}, \texttt{/tcb/color counter}, \texttt{/tcb/color length}, and \texttt{/tcb/color color}.

\texttt{/tcb/color option=(color)} \hspace{1em} (no default, initially \textit{Option})

Sets the color used for optional arguments.

\texttt{/tcb/color fade=(color)} \hspace{1em} (no default, initially \textit{Fade})

Sets the color used for faded text like \texttt{\colorpath} in \texttt{docPathOperation} \textsuperscript{\textit{P.491}}.

\texttt{/tcb/color hyperlink=(color)} \hspace{1em} (no default, initially \textit{Hyperlink})

Sets the color for all hyper-links, i.e. all internal and external links.
26.5 Language Option Keys

The following keys are provided for language specific settings. The English language is pre-defined.

/tcb/english language (style, no value)
Sets all language specific settings to English.

/tcb/docolang/color=(text) (no default, initially color)
Text used in the index for colors.

/tcb/docolang/colors=(text) (no default, initially Colors)
Heading text in the index for colors.

/tcb/docolang/counter=(text) (no default, initially counter)
Text used in the index for counters.

/tcb/docolang/counters=(text) (no default, initially Counters)
Heading text in the index for counters.

/tcb/docolang/environment=(text) (no default, initially environment)
Text used in the index for environments.

/tcb/docolang/environments=(text) (no default, initially Environments)
Heading text in the index for environments.

/tcb/docolang/environment content=(text) (no default, initially environment content)
Text used in docEnvironment \textsuperscript{P.488}.

/tcb/docolang/index=(text) (no default, initially Index)
Heading text for the index.

/tcb/docolang/key=(text) (no default, initially key)
Text used in the index for keys.

/tcb/docolang/keys=(text) (no default, initially Keys)
Heading text used in the index for keys.

/tcb/docolang/length=(text) (no default, initially length)
Text used in the index for lengths.

/tcb/docolang/lengths=(text) (no default, initially Lengths)
Heading text in the index for lengths.

/tcb/docolang/new=(text) (no default, initially New)
Announcement text for new content.

/tcb/docolang/path=(text) (no default, initially path operation)
Text used in the index for path operations.

/tcb/docolang/paths=(text) (no default, initially Path operations)
Heading text in the index for path operations.

/tcb/docolang/pageshort=(text) (no default, initially P.)
Short text for page references.

/tcb/docolang/updated=(text) (no default, initially Updated)
Announcement text for updated content.

/tcb/docolang/value=(text) (no default, initially value)
Text used in the index for values.

/tcb/docolang/values=(text) (no default, initially Values)
Heading text in the index for values.
26.6  Predefined Colors of the Library

The following colors are predefined. They are used as default colors in some library commands.

Option ☐, Definition ☐, ExampleFrame ☐, ExampleBack ☐, Hyperlink ☐, Fade ☐.
The following pictures were used inside this documentation.

- **Basilica_5.png**
  - [Link](http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Basilica_5.png)
  - Photograph taken by Thomas F. Sturm.

- **lichtspiel.jpg**
  - Photograph taken by Thomas F. Sturm.

- **crinklepaper.png**
  - Created with GIMP. [Link](http://www.gimp.org)

- **pink_marble.png**
  - Created with GIMP. [Link](http://www.gimp.org)

- **blueshade.png**
  - Created with GIMP. [Link](http://www.gimp.org)

- **goldshade.png**
  - Created with GIMP. [Link](http://www.gimp.org)
References


https://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/base/doc.dtx.


https://pygments.org/.


https://www.luis.uni-hannover.de/buch.html?&titel=latex.

https://www.unibw.de/bw/professuren/thomas-sturm.

https://www.unibw.de/bw/professuren/thomas-sturm.
https://www.unibw.de/bw/professuren/thomas-sturm.


Index

- key, 475
foo path (horizontal then vertical) path operation, 501
/foo/myKey key, 505
! key, 475

0 value, 155
1 value, 155
2 value, 155

above key, 433
absquote environment, 495
add to height key, 55
add to list key, 105
add to natural height key, 55
add to width key, 34
adjust text key, 18
adjusted title key, 18
adjusted title after break key, 390
after key, 81
after app key, 452
after doc body key, 507
after doc body command key, 506
after doc body environment key, 506
after doc body key key, 506
after doc body path key, 507
after example key, 508
after lower key, 68
after lower app key, 452
after lower pre key, 452
after lower* key, 68
after pre key, 452
after skip key, 83
after skip balanced key, 82
after title key, 64
after title app key, 451
after title pre key, 451
after upper key, 66
after upper app key, 451
after upper pre key, 451
after upper* key, 66
alert key, 280
all key, 10
all value, 48, 49, 308, 392, 395
ams align key, 375
ams align lower key, 375
ams align upper key, 375
ams align* key, 375
ams align* lower key, 375
ams align* upper key, 375
ams equation key, 374
ams equation lower key, 374
ams equation upper key, 374
ams equation* key, 374
ams equation* lower key, 374
ams equation* upper key, 374

ams gather key, 376
ams gather lower key, 376
ams gather upper key, 376
ams gather* key, 376
ams gather* lower key, 376
ams gather* upper key, 376
ams nodisplay skip key, 377
ams nodisplay skip lower key, 377
ams nodisplay skip upper key, 377
arc key, 36
arc is angular key, 38
arc is curved key, 38
areasize value, 447
areasize* value, 447
as-is value, 268
at key, 434
at begin tikz key, 200
at begin tikz reset key, 200
at end tikz key, 200
at end tikz reset key, 200
attach boxed title to bottom key, 164
attach boxed title to bottom center key, 163
attach boxed title to bottom left key, 163
attach boxed title to bottom right key, 163
attach boxed title to bottom* key, 164
attach boxed title to top key, 164
attach boxed title to top center key, 163
attach boxed title to top left key, 163
attach boxed title to top right key, 163
attach boxed title to top* key, 164
attach title key, 20
attach title to upper key, 20
auto value, 103, 370
auto counter key, 114
auto limited value, 103
auto outer arc key, 38
autoparskip key, 85
base value, 86
base color key, 288
baseline key, 86
baselineskip value, 392
beamer key, 243
beamer Skin, 243
beamer alerted key, 280
beamer hidden key, 279
beamerfirst Skin, 245
beamer last Skin, 246
beamer middle Skin, 245
bean arc key, 37
before key, 81
before app key, 452
before doc body key, 507
before doc body command key, 506
color option key, 510
color path key, 510
color value key, 510
Colors
Definition, 512
ExampleBack, 512
ExampleFrame, 512
Fade, 512
foocolor, 493
Hyperlink, 512
Option, 512
tcbcolback, 153
tcbcolbacklower, 153
tcbcolbacktitle, 153
tcbcolframe, 153
tcbcollower, 153
tcboctitle, 153
tcboupper, 153
colors key, 511
colspspacing key, 427
coltext key, 28
coltitle key, 28
column key, 431
column* key, 431
columns key, 427
colupper key, 28
comment key, 332
comment above listing key, 340
comment above* listing key, 340
comment and listing key, 335
comment only key, 332
comment outside listing key, 338
comment side listing key, 337
comment style key, 335
compilable listing key, 344
compiler key, 481
compress page key, 392
consumeboxarray, 418
consumetcbboxarray, 418
copy value, 166
counter key, 511
Counters
foocounter, 492
tcbrastercolumn, 299
tcbrasternum, 299
tcbrasterrow, 299
counters key, 511
coverage key, 428
Crefname key, 117
crefname key, 117
\cs, 493
dash value, 119
dash hang value, 119
\DeclareTCSVinputListing, 471
\DeclareTCBListing, 469
\DeclareTCBBox, 466
\DeclareTCBoxFit, 472
\DeclareTColorBox, 463
\DeclareTotalTCBox, 467
\DeclareTotalTCBoxFit, 473
\DeclareTotalTColorBox, 465
Definition color, 512
description color key, 366
description delimiters key, 366
description delimiters none key, 366
description delimiters parenthesis key, 366
description font key, 367
description formatter key, 367
detach title key, 20
direct value, 289
dispExample environment, 494
dispExample* environment, 494
dispListing environment, 495
dispListing* environment, 495
do not store to box array key, 417
doc value, 509
doc description key, 501
doc head key, 505
doc head command key, 504
doc head environment key, 505
doc head key key, 505
doc head path key, 505
doc index key, 501
doc into index key, 502
doc keypath key, 500
doc label key, 501
doc left key, 503
doc left indent key, 503
doc marginnote key, 502
doc name key, 500
doc new key, 502
doc new and updated key, 502
doc no index key, 502
doc parameter key, 500
doc raster key, 504
doc raster command key, 504
doc raster environment key, 504
doc raster key key, 504
doc raster path key, 504
doc right key, 503
doc right indent key, 503
doc sort index key, 501
doc updated key, 502
\docAuxCommand, 492
\docAuxCommand*, 492
\docAuxEnvironment, 492
\docAuxEnvironment*, 492
\docAuxKey, 492
\docAuxKeys*, 492
\docColor, 493
\docColor*, 493
docCommand environment, 486
docCommand* environment, 487
docCommands environment, 487
\docCounter, 492
\docCounter*, 492
docEnvironment environment, 488
first value, 173–175, 395
first and middle value, 173, 395
fit key, 441
fit algorithm key, 447
fit basedim key, 442
fit fontsize macros key, 443
fit height from key, 446
fit height plus key, 444
fit maxfondiff key, 449
fit maxfondiffgap key, 449
fit maxstep key, 449
fit maxwidthdiff key, 449
fit maxwidthdiffgap key, 449
fit skip key, 442
fit to key, 442
fit to height key, 442
fit warning key, 449
fit width from key, 445
fit width plus key, 444
fitbox value, 100
fitting key, 9
fixed height key, 432
flip title key, 164
float key, 79
float* key, 79
floatplacement key, 79
flush center value, 30, 32, 33
flush left key, 91
flush left value, 30, 32, 33
flush right key, 91
flush right value, 30, 32, 33
flushleft lower key, 32
flushleft title key, 33
flushleft upper key, 32
flushright lower key, 32
flushright title key, 33
flushright upper key, 32
font lower key, 29
font size key, 429
font size value, 447
font size* value, 447
font title key, 29
font upper key, 29
\fooaux, 492, 509
fooaux key, 492
fooaux env environment, 492
foocol color, 493
foocolbox environment, 488
foocolbox* environment, 488
foocounter counter, 492
foodummy key, 496
foodummy 2 key, 496
\foolength length, 493
\foomakedocSubKey, 487
\foomakedocSubKey*, 487
fooop path operation, 491
\foosomething, 502
footitle key, 490
force no beforeafter key, 81
force remake key, 475
force value, 46, 92
forced value, 46, 92
forced center value, 103
forced left value, 103
forced right value, 103
frame code key, 145
frame code app key, 458
frame code pre key, 458
frame empty key, 145
frame engine key, 142
frame hidden key, 157
frame style key, 156
frame style image key, 156
frame style tile key, 157
freelance key, 263
freelance Skin, 263
freelance value, 142, 143
freelance first Skin, 263
freelance last Skin, 263
freelance middle Skin, 263
freeze extension key, 347
freeze file key, 347
freeze jpg key, 347
freeze none key, 347
freeze pdf key, 347
freeze png key, 347
fuzzy halo key, 191
fuzzy shadow key, 197
geometry nodes key, 144
graphical environment key, 142
graphics directory key, 267
graphics options key, 267
graphics orientation key, 268
graphics pages key, 267
grow sidewards by key, 91
grow to left by key, 90
grow to right by key, 90
halign key, 30
halign lower key, 31
halign title key, 32
halign upper key, 30
halo key, 191
hbox key, 100
hbox value, 100
hbox boxed title key, 171
height key, 53, 427
height fill key, 56
height fixed for key, 395
height from key, 54
height plus key, 53
hide key, 279
highlight math key, 373
highlight math style key, 373
hooks key, 9
horizontal size key, 287
hybrid value, 447
hybrid* value, 447
Hyperlink color, 512
hyperlink key, 207
hyperlink interior key, 208
hyperlink node key, 208
hyperlink title key, 208
hyperref key, 207
hyperref interior key, 207
hyperref node key, 207
hyperref title key, 207
hypertarget key, 106
hyperurl key, 208
hyperurl interior key, 208
hyperurl node key, 208
hyperurl title key, 208
hyperurl* key, 208
hyperurl* interior key, 208
hyperurl* node key, 208
hyperurl* title key, 208
hyphenationfix key, 102
if odd page key, 107
if odd page or oneside key, 107
if odd page or oneside* key, 108
if odd page* key, 108
IfBooleanF key, 462
IfBooleanT key, 462
IfBooleanTF key, 462
\ifboxarrayempty, 419
IfNoValueF key, 461
IfNoValueT key, 461
IfNoValueTF key, 461
IfValueF key, 462
IfValueT key, 462
IfValueTF key, 462
ignore nobreak key, 87
ignored value, 24
\image comment key, 332
\imagename, 265
\imagepage, 266
index key, 106, 511
index actual key, 509
index annotate key, 510
index colorize key, 510
index command key, 509
index command name key, 509
index default settings key, 509
index format key, 509
index german settings key, 509
index level key, 509
index quote key, 509
index* key, 106
inherit height key, 57
input source on error key, 481
inside node key, 285
interior code key, 146
interior code app key, 459
interior code pre key, 459
interior empty key, 146
interior engine key, 143
interior hidden key, 158
interior style key, 157
interior style image key, 158
interior style tile key, 158
interior titled code key, 145
interior titled code app key, 458
interior titled code pre key, 459
interior titled empty key, 145
interior titled engine key, 142
invisible key, 22
invisible value, 19, 22, 24
justify value, 30
key key, 511
Keys
/foo/myKey, 505
/foo/
footaux, 492
foodummy, 496
foodummy 2, 496
footitle, 490
/tcb/
add to height, 55
add to list, 105
add to natural height, 55
add to width, 34
adjust text, 18
adjusted title, 18
adjusted title after break, 390
after, 81
after app, 452
after doc body, 507
after doc body command, 506
after doc body environment, 506
after doc body key, 506
after doc body path, 507
after example, 508
after lower, 68
after lower app, 452
after lower pre, 452
after lowers*, 68
after pre, 452
after skip, 83
after skip balanced, 82
after title, 64
after title app, 451
after title pre, 451
after upper, 66
after upper app, 451
after upper pre, 451
after upper*, 66
alert, 280
ams align, 375
ams align lower, 375
ams align upper, 375
ams align*, 375
ams align* lower, 375
ams align* upper, 375
ams equation, 374
ams equation lower, 374
ams equation upper, 374
hbox, 100
hbox boxed title, 171
height, 53
height fill, 56
height fixed for, 395
height from, 54
height plus, 53
hide, 279
highlight math, 373
highlight math style, 373
hyperlink, 207
hyperlink interior, 208
hyperlink node, 208
hyperlink title, 208
hyperref, 207
hyperref interior, 207
hyperref node, 207
hyperref title, 207
hypertarget, 106
hyperurl, 208
hyperurl interior, 208
hyperurl node, 208
hyperurl title, 208
hyperurl*, 208
hyperurl* interior, 208
hyperurl* node, 208
hyperurl* title, 208
hyphenationfix, 102
if odd page, 107
if odd page or oneside, 107
if odd page or oneside*, 108
if odd page*, 108
IfBooleanF, 462
IfBooleanT, 462
IfBooleanTF, 462
IfNoValueF, 461
IfNoValueT, 461
IfNoValueTF, 461
IfValueF, 462
IfValueT, 462
IfValueTF, 462
ignore nobreak, 87
image comment, 332
index, 106
index actual, 509
index annotate, 510
index colorize, 510
index command, 509
index command name, 509
index default settings, 509
index format, 509
index german settings, 509
index level, 509
index quote, 509
index*, 106
inherit height, 57
interior code, 146
interior code app, 459
interior code pre, 459
interior empty, 146
interior engine, 143
interior hidden, 158
interior style, 157
interior style image, 158
interior style tile, 158
interior titled code, 145
interior titled code app, 458
interior titled code pre, 459
interior titled empty, 145
interior titled engine, 142
invisible, 22
keywords bold, 509
label, 104
label separator, 368
label type, 104
left, 39
left skip, 84
left*, 39
lefthand ratio, 127
lefthand width, 126
leftrule, 40
leftrule skip, 84
leftrule, 40
leftupper, 40
lifted shadow, 198
lines before break, 390
list entry, 105
list text, 105
listing above comment, 339
listing above text, 338
listing above* comment, 339
listing above* text, 338
listing and comment, 335
listing and text, 331
listing engine, 331
listing file, 331
listing inputencoding, 327
listing only, 331
listing options, 326
listing options app, 460
listing options pre, 460
listing outside comment, 338
listing outside text, 336
listing remove caption, 327
listing side comment, 337
listing side text, 336
listing style, 326
listing utf8, 328
lower separated, 25
lowerbox, 24
marker, 225
math, 374
math lower, 374
math upper, 374
middle, 43
minimum for current equal height

526
base color, 288
color from, 288
draw method, 289
east size, 286
east style, 287
fade in, 290
fade out, 290
horizontal size, 287
inside node, 285
lower left corner, 285
lowered color, 288
north size, 286
north style, 287
outside node, 286
over node, 286
over node offset, 286
raised color, 288
scope, 288
semi fade in, 290
semi fade out, 290
size, 287
south size, 286
 south style, 287
upper right corner, 285
vertical size, 287
west size, 286
west style, 288
xmax, 285
xmin, 285
ymax, 285
ymin, 285
\tikz/
fill image opacity, 275
fill image options, 275
fill image scale, 275
fill overzoom image, 271
fill overzoom image*, 271
fill overzoom picture, 271
fill plain image, 269
fill plain image*, 269
fill plain picture, 269
fill shrink image, 273
fill shrink image*, 273
fill shrink picture, 273
fill stretch image, 270
fill stretch image*, 270
fill stretch picture, 270
fill tile image, 274
fill tile image*, 274
fill tile picture, 274
fill tile picture*, 274
fill zoom image, 272
fill zoom image*, 272
fill zoom picture, 272
tcb fill frame, 162
tcb fill interior, 162
tcb fill title, 162
keys key, 511
keywords bold key, 509
label key, 104
label separator key, 368
label type key, 104
landscape value, 268
landscape* value, 268
last value, 173–175, 395
left key, 39
left value, 30, 130, 307
left skip key, 84
left* key, 39
lefthand ratio key, 127
lefthand width key, 126
leftlower key, 40
leftright skip key, 84
leftrule key, 35
lefttitle key, 40
leftrule* key, 40
length key, 511
Lengths
\foolength, 493
lengths key, 511
lifted shadow key, 198
lines before break key, 390
list entry key, 105
list inside key, 121
list text key, 105
list type key, 121
listing above comment key, 339
listing above text key, 338
listing above* comment key, 339
listing above* text key, 338
listing and comment key, 335
listing and text key, 331
listing engine key, 331
listing file key, 331
listing inputencoding key, 327
listing only key, 331
listing options key, 326
listing options app key, 460
listing options pre key, 460
listing outside comment key, 338
listing outside text key, 336
listing remove caption key, 327
listing side comment key, 337
listing side text key, 336
listing style key, 326
listing utf8 key, 328
listings key, 9
listings value, 118, 331
listingsutf8 key, 9
lower left corner key, 285
lower separated key, 25
lowerbox key, 24
lowered color key, 288
magazine key, 9
many key, 10
\marg, 493
margin value, 380
margin apart value, 380
overlay key, 74
overlay app key, 453
overlay broken key, 75
overlay broken app key, 454
overlay broken pre key, 454
overlay first key, 75
overlay first and middle key, 75
overlay first and middle app key, 454
overlay first and middle pre key, 454
overlay first app key, 453
overlay first pre key, 453
overlay last key, 75
overlay last app key, 454
overlay last pre key, 454
overlay middle key, 75
overlay middle and last key, 75
overlay middle and last app key, 454
overlay middle and last pre key, 454
overlay middle app key, 454
overlay middle pre key, 454
overlay pre key, 453
overlay unbroken key, 75
overlay unbroken and first key, 75
overlay unbroken and first app key, 454
overlay unbroken and first pre key, 454
overlay unbroken and last key, 75
overlay unbroken and last app key, 454
overlay unbroken and last pre key, 454
overlay unbroken app key, 453
overlay unbroken pre key, 453
oversize key, 45
pad after break key, 394
pad at break key, 394
pad at break* key, 394
pad before break key, 394
pad before break* key, 394
pageshort key, 511
parbox key, 101
parfillskip restore key, 87
parskip key, 85
PassOptionsToClass key, 482
PassOptionsToPackage key, 482
path key, 511
path value, 142, 143
Path operations
  foo path (horizontal then vertical), 501
    fooop, 491
pathfirst value, 142, 143
pathfirstjigsaw value, 142
pathjigsaw value, 142
pathlast value, 142, 143
pathlastjigsaw value, 142
pathmiddle value, 142, 143
pathmiddlejigsaw value, 142
paths key, 511
pdf comment key, 334
pdf extension key, 335
\pdfpages, 267
pgf value, 509
pgfchapter value, 509
pgfsection value, 509
phantom key, 104
phantomlabel key, 104
placeholder key, 436
plain key, 481
plain value, 378
plain apart value, 379
portrait value, 268
portrait* value, 268
poster key, 9, 427
\posterbox, 430
posterboxenv environment, 430
preamble key, 482
preamble tcbset key, 482
preclass key, 482
prefix key, 427, 475
process code key, 344
\ProvideTCEInputListing, 471
\ProvideTCEStrongListing, 469
\ProvideTCBox, 466
\ProvideTCBoxFit, 472
\ProvideTCBoxLastFit, 466
\ProvideTotalTCBox, 473
\ProvideTotalTCBoxFit, 475
raised color key, 288
raster key, 9
raster after skip key, 305
raster before skip key, 305
raster column n key, 309
raster column skip key, 306
raster columns key, 303
raster equal height key, 308
raster equal height group key, 308
raster equal skip key, 305
raster even column key, 309
raster even number key, 310
raster even row key, 310
raster every box key, 309
raster force size key, 309
raster halign key, 307
raster height key, 305
raster left skip key, 306
raster multicolumn key, 311
raster multirow key, 312
raster number n key, 310
raster odd column key, 309
raster odd number key, 310
raster odd row key, 309
raster reset key, 309
raster right skip key, 306
raster row m key, 310
raster row m column n key, 310
raster row skip key, 306
raster rows key, 303
raster valign key, 307
raster width key, 303

533
raster width center key, 304
raster width flush left key, 304
raster width flush right key, 304
record key, 135
\refAux, 498
\refAuxcs, 498
\refCom, 497
\refCom*, 497
\refEnv, 497
\refEnv*, 497
\refKey, 497
\refKey*, 497
\refPathOperation, 498
\refPathOperation*, 498
remake key, 111
remember key, 201
remember as key, 202
\renewtcbexternalizeenvironment, 483
\renewtcbexternalizetcolorbox, 484
\RenewTCBInputListing, 471
\RenewTCBinputlisting, 325
\RenewTCBListing, 469
\Renewtcblisting, 324
\RenewTCBox, 466
\renewtcbox, 16
\RenewTCBoxFit, 472
\renewtcboxfit, 439
\renewtcbtheorem, 362
\RenewTColorBox, 464
\renewtcolorbox, 15
\RenewTotalTCBox, 468
\RenewTotalTCBoxFit, 473
\RenewTotalTColorBox, 465
reset key, 112
reset and store to box array key, 417
reset box array key, 414
reset counter on overlays key, 115
right key, 40
right value, 30, 130, 307
right skip key, 84
right* key, 41
righthand ratio key, 127
righthand width key, 126
rightlower key, 42
rightrule key, 35
righttitle key, 41
rightupper key, 41
rotate key, 201
rounded corners key, 49
row key, 432
rows key, 427
rows value, 308
rowspacing key, 427
rowspan key, 432
run arara key, 346
run biber key, 346
run bibtex key, 346
run dvikey, 346
run latex key, 346
run lualatex key, 346
run makeindex key, 346
run pdflatex key, 344
run ps2pdf key, 346
run system command key, 344
run xelatex key, 346
runner key, 475
runs key, 481
safety key, 481
saveldelimiter key, 26
savelowereto key, 24
saveto key, 23
scale key, 201
scale value, 33
scale* value, 33
scope key, 288
segmentation at break key, 395
segmentation code key, 146
segmentation code app key, 459
segmentation code pre key, 459
segmentation empty key, 146
segmentation engine key, 143
segmentation hidden key, 159
segmentation style key, 159
semi east fading, 289
semi fade in key, 290
semi fade out key, 290
semi north fading, 289
semi south fading, 289
semi west fading, 289
separator sign key, 365
separator sign colon key, 365
separator sign dash key, 365
separator sign none key, 365
sequence key, 435
shadow key, 196
sharp corners key, 48
sharpish corners key, 49
shield externalize key, 111
show bounding box key, 187
showframe key, 427
shrink break goal key, 392
shrink tight key, 95
sidebyside key, 123
sidebyside adapt key, 130
sidebyside align key, 124
sidebyside gap key, 126
sidebyside switch key, 132
size key, 44, 287
skin key, 141
skin first key, 141
skin first is subskin of key, 148
skin last key, 141
skin last is subskin of key, 148
skin middle key, 141
skin middle is subskin of key, 148
\skinExampleSet, 214
Skins
  beamer, 243

534
beamerfirst, 245
beamerlast, 246
beamermiddle, 245
bicolor, 229
bicolor jigsaw, 235
bicolorfirst, 232
bicolorfirst jigsaw, 236
bicolorlast, 234
bicolorlast jigsaw, 238
bicolormiddle, 233
bicolormiddle jigsaw, 237
draft, 261
empty, 250
emptyfirst, 253
emptylast, 255
emptymiddle, 254
enhanced, 217
enhanced jigsaw, 223
enhancedfirst, 221
enhancedfirst jigsaw, 224
enhancedlast, 222
enhancedlast jigsaw, 228
enhancedmiddle, 221
enhancedmiddle jigsaw, 225
freelance, 263
freelancefirst, 263
freelancelast, 263
freelancemiddle, 263
spartan, 260
standard, 215
standard jigsaw, 216
tile, 239
tilefirst, 240
tilelast, 242
tilemiddle, 241
widget, 247
widgetfirst, 248
widgetlast, 249
widgetmiddle, 248
skins key, 9
small value, 44
smart shadow arc key, 198
south fading, 289
south value, 48, 49
south size key, 286
south style key, 287
southeast value, 48, 49
southwest value, 48, 49
space key, 58
space to key, 59
space to both key, 59
space to lower key, 58
space to upper key, 58
spacing key, 427
span key, 432
spartan key, 260
spartan Skin, 260
spartan value, 142, 143
split key, 60
spread key, 94
spread downwards key, 94
spread inwards key, 93
spread outwards key, 93
spread sideways key, 94
spread upwards key, 94
spread upwards* key, 94
square key, 58
squeeze value, 447
squeezed title key, 19
squeezed title* key, 19
standard key, 215
standard Skin, 215
standard value, 142, 143, 166, 378
standard jigsaw key, 216
standard jigsaw Skin, 216
step key, 104
step and label key, 104
store to box array key, 415
subtitle style key, 21
tables value, 118
tabulars key, 70
tabulars* key, 70
tabularx key, 71
tabularx* key, 71
tcb fill frame key, 162
tcb fill interior key, 162
tcb fill title key, 162
\tcbbreak, 402
tcbclipframe environment, 180
tcbclipinterior environment, 182
tcbclipitle title environment, 182
tcbcolback color, 153
tcbcolbacklower color, 153
tcbcolbacktitle color, 153
tcbcolframe color, 153
tcbcollower color, 153
tcbcoltitle color, 153
tcbcolupper color, 153
\tcbcontinuedraftmode, 211
\tcbcounter, 114
\tcbdocmarginnote, 499
\tcbdocnew, 499
\tcbdocupdated, 499
tcbexternal environment, 476
\tcbEXTERNALIZE, 475
\tcbfitdim, 440
\tcbfitsteps, 441
\tcbfontsize, 440
\tcbheightfromgroup, 63
\tcbheightspace, 154
\tcbhighmath, 363
\tcbhypernode, 277
\tcbifexternal, 482
\tcbiffileprocess, 484
\tcbifoddpage, 109
\tcbifoddpageononeside, 109
tcbimage comment key, 333
\tcbincludegraphics, 264
\texttt{\textbackslash tcbincludepdf}, 266
\texttt{\textbackslash tcbinputlisting}, 322
\texttt{\textbackslash tcbinputrecords}, 135
\texttt{\textbackslash tcbinterruptdraftmode}, 211
tcbvclipframe environment, 181
\texttt{\textbackslash tcbitem}, 300
tcbitemize environment, 300
\texttt{\textbackslash tcbline}, 220
\texttt{\textbackslash tcbline*}, 220
tcblisting environment, 320
\texttt{\textbackslash tcblistof}, 122
tclower, 12
\texttt{\textbackslash cbmakethorem}, 362
tcbmaketheorem, 302
tcbboxedraster environment, 301
tcboxfit, 438
tcboxmath, 363
tcbverb, 468
tcbpatchcharcircular, 276
tcbpatchcharround, 276
tcbposter environment, 425
tcbpostercolspace, 426
tcbpostercolumns, 426
tcbpostercolwidth, 426
tcbposterheight, 426
tcbposterrowheight, 426
tcbposterrows, 426
tcbposterrowspace, 426
tcbposterset, 426
tcbposterwidth, 426
tcbposterraster environment, 299
tcbposterrastercolumn counter, 299
tcbposterrasternumber counter, 299
tcbraster environment, 199
tcbverbatimwrite environment, 133
tcbvignette, 284
tcbwritetemp environment, 133
tcolorbox environment, 12
tcolorboxenvironment, 17
tcbuselibrary, 9
tcbuselistinglisting, 322
tcbuselistingtext, 322
tcbusetemp, 133
tcbusetemlisting, 322
tcverbatimwrite environment, 133
tcbtextheight, 155
tcbtextwidth, 154
tcbtitle, 20
tcbtitletext, 20
tcbuselistinglisting, 322
tcbwritetemp environment, 133
tcolorbox environment, 12
tcolorboxenvironment, 17
tempfile key, 102
terminator sign key, 367
terminator sign colon key, 368
terminator sign dash key, 368
terminator sign none key, 368
text above listing key, 339
text above* listing key, 339
text and listing key, 331
text fill key, 69
text height key, 54
text only key, 332
text outside listing key, 337
text side listing key, 336
text width key, 34
theorem key, 372
theorem full label supplement key, 379
theorem hanging indent key, 370
theorem label supplement key, 369
theorem name key, 371
theorem name and number key, 371
theorem number and name key, 371
theorem style key, 378
theorems key, 9
\texttt{\textbackslash thetcbrcounter}, 114, 115
\texttt{\textbackslash thetcbrasternumber}, 299, 311
\texttt{\textbackslash thetcboxnumber}, 110
\texttt{\textbackslash thetcboxpage}, 110
tight value, 44
tikz key, 200
tikz lower key, 72
tikz reset key, 200
tikz upper key, 72
tikznode key, 73
tikznode boxed title key, 172
tikznode lower key, 73
tikznode upper key, 73
tile key, 239
tile Skin, 239
tilefirst Skin, 240
tilelast Skin, 242
tilemiddle Skin, 241
title key, 18
title value, 44, 166
title after break key, 390
title code key, 147
xmin key, 285
xparse key, 10
xshift key, 165, 436

ymax key, 285
ymin key, 285
yshift key, 165, 437
yshift* key, 165
yshifttext key, 165